

This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

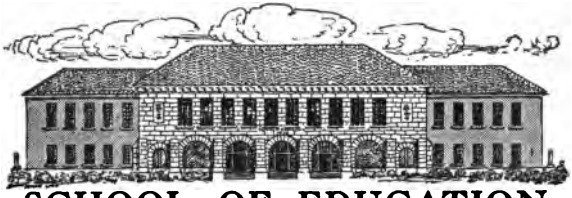
About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

TX 973.1 .R547
Ridpath, John Clark,
History of the United States : prepared

Stanford University Libraries

3 6105 04934 1139



SCHOOL OF EDUCATION
LIBRARY

TEXTBOOK
COLLECTION

STANFORD UNIVERSITY
LIBRARIES

HISTORY

OF THE

UNITED STATES:

PREPARED

ESPECIALLY FOR SCHOOLS:

ON A

NEW AND COMPREHENSIVE PLAN, EMBRACING THE FEATURES

OF

LYMAN'S HISTORICAL CHART.

BY

JOHN CLARK RIDPATH, LL. D.,

Vice-Prest. and Prof. of Belles-Lettres and History in Indiana Asbury University; Author of a Popular History of the United States; an Academic History of the United States; an Inductive Grammar; etc., etc.

GRAMMAR SCHOOL EDITION.

ILLUSTRATED WITH CHARTS, MAPS, PORTRAITS, SKETCHES, AND DIAGRAMS.

JONES BROTHERS & COMPANY:

CINCINNATI. CHICAGO.

PHILADELPHIA.

1880.

DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION
NOV 2 2015
LELAND STANFORD JUNIOR UNIVERSITY

609952
C

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1870, by
JOHN T. JONES,
In the Office of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington.

ELECTROTYPED AT
THE FRANKLIN TYPE FOUNDRY,
CINCINNATI.

PREFACE.

I OFFER to American boys and girls a new history of their country. My hope has been to make them love the inspiring story.

In the preparation of this little book, the following objects have been kept in view:

I. To give an accurate and spirited Narrative of the principal events in our country's history from the discovery of America to the present time.

II. To present a clear and systematic Arrangement of the several subjects, giving to every fact, whether of peace or war, its true place and proportion in the narrative.

III. To give an Objective Representation by means of charts, maps, and drawings, of all the more important facts of our history.

IV. To employ such a Style and Method as seem best adapted to fix the attention of the student and to awaken his enthusiasm.

Whether I have succeeded in this work, it is not mine to decide.—If success has not rewarded the effort, the failure has been in the execution rather than in the plan and purpose.

I surrender this NEW GRAMMAR SCHOOL HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES to those for whose benefit it was begun and has been finished. I ask of teacher and student a just recognition of whatever worth the work may be found to possess, and a charitable criticism of its defects.

J. C. R.

INDIANA ASBURY UNIVERSITY,
Jan. 1st, 1880.

CONTENTS.

	Page
PREFACE	5
CONTENTS	6-8
INTRODUCTION	9-10

PART I.

ABORIGINAL AMERICA.

Chapter		
I.	The Red Men	11-14

PART II.

VOYAGE AND DISCOVERY.

II.	The Icelanders and Norwegians in America	15-17
III.	Spanish Discoveries	18-21
IV.	Spanish Discoveries.—Continued	22-29
V.	The French in America	29-35
VI.	English Discoveries and Settlements	35-42
VII.	English Discoveries and Settlements.—Continued	43-48
VIII.	Voyages and Settlements of the Dutch	48-50

PART III.

COLONIAL HISTORY.

I. PARENT COLONIES.

IX.	Virginia.—The First Charter	51-57
X.	Virginia.—The Second Charter	58-60
XI.	Virginia.—The Third Charter	61-65
XII.	Virginia.—The Royal Government	66-72
XIII.	Massachusetts.—Settlement	73-81
XIV.	Massachusetts.—The Union	82-85
XV.	Massachusetts.—King Philip's War	86-92
XVI.	Massachusetts.—War and Witchcraft	93-97
XVII.	Massachusetts.—Wars of Anne and George	97-102
XVIII.	New York.—Settlement	103-107
XIX.	New York.—Administration of Stuyvesant	107-110
XX.	New York under the English	111-119

II. MINOR EASTERN COLONIES.

XXI.	Connecticut	120-126
XXII.	Rhode Island	127-130
XXIII.	New Hampshire	131-133

III. MINOR MIDDLE COLONIES.

XXIV.	New Jersey	134-138
XXV.	Pennsylvania	139-143

CHAPTER IV. MINOR SOUTHERN COLONIES. PAGE
XXVI.—Maryland ... 144-148
XXVII.—North Carolina ... 149-151
XXVIII.—South Carolina ... 152-156
XXIX.—Georgia ... 156-160

V. FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.
XXX.—Causes ... 161-164
XXXI.—Campaigns of Washington and Braddock ... 165-167
XXXII.—Ruin of Acadia ... 168-169
XXXIII.—Expeditions of Shirley and Johnson ... 170-172
XXXIV.—Two Years of Successes ... 173-178

PART IV.
REVOLUTION AND CONFEDERATION.
XXXV.—Causes ... 179-186
XXXVI.—The Beginning ... 187-192
XXXVII.—The Work of '76 ... 192-200
XXXVIII.—Operations of '77 ... 200-207
XXXIX.—France to the Rescue ... 208-212
XL.—Movements of '79 ... 213-216
XLI.—Reverses and Treason ... 216-221
XLII.—The End ... 221-228
XLIII.—Confederation and Union ... 229-232

PART V.
NATIONAL PERIOD.
XLIV.—Washington's Administration ... 233-237
XLV.—Adams's Administration ... 238-240
XLVI.—Jefferson's Administration ... 241-247
XLVII.—Madison's Administration and War of 1812 ... 247-252
XLVIII.—War of 1812.—Continued ... 252-257
XLIX.—The Campaigns of '14 ... 258-264
L.—Monroe's Administration ... 264-267
LI.—Adams's Administration ... 268-269
LII.—Jackson's Administration ... 270-274
LIII.—Van Buren's Administration ... 275-277
LIV.—Administrations of Harrison and Tyler ... 277-281
LV.—Polk's Administration and the Mexican War ... 281-289
LVI.—Administrations of Taylor and Fillmore ... 290-294
LVII.—Pierce's Administration ... 295-296
LVIII.—Buchanan's Administration ... 297-300
LIX.—Lincoln's Administration and the Civil War ... 301-303
LX.—The Causes ... 303-306
LXI.—First Year of the War ... 306-311
LXII.—Campaigns of '62 ... 312-319
LXIII.—The Work of '63 ... 320-326
LXIV.—The Closing Conflicts ... 327-338
LXV.—Johnson's Administration ... 339-343
LXVI.—Grant's Administration ... 343-352
LXVII.—Hayes's Administration ... 353-356

ILLUSTRATIONS.

I. CHARTS.

		Page
CHART	I.—Voyage and Discovery	18
CHART	II.—Colonial Period	52
CHART	III.—Revolution and Confederation	180
CHART	IV.—National Period—First Section	234
CHART	V.—National Period—Second Section	276

II. MAPS.

MAP	I.—Voyage and Discovery	36
MAP	II.—English Grants	44
MAP	III.—French, English, Dutch, Swedish, and Spanish Provinces	108
MAP	IV.—The United States at the Close of the Revolution	228
MAP	V.—The Territorial Growth of the United States	346

III. PORTRAITS.

Adams, Samuel	185	Jefferson, Thomas	241
Adams, John	239	Lee, Robert E	317
Baltimore, Lord	145	Lincoln, Abraham	301
Brandt, Joseph	211	Marion, Francis	218
Burgoyne, John	203	Marshall, John	243
Calhoun, John C	293	Morse, Samuel F. B	280
Chase, Salmon P	342	Norse Sea-King	16
Clay, Henry	292	Oglethorpe, James	157
Columbus, Christopher	19	Penn, William	140
Cornwallis, Lord	227	Scott, Winfield	287
Davis, Jefferson	309	Seward, William H	311
Farragut, David G	331	Sherman, William T	330
Franklin, Benjamin	209	Smith, John	52
Fulton, Robert	246	Stephens, Alexander H	300
Grant, Ulysses S	344	Stuyvesant, Peter	109
Greeley, Horace	346	Sumner, Charles	348
Greene, Nathaniel	225	Taylor, Zachary	290
Hamilton, Alexander	231	Thomas, George H	329
Henry, Patrick	182	Washington, George	233
Houston, Sam	298	Webster, Daniel	271
Hudson, Henry	103	Winthrop, John	76
Jackson, Andrew	270	Winthrop, the Younger	124
Jackson, Stonewall	324	Wolfe, James	175

IV. TOPOGRAPHICAL DIAGRAMS.

Jamestown and Vicinity	56	Scene of Burgoyne's Invasion	204
Early Settlements in New England	80	Encampment at Valley Forge	207
First Scene of King Philip's War	87	Siege of Charleston	217
Second " " " " "	88	Scene of Operations in the South	219
Third " " " " "	89	Scene of Arnold's Treason	220
Siege of Louisburg	101	Siege of Yorktown	226
Scene of the Pequod War	122	Scene of Hull's Campaign	250
East and West Jersey	136	The Niagara Frontier	251
Philadelphia and Vicinity	142	Scene of the Creek War	255
Country of the Savannah	159	Scene of Taylor's Campaign	282
First Scene of the French and Indian War	163	Scene of Scott's Campaign	286
Scene of Braddock's Defeat	167	Scene of Operations in West Va	307
The Acadian Isthmus	168	Vicinity of Manassas Junction	308
Vicinity of Lake George	170	Scene of Operations in South-west	310
Vicinity of Quebec	174	Scene of Campaigns in Virginia, Maryland and Pennsylvania	316
Scene of the Battle of Bunker Hill	189	Vicinity of Richmond	318
Siege of Boston	193	Vicksburg and Vicinity	321
Battle of Long Island	196	Sherman's Campaign	328
Scene of Operations about N. Y	197	Operations in Virginia	334
Battles of Trenton and Princeton	199	Scene of the Sioux War, 1876	350

V. SKETCHES.

Specimen of Indian Writing	13
The Treaty between Governor Carver and Massasoit	74
Roger Williams's Reception by the Indians	78
The Old Stone Tower at Newport	128
The Exile of the Acadians	169
The Memorial Hall	349

INTRODUCTION.

THERE are five periods in the history of the United States. It is important for the student to understand these at the beginning. Without such an understanding his notion of our country's history will be confused and his study rendered difficult.

2. First of all there was a time when the Western continent was under the dominion of the Red men. The savage races possessed the soil, hunted in the forests, roamed over the prairies. This is the Aboriginal Period in American history.

3. After the discovery of America, the people of Europe were for a long time engaged in exploring the New World and in making themselves familiar with its shape and character. For more than a hundred years, curiosity was the leading passion with the adventurers who came to our shores. Their disposition was to go everywhere and settle nowhere. These early times may be called the Period of Voyage and Discovery.

4. Next came the time of planting colonies. The adventurers, tired of wandering about, became anxious to found new States in the wilderness. Kings and queens turned their attention to the work of colonizing the New World. Thus arose a third period—the Period of Colonial History.

5. The Colonies grew strong and multiplied. There were thirteen little sea-shore republics. The rulers of the mother-country began a system of oppression and tyranny. The Colonies revolted, fought side by side, and won their freedom. Not satisfied with mere independence, they built them a Union strong and great. This is the Period of Revolution and Confederation.

6. Then the United States of America entered upon their career as a nation. Three times tried by war, and many times vexed with civil dissensions, the Union established by our fathers still remains for us and for posterity.

7. Collecting these results, we find in the history of our country:

First. THE ABORIGINAL PERIOD; from remote antiquity to the coming of the White men.

Second. THE PERIOD OF VOYAGE AND DISCOVERY; A. D. 986–1607.

Third. THE COLONIAL PERIOD; A. D. 1607–1775.

Fourth. THE PERIOD OF REVOLUTION AND CONFEDERATION; A. D. 1775–1789.

Fifth. THE NATIONAL PERIOD; A. D. 1789–1880.

In this order the History of the United States will be presented in the following pages.

HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.

PART I.

ABORIGINAL AMERICA.

CHAPTER I.

THE RED MEN.

THE primitive inhabitants of the New World were the Red men called INDIANS. The name *Indian* was given to them from their supposed identity with the people of India. Columbus and his followers believed that they had reached the islands of the far East, and that the natives were of the same race with the inhabitants of the Indies. The mistake of the Spaniards was soon discovered; but the name Indian has ever since remained to designate the native tribes of the Western continent.

2. The origin of the Indians is involved in obscurity. At what date or by what route they came to the New World is unknown. The notion that the Red men are the descendants of the Israelites is absurd. That Europeans or Africans, at some early period, crossed the Atlantic by sailing from island to island, seems improbable. That the people of Kamtchatka came by way of Behring Strait into the northwestern parts of America, has little evidence to support it. Perhaps a more thorough knowledge of the Indian languages may yet throw some light on the origin of the race.

3. The Indians belong to the Bow-and-Arrow family of men. To the Red man the chase was everything. Without the chase he

languished and died. To smite the deer and the bear was his chief delight and profit. Such a race could live only in a country of woods and wild animals.

4. The northern parts of America were inhabited by THE ESQUIMAUX. The name means *the eaters of raw meat.* They lived in snow huts or hovels. Their manner of life was that of fishermen and hunters. They clad themselves in winter with the skins of seals, and in summer, with those of reindeers.

5. The greater portion of the United States east of the Mississippi was peopled by the family of THE ALGONQUINS. They were divided into many tribes, each having its local name and tradition. Agriculture was but little practiced by them. They roamed about from one hunting-ground and river to another. When the White men came, the Algonquin nations were already declining in numbers and influence. Only a few thousands now remain.

6. Around the shores of Lakes Erie and Ontario lived THE HURON-IROQUOIS. At the time of their greatest power, they embraced no fewer than nine nations. The warriors of this confederacy presented the Indian character in its best aspect. They were brave, patriotic, and eloquent; faithful as friends, but terrible as enemies.

7. South of the Algonquins were THE CHEROKEES and THE MOBILIAN NATIONS. The former were highly civilized for a primitive people. The principal tribes of the Mobilians were the Yamassees and Creeks of Georgia, the Seminoles of Florida, and the Choctaws and Chickasaws of Mississippi. These displayed the usual disposition and habits of the Red men.

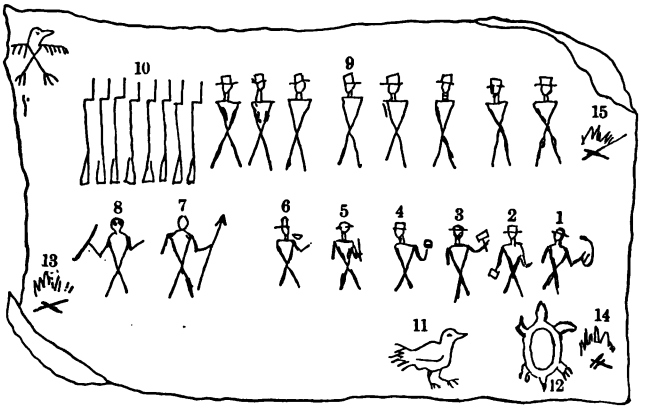
8. West of the Mississippi was the family of THE DAKOTAS. South of these, in a district nearly corresponding with the State of Texas, lived the wild COMANCHES. Beyond the Rocky Mountains were the Indian nations of the Plains; the great families of THE SHOSHONEES, THE SELISH, THE KLAMATHS, and THE CALIFORNIANS. On the Pacific slope, farther southward, dwelt in former times the civilized but feeble race of AZTECS.

9. The Red men had a great passion for war. Their wars were undertaken for revenge, rather than conquest. To forgive an injury was considered a shame. Revenge was the noblest of the virtues. The open battle of the field was unknown in Indian

warfare. Fighting was limited to the ambuscade and the massacre. Quarter was rarely asked, and never granted.

10. In times of peace the Indian character appeared to a better advantage. But the Red man was always unsocial and solitary. He sat by himself in the woods. The forest was better than a wigwam, and a wigwam better than a village. The Indian woman was a degraded creature—a mere drudge and beast of burden.

11. In the matter of the arts the Indian was a barbarian. His



SPECIMEN OF INDIAN WRITING.

Translation: Eight soldiers (9), with muskets (10), commanded by a captain (1), and accompanied by a secretary (2), a geologist (3), three attendants (4, 5, 6), and two Indian guides (7, 8), encamped here. They had three camp fires (13, 14, 15), and ate a turtle and prairie hen (11, 12), for supper.

house was a hovel, built of poles set up in a circle, and covered with skins and the branches of trees. Household utensils were few and rude. Earthen pots, bags and pouches for carrying provisions, and stone hammers for pounding corn, were the stock and store. His weapons of offense and defense were the hatchet and the bow and arrow. In times of war, the Red man painted his face and body with all manner of glaring colors. The fine arts were wanting. Indian writing consisted of half-intelligible hieroglyphics scratched on the face of rocks or cut in the bark of trees.

12. The Indian languages bear little resemblance to those of other races. The Red man's vocabulary was very limited. The

principal objects of nature had special names, but abstract ideas could hardly be expressed. Indian words had a very intense meaning. There was, for instance, no word signifying *to hunt* or *to fish;* but one word signified "to-kill-a-deer-with-an-arrow;" another, "to-take-fish-by-striking-the-ice." Among some of the tribes, the meaning of words was so restricted that the warrior would use one term and the squaw another to express the same idea.

13. The Indians were generally serious in manners and behavior. Sometimes, however, they gave themselves up to merry-making and hilarity. The dance was universal—not the social dance of civilized nations, but the solemn dance of religion and of war. Gaming was much practiced among all the tribes. Other amusements were common, such as running, wrestling, shooting at a mark, and racing in canoes.

14. In personal appearance the Indians were strongly marked. In stature they were below the average of Europeans. The Esquimaux are rarely five feet high. The Algonquins are taller and lighter in build; straight and agile; lean and swift of foot. The eyes are jet-black and sunken; hair black and straight; skin copper-colored or brown; hands and feet small; body lithe, but not strong; expression sinister, or sometimes dignified and noble.

15. The best hopes of the Indian race seem now to center in the Choctaws, Cherokees, Creeks, and Chickasaws of the Indian Territory. These nations have attained a considerable degree of civilization. Most of the other tribes are declining in numbers and influence. Whether the Indians have been justly deprived of the New World will remain a subject of debate; that they *have* been deprived can be none. The White races have taken possession of the vast domain. To the prairies and forests, the hunting-grounds of his fathers, the Red man says farewell.

RECAPITULATION.

The name *Indian.*—Origin of the race considered.—Not Israelites.—Not Europeans.—Devotion of the Indians to the chase.—The Esquimaux.—Their position and habits.—The Algonquins.—Their character.—The Huron-Iroquois.—Cherokees and Mobilians.—The Dakotas.—Races of the West.—Indian principles of war.—Disposition in peace.—Indian arts.—Implements.—Writing.—Language.—Manners and customs.—Personal appearance.—Decline of the race.

PART II.

VOYAGE AND DISCOVERY.

A. D. 986—1607.

CHAPTER II.

THE ICELANDERS AND NORWEGIANS IN AMERICA.

THE western continent was first seen by white men in A. D. 986. A Norse navigator by the name of HERJULFSON, sailing from Iceland to Greenland, was caught in a storm and driven westward to Newfoundland or Labrador. Two or three times the shores were seen, but no landing was made or attempted. The coast was low, abounding in forests, and so different from the well-known cliffs of Greenland as to make it certain that another shore hitherto unknown was in sight. On reaching Greenland, Herjulfson and his companions told wonderful stories of the new lands seen in the west.

2. Fourteen years later, the actual discovery of America was made by LEIF ERICKSON. Resolving to know the truth about the country which Herjulfson had seen, he sailed westward from Greenland, and in the spring of the year 1001 reached Labrador. Landing with his companions, he made explorations for a considerable distance along the coast. The country was milder and more attractive than his own, and he was in no haste to return. Southward he went as far as Massachusetts, where the company remained for more than a year. Rhode Island was also visited;

and it is alleged that the adventurers found their way into New York harbor.

3. In the years that followed Leif Erickson's discovery, other companies of Norsemen came to the shores of America. THORWALD, Leif's brother, made a voyage to Maine and Massachusetts in 1002, and is said to have died at Fall River in the latter State. Then another brother, THORSTEIN by name, arrived with a band of followers in 1005; and in the year 1007, THORFINN KARLSEFNE, the most distinguished mariner of his day, came with a crew of a hundred and fifty men, and made explorations along the coast of Massachusetts, Rhode Island, and perhaps as far south as the capes of Virginia.



A NORSE SEA-KING OF THE ELEVENTH CENTURY.

4. Other companies of Icelanders and Norwegians visited the countries farther north, and planted colonies in Newfoundland and Nova Scotia. Little, however, was known or imagined by these rude sailors of the extent of the country which they had discovered. They supposed that it was only a portion of Western Greenland which, bending to the north around an arm of the ocean, had reäppeared in the west. The settlements which were made were feeble and soon broken up. Commerce was an impossibility in a country where there were only a few wretched savages with no disposition to buy and nothing at all to sell. The spirit of adventure was soon appeased, and the

restless Northmen returned to their own country. To this undefined line of coast, now vaguely known to them, the Norse sailors gave the name of VINLAND.

5. During the twelfth, thirteenth and fourteenth centuries occasional voyages were made; and as late as A. D. 1347, a Norwegian ship visited Labrador and the north-eastern parts of the United States. In 1350 Greenland and Vinland were depopulated by a great plague which had spread thither from Norway. From that time forth communication with the New World ceased, and the history of the Northmen in America was at an end. The Norse remains which have been found at Newport, at Fall River, and several other places, point clearly to the events here narrated; and the Icelandic historians give a consistent account of these early exploits of their countrymen. When the word *America* is mentioned in the hearing of the schoolboys of Iceland, they will at once answer with enthusiasm, "Oh, yes; Leif Erickson discovered that country in the year 1001."

6. An event is to be weighed by its consequences. From the discovery of America by the Norsemen, *nothing whatever resulted.* The world was neither wiser nor better. Among the Icelanders themselves the place and the very name of Vinland were forgotten. Europe never heard of such a country or such a discovery. Historians have until late years been incredulous on the subject, and the fact is as though it had never been. The curtain which had been lifted for a moment was stretched again from sky to sea, and the New World still lay hidden in the shadows.

RECAPITULATION.

Herjulfson is driven by a storm to the American coast.—Leif Erickson discovers America.—Thorwald and Thorstein Erickson make voyages.—Thorfinn Karlsefne explores the shores of Maine and Massachusetts.—Other voyages are made by the Norsemen.—Communication with the New World is broken off by the plague.—Nothing practical results from the Icelandic discoveries.

CHAPTER III.

SPANISH DISCOVERIES IN AMERICA.

IT was reserved for the people of a sunnier clime than Iceland first to make known to the European nations the existence of a Western continent. Spain was the happy country under whose patronage a new world was to be added to the old; but the man who was destined to make the revelation was not himself a Spaniard: he was to come from Italy, the land of valor and the home of greatness. CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS was the name of that man whom after ages have rewarded with imperishable fame.

2. The idea that the world is round was not original with Columbus. The English traveler, Sir John Mandeville, had declared in the first English book ever written (A. D. 1356) that the world is a sphere; that he himself, when traveling northward, had seen the polar star approach the zenith, and that on going southward, the antarctic constellations had risen overhead; and that it was both possible and practicable for a man to sail around the world and return to the place of starting. But Columbus was the first *practical* believer in the theory of circumnavigation; and although he never sailed around the world himself, he demonstrated the possibility of doing so.

3. The great mistake with Columbus was not concerning the *figure* of the earth, but in regard to its *size*. He believed the world to be no more than ten thousand or twelve thousand miles in circumference. He therefore confidently expected that after sailing about three thousand miles to the westward, he should arrive at the East Indies; and to do that was the one great purpose of his life.

4. Christopher Columbus was born at Genoa, Italy, in A. D. 1435. He was carefully educated, and then devoted himself to the

1000	1100	1200	1300
Central Period of the Middle Ages.	52. Frederick Barbarossa.		
24. Conrad II.	The CRUSADES.		
35. Union of Castile and Leon.			
39. Henry the Black.	8. Louis VI.	26. Louis IX.	85. Philip IV.
56. Henry IV.	37. Louis VII.		16. Phil
	71. Conquest of Ireland.		
HOUSE OF CAPET IN FRANCE.	80. Philip II.		28. H
	35. Stephen.		
17. Canute.	Henry I.	15. Magna Charta granted.	
66. William I.			
DANISH KINGS IN ENGLAND.	54. Henry II.	72. Edward I.	
			7. Edward
	89. Richard I.		Wi
The NORMANS.	The PLANTAGENETS.	Heroic Age.	27. E

1. LEIF ERICKSON, an Icelandic navigator, sailing westward from Greenland, discovers the coast of Labrador, and makes explorations as far south as Rhode Island.

Bjarne Herjulfson driven by a storm within sight of the American coast **A. D. 986.**

2. Thorwald Erickson returns to America and remains three years.

5. Thorstein Erickson comes to America.

7. Thorfinn Karlsefne explores the coast of Massachusetts.

THE WESTERN CONTINENT UNKNOWN TO

21. Erik Upsi sent as bishop to Vinland.

DOUBTFUL ICELANDIC AND NORWEGIAN VOYAGE

AMERICA UNDER THE ABORIGI

CHART I.

PERIOD OF VOYAGE AND DISCOVERY.

A. D. 986–1607.

Icelandic discoveries in
Spanish " "
English " "
French " "
Dutch " "
Portuguese " "

1400	1500	1600
	35. **Columbus** born.	
	15. **John Huss.**	
56. **First book** written in English, in which the author, Sir John Mandeville, declares the spherical figure of the earth and the practicability of circumnavigation.	98. **De Gama** doubles the Cape of Good Hope and reaches the East Indies.	
	Luther.	48. **Treaty of Westphalia.**
80. **Charles VI.**	**Printing Invented.**	
ilip V.	22. **Charles VII.**	
	61. **Louis XI**	
HOUSE OF VALOIS.	9. **John Calvin.**	72. **St. Bartholomew.**
	15. **Francis I.**	89. **Henry IV.**
77. **Richard II.**	19. **Charles V.**	10. **Louis XIII.**
	74. **Ferdinand** and **Isabella.**	
	The PURITANS.	43. **Louis XIV.**
	85. **Henry VII.**	
Wars of the Roses.	9. **Henry VIII.**	3. **James I.**
	47. **Edward VI.**	
ard II. The LANCASTERS.	53. **Mary.**	25. **Charles I.**
Wickliffe.	58. **Elizabeth.**	
Edward III. The YORKS.	The TUDORS.	The STUARTS.

THE EUROPEAN NATIONS.

	92.	**Columbus** discovers the West Indies.
	93.	Second voyage.
	98.	Third voyage.
	98.	**Discovers America.**
5	99.	**Amerigo Vespucci** makes a voyage to South America.
The great plague depopulates Iceland, Greenland, and Vinland; communication with the New World is cut off.	12.	**De Leon** explores Florida.
	25.	**De Ayllon** in Carolina.
	28.	**De Narvaez** makes explorations in Florida.
	39.	**De Soto** in America.
	65.	**Melendez** founds St. Augustine.
	97.	**John Cabot** discovers North America.
	98.	**Sebastian Cabot** explores the American coast.
		78. **Martin Frobisher's** voyages.
		79. **Drake** on the Pacific coast.
		83. **Gilbert's** voyage.
47. A company of Norsemen in America.		**Raleigh's** attempts at colonization.
	77. **Columbus** visits Iceland and learns of the New World.	2. **Gosnold's** direct voyage.
		3. **Pring's** voyage.
		8. **Waymouth** in Maine.
		7. Settlement at **Jamestown.**
		20. The **Puritans** at **Plymouth.**

GINAL TRIBES.

24. **Verrazzani** explores the American coast.	
34. **Cartier's** expedition.	
42. **Roberval** in Canada.	
62. **Ribault** with the Huguenots.	
64. **Laudonniere's** enterprise.	
98. **La Roche** in Nova Scotia.	
	4. **De Monts** and **Champlain.**
	5. **Port Royal** founded.
	8. Founding of **Quebec.**
	9. **Hudson** in America.
	14. Explorations of **Block** and **May.**
	14. Founding of **New Amsterdam.**

is *green.*
" *yellow.*
" *red.*
" *blue.*
" *brown.*
" *purple.*

sea. His own inclination, as well as his early training, made him a sailor. For twenty years he traversed the parts of the Atlantic adjacent to Europe; he visited Iceland; then went to Portugal, and finally to Spain. For more than ten years the poor enthusiast was a beggar, going from court to court, explaining to dull monarchs the figure of the earth and the ease with which the rich islands of the East might be reached by sailing westward. He found one appreciative listener, the noble and sympathetic Isabella, queen of Castile. Be it never forgotten that to the faith and insight and decision of a *woman* the final success of Columbus must be attributed.



CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS.

5. On the morning of the 3d day of August, 1492, Columbus, with his three ships, left the harbor of Palos. After seventy-one days of sailing, in the early dawn of October 12, Rodrigo Triana, a sailor on the *Pinta*, set up a shout of "*Land!*" A gun was fired as the signal. The ships lay to. There was music and jubilee; and just at sunrise Columbus stepped ashore, set up the banner of Castile in the presence of the natives, and named the island San Salvador. During the three remaining months of this first voyage the islands of Concepcion, Cuba, and Hayti were added to the list of discoveries; and on the bay of Caracola, in the last-named island, was erected a fort, the first structure built by Europeans in the New World. In the early part of January, 1493, Columbus sailed for Spain, where he arrived in March, and was every where greeted with rejoicings and applause.

6. In September of the following autumn Columbus sailed on his second voyage, which resulted in the discovery of the Windward group and the islands of Jamaica and Porto Rico. It was at this time that the first colony was established in Hayti, and Columbus's brother appointed governor. After an absence of nearly three years, Columbus returned to Spain; but he now found himself the victim of bitter jealousies and suspicions. All the rest of his life was clouded with persecutions and misfortunes.

7. In 1498 Columbus made a third voyage, discovered the island of Trinidad and the mainland of South America, near the mouth of the Oronoco. Thence he sailed back to Hayti, where he found his colony disorganized; and here, while attempting to restore order, he was seized by an agent of the Spanish government, put in chains, and carried to Spain. After much disgraceful treatment, he was sent out on a fourth and last voyage, in search of the Indies; but besides making some explorations along the south side of the Gulf of Mexico, the expedition accomplished nothing, and Columbus returned once more to his ungrateful country. The good Isabella was dead, and the great discoverer, a friendless and despised old man, sank into the grave.

8. Of all the wrongs done to the memory of Columbus, the greatest was that which robbed him of the name of the new continent. In the year 1499, AMERIGO VESPUCCI, a Florentine navigator of no great celebrity, reached the eastern coast of South America. Two years later he made a second voyage, and then hastened home to give to Europe the first published account of the Western World. In his narrative all reference to Columbus was omitted; and thus through his own craft, assisted by the dullness of the times, the name of this Vespucci, rather than that of the true discoverer, was given to the New World.

9. The discovery of America produced great excitement in Europe. In Spain especially there was wonderful zeal and enthusiasm. Within ten years after the death of Columbus, the principal islands of the West Indies were explored and colonized. In the year 1510 the Spaniards planted on the Isthmus of Darien their first continental colony. Three years later, DE BALBOA, the governor of the colony, crossed the isthmus and from an eminence looked down

upon the Pacific. Not satisfied with merely seeing the great water, he waded in a short distance, and drawing his sword, took possession of the ocean in the name of the king of Spain.

10. Meanwhile, PONCE DE LEON, who had been a companion of Columbus, fitted out a private expedition of discovery and adventure. He had grown rich as governor of Porto Rico, and had also grown old. But there was a Fountain of Perpetual Youth somewhere in the Bahamas—so said a tradition in Spain—and in that fountain the old soldier would bathe and be young again. So in the year 1512, he set sail from Porto Rico; and on Easter Sunday came in sight of an unknown shore. There were waving forests, green leaves, and birds of song. Partly in honor of the day, called in the ritual of the Church *Pascua Florida*, and partly to describe the delightful landscape, he named the new shore FLORIDA—the Land of Flowers.

11. A landing was made a short distance north of where, a half century later, St. Augustine was founded. The country was claimed for the king of Spain, and the search was continued for the Fountain of Youth. The romantic adventurer turned southward, explored the coast for many leagues, discovered the Tortugas, and then sailed back to Porto Rico, no younger than when he started.

12. The king of Spain gave Ponce the governorship of his Land of Flowers, and sent him thither to establish a colony. He did not, however, reach his province until the year 1521, and then the Indians were hostile. Scarcely had he landed when they fell upon him in battle; many of the Spaniards were killed, and the rest had to fly to the ships for safety. Ponce de Leon himself was wounded with an arrow, and carried back to Cuba to die.

RECAPITULATION.

Spain makes the New World known to Europe.—Old ideas about the figure of the earth.—Columbus.—Sketch of his life.—The favor of Isabella.—Columbus departs on his first voyage.—Discovers San Salvador, Cuba, and Hayti.—Second voyage of Columbus.—Third.—He discovers South America.—Fourth voyage.—Columbus's misfortunes and death.—Wrong done to his memory.—Vespucci makes two voyages to South America.—Excitement in Europe.—A colony is planted on the Isthmus.—Balboa discovers the Pacific.—Ponce de Leon makes explorations in Florida.—Is killed by the Indians.

CHAPTER IV.

SPANISH DISCOVERIES IN AMERICA.—CONTINUED.

THE year 1517 was marked by the discovery of Yucatan by FERNANDEZ DE CORDOVA. While exploring the northern coast of the country, his company was attacked by the natives, and he himself mortally wounded. During the next year the coast of Mexico was explored for a great distance by GRIJALVA, assisted by Cordova's pilot; and in the year 1519, FERNANDO CORTEZ landed with his fleet at Tabasco, and in two years conquered the Aztec empire of Mexico.

2. Among the daring enterprises which marked the beginning of the sixteenth century, that of FERDINAND MAGELLAN is worthy of special mention. A Portuguese by birth, a navigator by profession, this bold man determined to discover a south-west passage to Asia. With this object in view, he appealed to the king of Portugal for ships and men. The monarch listened coldly, and gave no encouragement. Incensed at this treatment, Magellan went to Spain, and laid his plans before Charles V. The Emperor seized the opportunity, and ordered a fleet of five ships to be fitted out at the public expense and properly manned.

3. The voyage was begun from Seville in August of 1519. Magellan soon reached the coast of South America, and spent the autumn in explorations. Not at first successful in his efforts, he passed the winter on the coast of Brazil. Renewing his voyage southward, he came at last to that strait which still bears his name, and passing through, found himself in the open and boundless ocean. The weather was beautiful, and the peaceful deep was called THE PACIFIC.

4. Magellan now held steadily on his course for nearly four months, suffering much from want of water and scarcity of pro-

visions. In March of 1520 he came to the group of islands called the Ladrones. Sailing still westward, he reached the Philippine group, where he was killed in a battle with the natives. But the fleet was now near to China, and the rest of the route was easy. A new captain was chosen, and the voyage was continued to the Moluccas. Only a single ship was now deemed in a fit condition to venture on the homeward voyage; but in this vessel the crews embarked, and returning by way of the Cape of Good Hope arrived in Spain in September, 1522. The circumnavigation of the globe, long believed in as a possibility, had now been accomplished.

5. The next important voyage to America was in the year 1520. DE AYLLON, a judge in St. Domingo, conducted the expedition. He and six other wealthy men, eager to stock their plantations with slaves, determined to do so by kidnapping natives from the Bahamas. Two vessels were fitted out for the purpose, and De Ayllon commanded in person. When the ships were nearing their destination, they encountered a storm which drove them northward and brought them to the coast of South Carolina. The name of Chicora was given to the country, and the River Cambahee was called the Jordan. The friendly natives made presents to the strangers and treated them with great cordiality. They flocked on board the ships; and when the decks were crowded De Ayllon weighed anchor and sailed away. A few days afterward a storm wrecked one of the ships, and most of the poor wretches who were huddled under the hatches of the other died.

6. Returning to Spain, De Ayllon repeated the story of his exploit to Charles V., who gave him the governorship of Chicora. On reaching his province in 1525, he found the natives hostile. His best ship ran aground in the mouth of the Jordan, and the Indians fell upon him with fury, killing many of the crew. The rest were glad enough to get away with their lives.

7. In 1526 Charles V. appointed DE NARVAEZ governor of Florida. The territory thus placed at his disposal extended from Cape Sable three-fifths of the way around the Gulf of Mexico. De Narvaez arrived at Tampa Bay in April of 1528. His force consisted of two hundred and sixty soldiers and forty horsemen.

The natives treated them with suspicion, and, holding up their gold trinkets, pointed to the north. The hint was eagerly caught at by the Spaniards, whose imaginations were fired with the sight of the precious metal. They struck boldly into the forests, expecting to find cities and empires, and found instead swamps and savages. Crossing the Withlacoochie and the Suwanee, they finally came to Apalachee, a squalid village of forty cabins. This, then, was the mighty city to which their guides had directed them.

8. Oppressed with fatigue and goaded by hunger, they plunged again into the woods and wandered on, until they reached the sea at the harbor of St. Mark's. Here they expected to find their ships, but not a ship was there, or had been. With great labor they constructed some brigantines, and put to sea in hope of reaching the Spanish settlements in Mexico. After shipwrecks and almost endless wanderings, only four miserable men of all the company, under the leadership of the heroic De Vaca, were rescued at the village of San Miguel, on the Pacific coast, and conducted to the city of Mexico.

9. In the year 1537 a new expedition was planned which surpassed all the others in the brilliancy of its beginning and the disasters of its end. FERDINAND DE SOTO was the leader. At his own request, he was appointed governor of Cuba and Florida, with the privilege of exploring and conquering the latter country. A great company of young Spaniards flocked to his standard. Of these he selected six hundred of the most gallant and daring. Great preparations were made for the conquest; arms and stores were provided; shackles were wrought for the slaves; tools for the forge and workshop were supplied; twelve priests were chosen to conduct religious ceremonies; and a herd of swine was driven on board to fatten on the maize and mast of the country.

10. Leaving the harbor of San Lucar, the fleet touched at Havana, and the enthusiasm was kindled to a higher pitch than in Spain. De Soto left his wife to govern Cuba during his absence; and after a voyage of two weeks, the ships cast anchor in Tampa Bay. Some of the Cubans who had joined the expedition were terrified at the prospect before them and sailed back to the security of home; but De Soto and his cavaliers despised such cowardice,

and began their march into the interior. In October of 1539 they arrived at the country of the Apalachians, on the left bank of Flint River, where they spent the winter. For four months they remained in this locality, sending out exploring parties in various directions. One of these companies reached the gulf at Pensacola, and made arrangements that supplies should be sent out from Cuba to that place during the following summer.

11. In the early spring the Spaniards left their winter-quarters and continued their march to the north and east. An Indian guide told them of a powerful and populous empire in that direction; a woman was empress, and the land was full of gold. A Spanish soldier, who had been a captive among the Indians, denied the truth of the story; but De Soto and the freebooters pressed on through the swamps and woods. In April, 1540, they came upon the Ogechee River. Here they were delayed. The Indian guide went mad, and lost the whole company in the forest. By the 1st of May they had reached South Carolina, and were within a two days' march of where De Ayllon had lost his ships.

12. From this place the wanderers turned westward, and passed across Northern Georgia from the Chattahouche to the upper tributaries of the Coosa; thence down that river to Lower Alabama. Here, just above the confluence of the Alabama and the Tombecbee, they came upon the Indian town of Mauville, or Mobile, where a battle was fought with the natives. The town was set on fire, and two thousand five hundred of the Indians were killed or burned to death. Eighteen of De Soto's men were killed and a hundred and fifty wounded. The Spaniards also lost most of their horses and baggage.

13. The ships of supply had meanwhile arrived at Pensacola, but De Soto and his men were too proud to avail themselves of help. Turning to the north, by the middle of December they reached the country of the Chickasaws. They crossed the Yazoo; snow fell; and the Spaniards were on the point of starvation. They succeeded, however, in finding some fields of maize and an Indian village, which promised them shelter for the winter. Here, in February, 1541, they were attacked in the night by the Indians, who set the town on fire, determining to make an end of the for-

eigners; but Spanish weapons and discipline again saved De Soto and his men.

14. The Spaniards next set out to journey farther westward, and the guides brought them to the Mississippi. The point where the Father of Waters was first seen by white men was a little north of the thirty-fourth parallel of latitude; the day of the discovery can not certainly be known. The Indians came down the river in a fleet of canoes, and offered to carry the Spaniards over; but a crossing was not effected until the latter part of May.

15. De Soto's men now found themselves in the land of the Dakotas. The natives were inoffensive and superstitious. At one place they were going to worship the Spaniards, but De Soto would not permit such idolatry. They continued their march to the St. Francis River, which they crossed, and reached the site of New Madrid. Thence westward the march was renewed for about two hundred miles; thence southward to the tributaries of the Washita River. On the banks of this stream they passed the winter of 1541–42. Here the Spaniards treated the natives with savage cruelty.

16. De Soto's men now turned toward the sea, and came upon the Mississippi in the neighborhood of Natchez. The spirit of the leader was completely broken. A malignant fever seized upon his emaciated frame, and then death. The priests chanted a requiem, and in the middle of the night his companions put his body into a rustic coffin and sunk it in the Mississippi.

17. Before his death, De Soto had named Moscoso as his successor. Under his leadership, the half-starved adventurers turned once more to the west. They crossed the country to the upper waters of the Red River, and then ranged the hunting-grounds of the Pawnees and the Comanches. In December of 1542 they came again to the Mississippi, a short distance above the mouth of Red River. Here they built seven boats, and on the 2d day of July, 1543, set sail for the sea. The distance was almost five hundred miles, and seventeen days were required to make the descent. On reaching the Gulf of Mexico, they steered to the south-west, and finally reached the settlement at the mouth of the River of Palms.

18. The next attempt by the Spaniards to colonize Florida was in the year 1565. The enterprise was entrusted to PEDRO MELENDEZ, a Spanish soldier of ferocious disposition. He was under sentence to pay a heavy fine at the time when he received his commission from Philip II. Melendez was to plant in some favorable district of Florida a colony of not less than five hundred persons, and was to receive two hundred and twenty-five square miles of land adjacent to the settlement, and a large salary. Twenty-five hundred persons joined the expedition.

19. The real object had in view by Melendez was to destroy a colony of French Protestants, called Huguenots, who had made a settlement near the mouth of the St. John's River. This was within the limits of the territory claimed by Spain; and Melendez thought that to kill French heretics in the name of patriotism and religion was the way in which to restore his character and bring him into favor again. His former crimes were to be washed out in the blood of innocent men. The Catholic party at the French court had communicated with the Spanish court as to the whereabouts and intentions of the Huguenots, so that Melendez knew where to find and how to destroy them.

20. It was St. Augustine's day when the Spaniards came in sight of the shore, but the landing was not effected until the 2d of September. The harbor and the river which enters it from the south were named in honor of the saint. On the 8th day of the same month, Philip II. was proclaimed monarch of North America; a solemn mass was said by the priests; and the foundation-stones of the oldest town in the United States were put into their place. This was seventeen years before the founding of Santa Fé, and forty-two years before the settlement at Jamestown.

21. Melendez soon turned his attention to the Huguenots. The latter were expecting to be attacked, and all their vessels except two sailed out of the river and put to sea, intending to anticipate the movements of the Spaniards. But a furious storm arose and dashed to pieces every ship in the fleet. Most of the crews, however, reached the shore at the mouth of the river. Melendez collected his forces at St. Augustine, stole through the woods, and falling on the defenseless colony, utterly destroyed it. Men, women,

and children were alike given up to butchery. Two hundred were massacred. A few escaped into the forest, Laudonniere, the Huguenot leader, among the number, and were picked up by the two French ships which had been saved from the storm.

22. The crews of the wrecked vessels were the next object of vengeance. Melendez discovered them, and deceiving them with treacherous promises, induced them to surrender. They were ferried across the river and driven off, tied two and two, toward St. Augustine. As they approached the Spanish fort, a signal was given and the work of slaughter began anew. Seven hundred defenceless victims were slain. Only a few mechanics and Catholic servants were left alive. With this bloody work the first permanent European colony was planted in our country.

23. The Spaniards had now explored the coast from the Isthmus of Darien to Port Royal in South Carolina. They were acquainted with the country west of the Mississippi as far north as New Mexico and Missouri, and east of that river they had traversed the Gulf States as far as the mountain ranges of Tennessee and North Carolina. With the establishment of their first permanent colony on the coast of Florida, the period of Spanish voyage and discovery may be said to end.

24. A brief account of the only important voyages of the Portuguese to America will here be given. At the time of the discovery by Columbus, John II. was king of Portugal; but he paid little attention to the New World. In 1495 he was succeeded by his cousin Manuel, a man of different character. This monarch, in order to secure some of the benefits which yet remained to discoverers, fitted out two vessels, and in the summer of 1501 sent GASPER CORTEREAL to make a voyage to America.

25. The Portuguese ships reached Maine in July, and explored the coast for nearly seven hundred miles. Little attention was paid by Cortereal to the great forests of pine which stood along the shore, promising ship-yards and cities. He satisfied his rapacity by kidnapping fifty Indians, whom, on his return to Portugal, he sold as slaves. A new voyage was then undertaken, with the purpose of capturing another cargo of natives; but a year went by, and no tidings arrived from the fleet. The brother of the

Portuguese captain then sailed in hope of finding the missing vessels. He also was lost, but in what manner is not known. The fate of the Cortereals and their slave-ships has remained a mystery of the sea.

RECAPITULATION.

Cordova discovers Yucatan.—Grijalva explores Mexico.—Cortez invades and conquers the country.—Magellan sails around South America.—His crew reach the East Indies.—Return to Europe.—Narvaez is appointed governor of Florida.—Explores the country.—The company is shipwrecked.—Four men reach San Miguel.—De Soto sets out on an expedition.—Arrives at Tampa Bay.—Spends the winter on Flint River.—The company march into South Carolina.—Cross into Georgia.—Capture Mauville.—Spend a winter on the Yazoo.—Discover the Mississippi.—Explore Arkansas and return.—De Soto dies.—His men again march westward.—Return to Red River.—Descend the Mississippi.—Reach the Spanish settlements.—Melendez comes to Florida, and founds St. Augustine.—Murders the Huguenots.—Massacres the shipwrecked crews.—Extent of the Spanish explorations.—The Portuguese voyage of Gaspar Cortereal.—He sells a cargo of Indian slaves.—The Cortereals are lost at sea.

CHAPTER V.

THE FRENCH IN AMERICA.

FRANCE was not slow to profit by the discoveries of Columbus. As early as 1504 the fishermen of Normandy and Brittany reached the banks of Newfoundland. A map of the Gulf of St. Lawrence was drawn by a Frenchman in the year 1506. Two years later some Indians were taken to France; and in 1518 the attention of Francis I. was turned to the New World. Five years afterward a voyage of discovery was planned, and JOHN VERRAZZANI of Florence was commissioned to conduct the expedition. The object of the voyage was to discover a north-west passage to the East Indies.

2. In January, 1524, Verrazzani left the shores of Europe. Sailing with a single ship, called the *Dolphin*, after fifty days of

tempestuous weather, he discovered the main land in the latitude of Wilmington. He sailed southward and northward along the coast and began a traffic with the natives. The Indians of this neighborhood were found to be a timid race, unsuspicious and confiding. A half-drowned sailor, washed ashore by the surf, was treated with kindness, and permitted to return to the ship.

3. The voyage was continued toward the north. The coast of New Jersey was explored, and the hills marked as containing minerals. The harbor of New York was entered and its spacious waters noted with admiration. At Newport, Verrazzani anchored for fifteen days, and a trade was again opened with the Indians. Here the French sailors repaid the confidence of the natives by kidnapping a child and attempting to steal an Indian girl.

4. From Newport, Verrazzani continued his explorations northward. The long line of the New England coast was traced with care. The Indians of the north were suspicious. They would buy no toys, but were eager to purchase knives and weapons of iron. In the latter part of May, Verrazzani reached Newfoundland. In July he returned to France and published an account of his great discoveries. The name of NEW FRANCE was given to the country whose coast had been traced by the crew of the *Dolphin*.

5. In 1534, Chabot, admiral of France, selected JAMES CARTIER, a seaman of St. Malo, to make a voyage to America. Two ships were fitted out for the enterprise, and after twenty days of sailing under cloudless skies anchored on the 10th day of May off the coast of Newfoundland. Cartier circumnavigated the island to the northward, crossed the Gulf of St. Lawrence, and entered the Bay of Chaleurs. Not finding a passage westward, he changed his course to the north, and ascended the coast as far as Gaspé Bay. Here he set up a cross and proclaimed the French king monarch of the country. Again he entered the St. Lawrence, and ascended the broad estuary until the narrowing banks made him aware that he was in the mouth of a river. Cartier, thinking it impracticable to pass the winter in the New World, set sail for France, and in thirty days reached St. Malo.

6. Another voyage was planned immediately. Three ships were provided, and a number of young noblemen joined the expedition.

The sails were set by zealous crews, and on the 19th of May the new voyage was begun. This time there was stormy weather, yet the passage to Newfoundland was made by the 10th of August. It was the day of St. Lawrence, and the name of that martyr was given to the gulf and to the stream which enters it from the west. The expedition proceeded up the river to the island of Orleans, where the ships were moored in a place of safety. Two Indians, whom Cartier had taken with him to France, gave information that higher up the river there was an important town. Proceeding thither in his boats, the French captain found it as the Indians had said. A village lay at the foot of a high hill in the middle of an island. Climbing to the top of the hill, Cartier named the island and town Mont-Real. The country was declared to belong to the king of France; and then the boats dropped down the river to the ships. During this winter twenty-five of Cartier's men were swept off by the scurvy, a malady hitherto unknown in Europe.

7. With the opening of spring, preparations were made to return to France. The winter had proved too much for French enthusiasm. A cross was again planted in the soil of the New World, and the homeward voyage began. The kind and generous king of the Hurons was decoyed on board and carried off to die. On the 6th of July the fleet reached St. Malo; but by the accounts which Cartier published, the French were greatly discouraged. Neither silver nor gold had been found in New France; and what was a new world good for that had not silver and gold?

8. Francis La Roque of Roberval was the next to undertake the colonization of America. This nobleman was commissioned by the court of France to plant a colony on the St. Lawrence. The titles of viceroy and lieutentant-general of New France were conferred upon him; but the man who was chiefly relied on to give character to the proposed colony was James Cartier. He only seemed competent to conduct the enterprise with any promise of success. His name was accordingly added to the list, and he was honored with the office of chief pilot and captain-general.

9. It was a difficult task to find material for the colony. The French peasants were not eager to embark for a country which

nothing better than savages and snow. Cartier's honest had left no room for dreaming. So the work of enlisting went on slowly, until the government opened the prisons ngdom and gave freedom to whoever would join the ex- There was a rush of robbers and swindlers, and the immediately filled. Only counterfeiters and traitors were e privilege of gaining their liberty in the New World.

May of 1541, five ships, under command of Cartier, left nd soon reached the St. Lawrence. The expedition pro- the river to the present site of Quebec, where a fort was nd named Charlesbourg. Here the colonists passed the Cartier was offended because of the subordinate position held, and made no effort to prosecute discoveries which efit no one but Roberval. When La Roque arrived with ts and supplies, Cartier sailed away with his part of the and returned to Europe. Roberval was left in New th three shiploads of criminals who could be restrained hipping and hanging. The winter was long and severe, g was welcomed for the opportunity which it gave of to France. The enterprise, undertaken with so much ulted in nothing.

out the middle of the sixteenth century Coligni, the Pro- miral of France, formed the design of establishing in refuge for the Huguenots of his own country. In 1562 ed from Charles IX. the privilege of planting a colony tants in the New World. JOHN RIBAULT, of Dieppe, ed to lead the Huguenots to the land of promise. In the company reached the coast of Florida near the site gustine. The River St. John's was entered and named of May. The vessel then sailed along the coast to the f Port Royal; here it was determined to make the set- The colonists were landed on an island, and a stone p to mark the place. A fort was erected and named —a name which was afterward given by the English to the ntry from the Savannah to Virginia. In this fort Ri- twenty-six men, and then sailed back to France. Civil now raging in the kingdom, and neither supplies nor

colonists could be procured. In the following spring the men in the fort, discouraged with long waiting, mutinied and killed their leader. Then they built a rude brig and put to sea. They were at last picked up by an English ship and carried to France.

12. Two years after this attempt another colony was planned, and LAUDONNIERE chosen leader. The character, however, of this second Protestant company was very bad. The harbor of Port Royal was now shunned by the Huguenots, and a point on the River St. John's was selected for the settlement. A fort was built here, and things were going well until a part of the colonists contrived to get away with two of the ships. Instead of returning to France, they began to practice piracy; were caught, brought back, and hanged. The rest of the settlers were on the eve of breaking up the colony, when Ribault arrived with supplies and restored order. It was at this time that Melendez discovered the Huguenots and murdered them.

13. But DOMINIC DE GOURGES of Gascony visited the Spaniards with signal vengeance. This man fitted out three ships, and with only fifty seamen on board arrived on the coast of Florida. With this handful of soldiers he surprised three Spanish forts on the St. John's, and made prisoners of the inmates. Unable to hold his position, he hanged the leading captives to the branches of the trees, and put up this inscription to explain what he had done: "Not Spaniards, but murderers."

14. In the year 1598, the MARQUIS OF LA ROCHE obtained a commission authorizing him to found a colony in the New World. The prisons of France were again opened to furnish the emigrants. The vessels soon reached the coast of Nova Scotia, and anchored at Sable Island, a dismal place, where forty men were left to form a settlement. La Roche returned to France and died; and for seven years the forty criminals languished on Sable Island. Then they were picked up by some passing ships and carried back to France, but were never remanded to prison.

15. In the year 1603 the sovereignty of the country from the latitude of Philadelphia to one degree north of Montreal, was granted to DE MONTS. The chief provisions of his patent were a monopoly of the fur-trade of the new country, and religious freedom

for the Huguenots. With two shiploads of colonists he left France in March of 1604, and reached the Bay of Fundy. The summer was spent in making explorations. Poutrincourt, the captain of one of the ships, being pleased with a harbor which he had discovered on the coast of Nova Scotia, asked and obtained a grant of some beautiful lands adjacent, and with a part of the crew went on shore. De Monts crossed to the west side of the bay, and began to build a fort at the mouth of the St. Croix. But in the following spring they abandoned this place and joined Poutrincourt. Here, on the 14th day of November, 1605, the foundations of *the first permanent French settlement in America were laid.* The name of Port Royal was given to the fort, and the country, including Nova Scotia, was called ACADIA.

16. In 1603 SAMUEL CHAMPLAIN, the most soldierly man of his times, was commissioned by Rouen merchants to establish a trading post on the St. Lawrence. The traders saw that a traffic in furs was a surer road to riches than the search for gold and diamonds. Champlain crossed the ocean, sailed up the river, and selected the spot on which Quebec now stands, as the site for a fort. In the autumn he returned to France, and published a faithful account of his expedition.

17. In 1608, Champlain again visited America, and on the 3d of July in that year the foundations of Quebec were laid. In the next year he and two other Frenchmen joined a company of Huron and Algonquin Indians who were at war with the Iroquois of New York. With this band he ascended the Sorel River until he came to the long, narrow lake which has ever since borne the name of its discoverer.

18. In 1612 Champlain came to New France for the third time, and the success of the colony at Quebec was assured. Franciscan monks came over and began to preach among the Indians. They and the Protestants quarreled, and the settlement was much disturbed. Champlain again went with a war-party against the Iroquois. His company was defeated, he himself wounded and obliged to remain all winter among the Hurons. In 1617 he returned to the colony, in 1620 began to build, and four years afterward completed the fortress of St. Louis. When this castle appeared on

the high cliff above the town and river, the permanence of the French settlements on the St. Lawrence was no longer doubtful. Champlain became governor of New France, and died in 1635. To him, more than to any other man, the success of the French colonies in North America must be attributed.

RECAPITULATION.

The French reach America.—Verrazzani makes a voyage.—Explores the country as far north as Newfoundland.—Cartier is sent to America.—Reaches Newfoundland and enters the St. Lawrence.—Returns to Europe.—Sails on a second expedition.—Ascends the St. Lawrence.—His crew are attacked with scurvy.—He passes the winter at Quebec.—Returns to France.—Roberval plans a colony.—Cartier joined to the undertaking.—Prisons of France furnish emigrants.—Expedition reaches the St. Lawrence.—The leaders quarrel.—Cartier goes back to France.—The colony returns.—Roberval sails with another fleet.—Is lost at sea.—Ribault conducts a band of Huguenots to Port Royal.—Builds Fort Carolina.—The settlement is abandoned.—The enterprise renewed by Laudounière.—A Huguenot colony is established on the St. John's.—But destroyed by Melendez.—De Gourges takes vengeance on the Spaniards.—La Roche is commissioned to colonize America.—French prisons again opened.—A settlement is made on Sable Island.—The company carried to France.—De Monts made viceroy.—Departs with a colony.—Reaches the Bay of Fundy.—Port Royal founded by Poutrincourt.—De Monts on the St. Croix.—The country named Acadia.—Champlain receives a commission.—Sails with a colony to the St. Lawrence.—Goes against the Iroquois.—Returns and founds Quebec.

CHAPTER VI.

ENGLISH DISCOVERIES AND SETTLEMENTS.

ON the 5th of May, 1496, Henry VII., king of England, commissioned JOHN CABOT of Venice to make discoveries in the Atlantic and Indian Oceans, to carry the English flag, and to take possession of all countries which he might discover. Cabot was a brave, adventurous man who had been a sailor from his boyhood, and was now a wealthy merchant of Bristol. Five ships were fitted out, and every thing made ready for the voyage. In April,

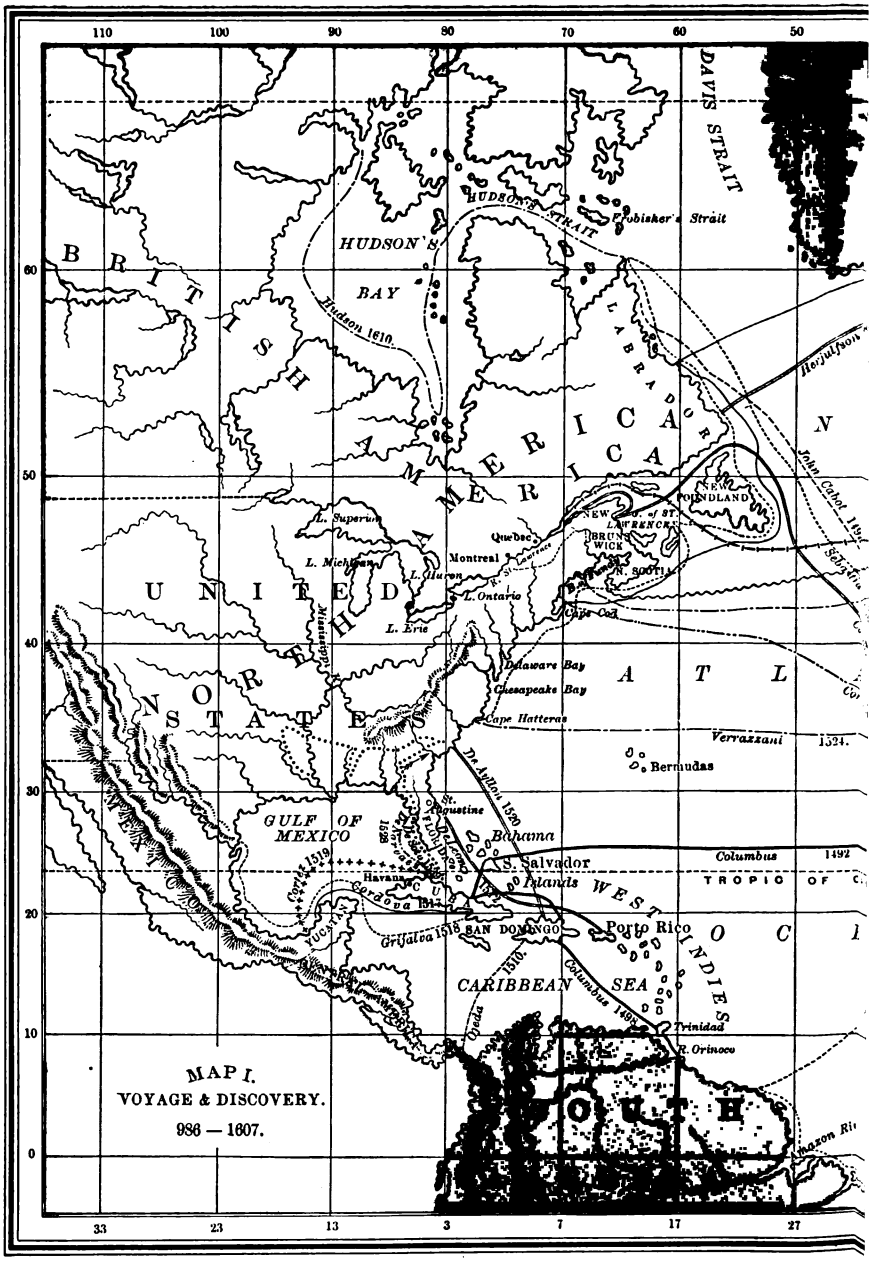
1497, the fleet left Bristol; and on the morning of the 24th of June, the gloomy shore of Labrador was seen. *This was the real discovery of the American continent.* Fourteen months elapsed before Columbus reached the coast of Guiana, and more than two years before Vespucci saw the main land of South America.

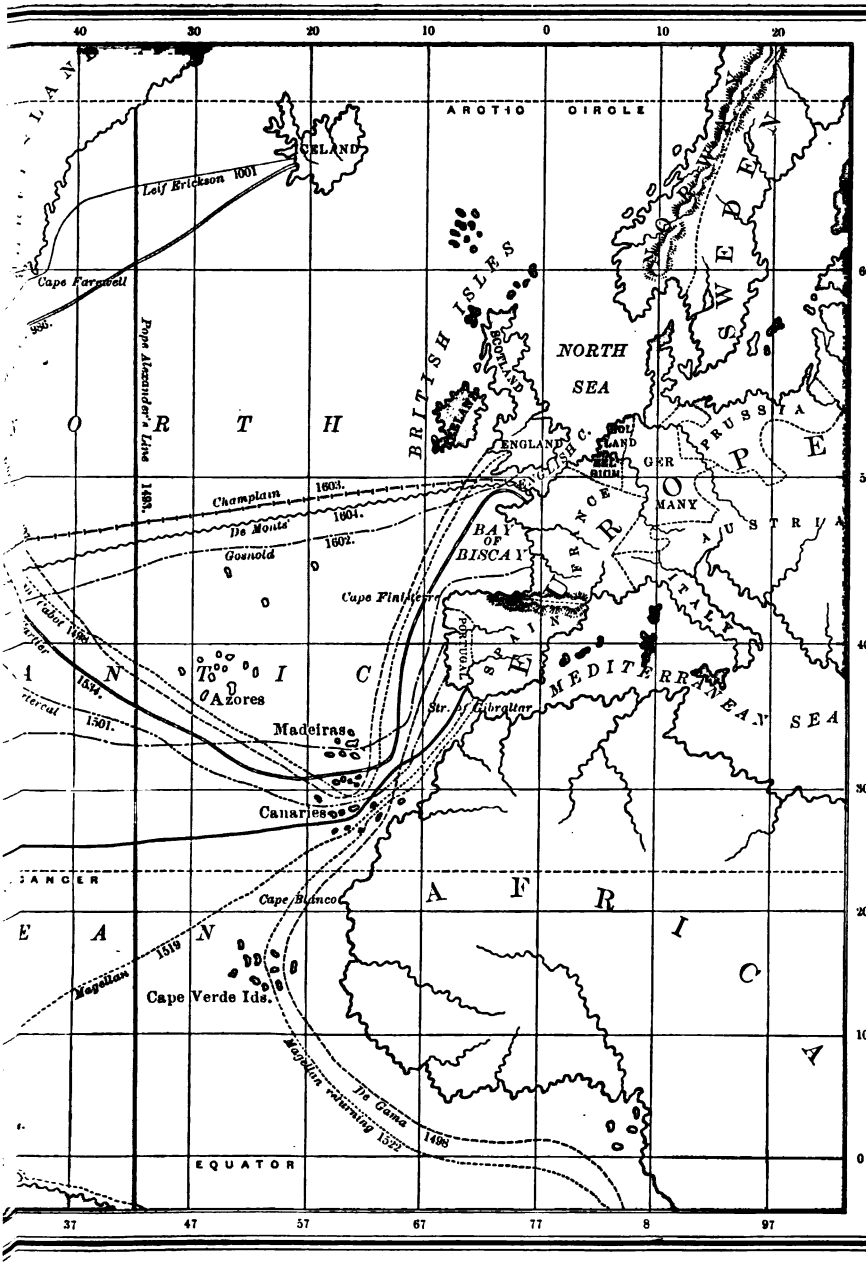
2. Cabot explored the coast of the country for several hundred miles. He supposed that the land was a part of the dominions of the Cham of Tartary; but finding no inhabitants, he went on shore, according to the terms of his commission, planted the flag of England, and took possession in the name of the English king. No man forgets his native land; by the side of the flag of his adopted country Cabot set up the banner of the *republic* of Venice—emblem of *another flag* which should one day float from sea to sea.

3. As soon as he had satisfied himself of the extent of the country, Cabot sailed for England. On the homeward voyage he twice saw the coast of Newfoundland, but made no landing. After an absence of three months, he reached Bristol, and was greeted with enthusiasm. The town had holiday, and the people were wild about the great discovery. The king gave him money; new ships were fitted out, and a new commission was signed in February of 1498. But after the date of this patent the name of John Cabot disappears from history. Where the rest of his life was passed and the circumstances of his death are unknown.

4. Sebastian, son of John Cabot, inherited his father's genius. He had already been to the New World on the first voyage, and now he took up his father's work with all the fervor of youth. The very fleet which had been equipped for John Cabot was entrusted to Sebastian. The object had in view was the foolish project of discovering a north-west passage to the Indies.

5. The voyage was made in the spring of 1498. Far to the north the icebergs compelled Sebastian to change his course. It was July, and the sun scarcely set at midnight. Seals were seen, and the ships plowed through such shoals of codfish as had never before been heard of. Labrador was again discovered. New Brunswick, Nova Scotia, and Maine were next explored. The whole coast of New England and of the Middle States was now, for the first time since the days of the Norsemen, traced by Europeans. Nor did


110
100
90
80
70
60
50
60
50
40
30
20
10
0
33
23
13
3
7
17
27
DAVIS STRAIT
HUDSON'S STRAIT
Frobisher's Strait
HUDSON'S BAY
Hudson 1610
BRITISH AMERICA
LABRADOR
Hoojulson
John Cabot 1497
NEWFOUNDLAND
NEW Gulf of ST. LAWRENCE
BRUNSWICK
N. SCOTIA
Quebec
Montreal
L. Superior
L. Michigan
L. Huron
L. Ontario
L. Erie
Cape Cod
UNITED STATES
NORTH
Delaware Bay
Chesapeake Bay
Cape Hatteras
ATL
Verrazzani 1524.
Bermudas
Da Ayllon 1520
St. Augustine
GULF OF MEXICO
Florida
Bahama
Columbus 1492
S. Salvador
Islands
WEST INDIES
TROPIC OF C
Cortez 1519
Havana
Cordova 1517
Grijalva 1518
SAN DOMINGO
Porto Rico
Columbus 1498
Ojeda 1510
CARIBBEAN SEA
Trinidad
R. Orinoco
SOUTH
Amazon Ri
MAP I.
VOYAGE & DISCOVERY.
986 — 1607.


40
30
20
10
0
10
20
ARCTIC CIRCLE
ICELAND
Leif Erickson 1001
Cape Farewell
986.
Pope Alexander's Line
1493.
BRITISH ISLES
SCOTLAND
IRELAND
NORTH SEA
ENGLAND
ENGLISH C.
HOLLAND
BELGIUM
GERMANY
PRUSSIA
AUSTRIA
EUROPE
Champlain 1603.
De Monts 1604.
Gonnold 1602.
BAY OF BISCAY
FRANCE
Cape Finisterre
PORTUGAL
SPAIN
ITALY
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
Str. of Gibraltar
Azores
Madeiras
Canaries
1534.
1501.
Cape Blanco
AFRICA
1519
Magellan
Cape Verde Ids.
Magellan returning 1522
Da Gama 1498
EQUATOR
37
47
57
67
77
8
97
60
50
40
30
20
10
0

Cabot desist from this work, which was bestowing the title of discovery on the crown of England, until he reached Cape Hatteras. From that point he began his homeward voyage.

6. The future career of Cabot was a strange one. Henry VII., although quick to appreciate the value of Sebastian's discoveries, was slow to reward the discoverer. When that monarch died, the king of Spain enticed Cabot away from England and made him pilot-major of the Spanish navy. He lived to be very old, but the circumstances of his death and his place of burial are unknown.

7. The year 1498 is the most marked in the whole history of discovery. In the month of May, VASCO DE GAMA, of Portugal, doubled the Cape of Good Hope and succeeded in reaching Hindostan. During the summer the younger Cabot traced the eastern coast of North America through more than twenty degrees of latitude. In August Columbus himself reached the mouth of the Orinoco. Of the three great discoveries, that of Cabot has proved to be by far the most important.

8. The career of English discovery was checked during the greater part of the sixteenth century. In 1493 Pope Alexander drew an imaginary line three hundred miles west of the Azores, and gave all islands and countries west of that line to Spain. Henry VII. was a Catholic, and did not care to have a conflict with his Church by claiming the New World. His son and successor, Henry VIII., at first adopted the same policy, and it was not until after the Reformation in England that the decision of the pope came to be disregarded, and finally despised and laughed at.

9. During the reign of Edward VI. the spirit of adventure was again aroused. In 1548 the king's council gave Sebastian Cabot a hundred pounds to return from Spain and become grand-pilot of England. The old admiral quitted Seville and once more sailed under the English flag. In the reign of Queen Mary the power of England on the sea was not materially extended, but with the accession of Elizabeth a new impulse was given to voyage and adventure.

10. MARTIN FROBISHER, aided by the earl of Warwick, began anew the work of discovery. Three small vessels were fitted out to sail in search of a north-west passage to Asia. One of Frobisher's ships was lost on the voyage; another returned to England,

but the third sailed on until a higher latitude was reached than ever before on the American coast. The group of islands in the mouth of Hudson's Strait was discovered. The larger island lying northward was named Meta Incognita. In latitude sixty-three degrees and eight minutes Frobisher entered the strait which has ever since borne his name. He then sailed for England, carrying home with him an Esquimau and a stone said to contain gold.

11. London was greatly excited. In May, 1577, a new fleet departed for Meta Incognita to gather the precious metal. For weeks the ships were in danger of being crushed among the icebergs. The summer was unfavorable. The vessels did not sail as far as Frobisher had done on a previous voyage. The mariners were alarmed at the perils around them, and sought the first opportunity to get out of these dangerous seas and return to England.

12. The English gold-hunters were not yet satisfied. Fifteen new vessels were fitted out, the queen bearing part of the expense, and in the spring of 1578 a third voyage was begun. Three of the ships, loaded with emigrants, were to remain in the promised land. The other twelve were to be freighted with gold-ore and return to London. The vessels, struggling through the icebergs, finally reached Meta Incognita and took on cargoes of *dirt*. The provision-ship slipped away and returned to England. Affairs grew desperate. The north-west passage was forgotten. The colony which was to be planted was no longer thought of. With several tons of the spurious ore under the hatches, the ships set sail for home. The El Dorado of the Esquimaux had proved a failure.

13. In 1577 Sir Francis Drake sailed around to the Pacific coast by the route which Magellan had discovered, and became a terror to the Spanish vessels in those waters. Having thus enriched himself, he formed the project of tracing up the western coast of North America until he should find a north-west passage, and thence sail eastward around the continent. He proceeded northward as far as Oregon, when his sailors, who had been for several years within the tropics, began to shiver with the cold, and the enterprise was given up. Drake passed the winter of 1579–80 in a harbor on the coast of Mexico. To all that portion of America

which he had thus explored he gave the name of New Albion; but the English claim thus established was of little value.

14. Sir Humphrey Gilbert was perhaps the first to form a rational plan of colonization in America. His idea was to plant an agricultural and commercial state. He sought aid from the queen, and received a patent authorizing him to take possession of any six hundred square miles of unoccupied territory in America, and to establish a colony of which he should be proprietor and governor. Assisted by his illustrious half-brother, Walter Raleigh, Gilbert prepared five vessels, and in June of 1583, sailed for the west. The best ship in the fleet abandoned the rest and returned to Plymouth. In August, Gilbert reached Newfoundland, and took possession of the country. Soon the sailors discovered some scales of mica, and a judge of metals declared the glittering mineral to be silver ore. The crews became insubordinate. Some went to digging the supposed silver, while others gratified their piratical disposition by attacking the Spanish fishing-ships in the neighboring harbors.

15. Meanwhile, one of Gilbert's vessels became worthless, and had to be abandoned. With the other three he sailed toward the south. Off the coast of Massachusetts, the largest of the ships was wrecked, and a hundred sailors were drowned. Gilbert determined to return to England. The weather was stormy, and the two ships now remaining were unfit for the sea. The captain remained in the weaker vessel, called the *Squirrel*, already shattered and ready to sink. As the ships were struggling through the sea at midnight the *Squirrel* was suddenly engulfed; not a man of the crew was saved. The other vessel finally reached Falmouth in safety.

16. The project of colonization was next renewed by Raleigh. In the spring of 1584 he obtained a new patent as liberal as Gilbert's. Raleigh was to become proprietor of a tract in America extending from the thirty-third to the fortieth parallel of latitude. This territory was to be peopled and organized into a state. The frozen north was now to be avoided, and the country of the Huguenots chosen as the seat of an empire. Two ships were fitted out, and the command given to Philip Amidas and Arthur Barlow.

17. In July the vessels reached Carolina. The sea was smooth and glassy. The woods were full of beauty and song. The natives

were generous and hospitable. The shores of Albemarle and Pamlico Sounds were explored, and a landing effected on Roanoke Island, where the English were entertained by the Indian queen. But neither Amidas nor Barlow had the courage necessary to the enterprise. After a stay of two months they returned to England, praising the beauties of the new land. Queen Elizabeth gave to her delightful country in the New World the name of VIRGINIA.

18. In December, 1584, Sir Walter's patent was confirmed by Parliament. The plan of colonization was undertaken with renewed zeal. The proprietor fitted out a second expedition, and appointed Ralph Lane governor of the colony. Sir Richard Grenville commanded the fleet, and a company, partly composed of young nobles, made up the crew. The fleet of seven vessels reached America on the 20th of June. At Cape Fear they were in danger of being wrecked; but six days afterward they reached Roanoke in safety. Here Lane was left with a hundred and ten of the immigrants to form a settlement. Grenville returned to England, taking with him a Spanish treasure-ship which he had captured.

19. Hostilities soon broke out between the English and the Indians. Wingina, the king, and several of his chiefs were allured into the power of the English and murdered. Hatred and gloom followed this deed; and the sense of danger became so great that when Sir Francis Drake came in sight with a fleet, the colonists prevailed on him to carry them back to England.

20. A few days afterward a shipload of stores arrived from the prudent Raleigh; but finding no colony, the vessel sailed back to England. Soon Sir Richard Grenville came to Roanoke with three well-laden ships, and made a fruitless search for the colonists. Not to lose possession of the country, he left fifteen men on the island, and set sail for home.

21. But another colony was easily made up. A charter of government was granted by the proprietor, John White was chosen governor, and every care taken to secure the success of the "City of Raleigh," soon to be founded in the west. In July the emigrants arrived in Carolina. A search for the fifteen men who had been left on Roanoke a year before revealed the fact that the natives had murdered them. Nevertheless, the northern

extremity of the island was chosen as the site for the city, and there the foundations were laid.

22. Disaster attended the enterprise. The Indians were still hostile. When peace was concluded Sir Walter conferred on Manteo, one of the Indian chiefs, the title of Lord of Roanoke—a silly piece of business. The copper-colored nobleman could do nothing to aid the colonists. The fear of starvation soon compelled White to return to England for supplies. Had the settlers given themselves to tilling the soil and building houses, no further help would have been needed. The 18th of August was the birthday of Virginia Dare, the first-born of English children in the New World. When White set sail for England he left behind a colony of a hundred and eight persons, whose fate has never been ascertained.

23. Raleigh soon sent out two supply-ships to succor his starving colony, but his efforts to reach them were unavailing. The vessels which he sent with stores went cruising after Spanish merchantmen and were captured by a man-of-war. Not until 1590 did the governor return to search for the unfortunate colonists. The island was a desert. No soul remained to tell the story of the lost.

24. Sir Walter, after spending two hundred thousand dollars in the attempt to found a colony, gave up the enterprise. He assigned his rights to an association of London merchants, and it was under their authority that White made the final search for the settlers of Roanoke. From this time very little in the way of discovery was accomplished by the English until 1602, when the work was renewed by BARTHOLOMEW GOSNOLD.

25. Thus far all the voyages to America had been by way of the Canary Islands and the West Indies. Abandoning this path, Gosnold, in a small vessel, called the *Concord*, sailed directly across the Atlantic, and in seven weeks reached Maine. The distance thus gained was fully two thousand miles. Explorations were made from Cape Elizabeth to Cape Cod. Here the captain, with four of his men, went on shore. It was the first landing of Englishmen within the limits of New England. On the most westerly of the Elizabeth Islands the first New England settlement was begun.

26. It was a short-lived enterprise. A traffic was opened with the natives which resulted in loading the *Concord* with sassafras-

root. When the ship was about to depart for England, the settlers pleaded for permission to return with their friends. Gosnold acceded to their demands, and the island was abandoned. After a voyage of five weeks, the *Concord* reached home in safety.

27. Gosnold gave glowing accounts of the country; and it was not long until another expedition to America was planned. Two vessels, the *Speedwell* and the *Discoverer*, composed the fleet, with MARTIN PRING for commander. A cargo of merchandise was put on board; and in April, 1603, the vessels sailed for America. They came safely to Penobscot Bay, and spent some time in exploring the harbors of Maine. Pring sought the sassafras region, and loaded his vessels at Martha's Vineyard. Thence he returned to England, reaching Bristol, after an absence of six months.

28. Two years later, GEORGE WAYMOUTH made a voyage to America. He anchored among the islands of St. George, on the coast of Maine, and explored the harbor. A trade was opened with the Indians, some of whom returned with Waymouth to England. The voyage homeward was safely made, the vessels reaching Plymouth in June. This was the last English expedition before the actual establishment of a colony in America.

RECAPITULATION.

Henry VII. commissions John Cabot.—Who discovers America.—Is recommissioned.—Sebastian explores the American coast.—Becomes pilot of Spain.—The year 1498.—English discovery impeded.—Maritime enterprise under Elizabeth.—Frobisher sails to America.—Returns to London.—Conducts a fleet to Meta Incognita.—Sir Francis Drake goes to the Pacific coast.—Attempts the discovery of a north-west passage.—Gilbert forms a plan of colonization.—Assisted by Raleigh.—Conducts a fleet to Newfoundland.—The spurious minerals.—Gilbert loses his ships and men.—Is lost at sea.—Raleigh sends out Amidas and Barlow.—They reach Roanoke.—The place is abandoned.—Raleigh sends a second colony.—Difficulties with the Indians.—The colony is taken home by Drake.—A new charter granted by Raleigh.—Emigrants arrive at Roanoke.—A town is laid out.—Troubles with the Indians.—Manteo is made a peer.—White returns to England.—Birth of Virginia Dare.—The fate of the colony.—Raleigh assigns his patent.—Gosnold makes a direct voyage.—Attempts to form a settlement on Elizabeth Island.—Gosnold trades with the natives.—An expedition is sent out under Pring.—He explores the New England coast.—Waymouth sails on a voyage.—Trades with the Indians.—Returns to England.

CHAPTER VII.

ENGLISH DISCOVERIES AND SETTLEMENTS.—CONTINUED.

THE 10th of April, 1606, was a great day in the history of the New World. On that day King James I. issued two patents to men of his kingdom, authorizing them to colonize all that portion of North America lying between the thirty-fourth and forty-fifth parallels of latitude. The immense tract extended from the mouth of Cape Fear River to Passamaquoddy Bay, and westward to the Pacific Ocean.

2. The first of these patents was granted to an association of nobles, gentlemen and merchants called the LONDON COMPANY; while the second was issued to a similar body organized at Plymouth, and bearing the name of the PLYMOUTH COMPANY. To the former corporation was given the region between the thirty-fourth and the thirty-eighth degrees of latitude, and to the latter the tract from the forty-first to the forty-fifth degree. The belt of three degrees between the thirty-eighth and forty-first parallels was to be open to colonies of either company, but no settlement of one party was to be made within less than a hundred miles of the nearest settlement of the other. The nature and extent of these grants will be fully understood from an examination of the accompanying map. Only the London Company was successful in establishing an American colony.

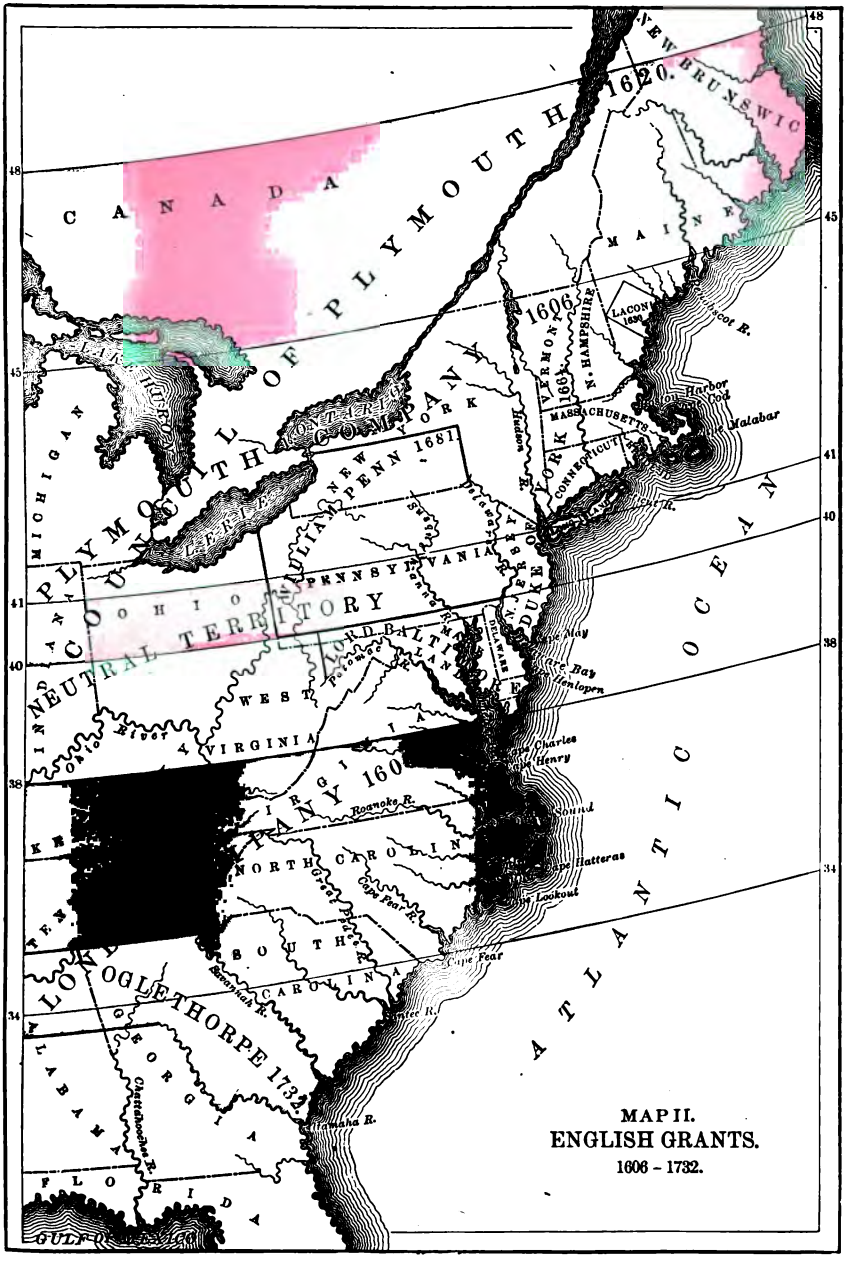
3. The leading man in the London Company was Bartholomew Gosnold. His principal associates were Edward Wingfield, a rich merchant, Robert Hunt, a clergyman, and John Smith, an adventurer. Sir John Popham, chief-justice of England, Richard Hakluyt, a historian, and Sir Ferdinand Gorges, a nobleman, were also members. The affairs of the company were to be administered by

a Superior Council, residing in England, and an Inferior Council, residing in the colony. All legislative authority was vested in the king. In the organization of the companies no principles of self-government were admitted. A foolish provision in the patent required the proposed colony to hold all property in common for five years. The best law of the charter allowed the emigrants to retain in the New World all the rights of Englishmen.

4. In August, 1606, the Plymouth Company sent their first ship to America. In the autumn another vessel was sent out, which remained in the country until the following spring. Encouraged by the reports which were brought back, the company, in the summer of 1607, despatched a colony of a hundred persons. A settlement was begun at the mouth of the River Kennebec. A block-house and several cabins were built, and the place named St. George. Then the ships returned to England, leaving a colony of forty-five persons; but the winter of 1607–8 was very severe. Some of the settlers were starved and some frozen; the store-house was burned, and when summer came the remnant escaped to England.

5. The London Company had better fortune. A fleet of three vessels was fitted out under command of Christopher Newport. In December the ships, having on board a hundred and five colonists, among whom were Wingfield and Smith, left England. Newport foolishly took the old route by way of the Canaries, and did not reach America until April. It was the design to land on Roanoke Island, but a storm carried the ships northward into the Chesapeake. Entering the bay, the vessels came to the mouth of a beautiful river, which was named in honor of King James. Proceeding up stream about fifty miles, Newport found on the northern bank a peninsula noted for its beauty; the ships were moored and the emigrants went on shore. Here, on the 13th day of May (Old Style), 1607, were laid the foundations of Jamestown, *the oldest English settlement in America.*

6. Meanwhile a new impulse was given to the affairs of North Virginia by the activity of John Smith. In 1609 he left Jamestown and returned to England. There he formed a partnership with four wealthy merchants of London to trade in furs and establish a colony within the limits of the Plymouth grant. Two ships



MAP II.

ENGLISH GRANTS.

1606 – 1732.

were freighted with goods and put under Smith's command. The summer of 1614 was spent on the coast of Maine, where a traffic was carried on with the Indians. But Smith himself found nobler work to do. Beginning as far north as practicable, he explored the country, and drew a map of the whole coast from the Penobscot to Cape Cod. In this map, which is a marvel of accuracy considering the circumstances under which it was made, the country was called NEW ENGLAND. In November the ships returned to Plymouth, taking with them the proofs of a successful voyage.

7. In 1615 a small colony of sixteen persons, led by Smith, was sent out in a single ship. When nearing the American coast, they encountered a storm, and were obliged to return to England. In spite of these reverses, the leader renewed the enterprise, and raised another company. Part of his crew became mutinous and left him in mid-ocean. His own ship was captured by a band of French pirates, and himself imprisoned in the harbor of Rochelle. But he escaped in an open boat and made his way to London. He now published a description of New England, and urged the company of Plymouth to action. But the London Company was jealous of its rival, and put obstacles in the way. The years 1617–18 were spent in making plans of colonization, until finally the Plymouth Company was superseded by a new corporation called the COUNCIL OF PLYMOUTH. On this body were conferred almost unlimited powers and privileges. All that part of America lying between the fortieth and the forty-eighth parallels of north latitude, and extending from ocean to ocean, was given in fee simple to the forty men who composed the council. More than a million of square miles were embraced in the grant.

8. John Smith was now appointed admiral of New England. The king issued a proclamation enforcing the charter, and every thing gave promise of the early settlement of America. Such were the schemes of men to people the Western Continent. Meanwhile, a Power above the will of man was working out the same result. The time had come when, without the knowledge or consent of James I. or the Council of Plymouth, a permanent settlement should be made on the shores of New England.

9. About the close of the sixteenth century, a number of poor

Puritans, scattered through the North of England, joined themselves together for free religious worship. They believed that every man has a right to know the truth of the Scriptures for himself. Such a doctrine was repugnant to the Church of England. Queen Elizabeth declared such teaching to be subversive of the monarchy. King James was also intolerant; and from time to time violent persecutions broke out against the feeble and dispersed Christians.

10. Many of the Puritans left England and went into exile in Holland. In 1608 their ship brought them in safety to Amsterdam, where, under the care of their pastor, John Robinson, they passed one winter, and then removed to Leyden. They took the name of PILGRIMS, and grew content to have no home or resting-place. But they did not forget their native land. During their ten years of residence at Leyden they longed to return to their own country. The strange language of the Dutch sounded harshly to them. They pined with unrest, and were anxious to do something to convince King James of their patriotism.

11. In 1617 the Puritans began to meditate a removal to the New World. There they would forget the past, and be at peace with their country. John Carver and Robert Cushman were despatched to England to ask permission to settle in America. The agents of the Council of Plymouth favored the request, but the king refused. The most that he would do was to make a promise *to let the Pilgrims alone in America.*

12. The Puritans were not discouraged. Out of their own resources they provided the means of departure, and set their faces toward the sea. The *Speedwell*, a small vessel, was purchased at Amsterdam, and the *Mayflower*, a larger ship, was hired for the voyage. The former was to carry the emigrants from Leyden to Southampton, where they were to be joined by the *Mayflower*, with another company from London. Assembling at the harbor of Delft, on the River Meuse, as many of the Pilgrims as could be accommodated went on board the *Speedwell*. The whole congregation accompanied them to the shore. There Robinson gave them a farewell address, and the prayers of those who were left behind followed the vessel out of sight.

13. On the 5th of August, 1620, the vessels left the harbor of Southampton; but in a few days the *Speedwell* was found to be shattered and leaky. Both ships anchored at Dartmouth, and eight days were spent in making repairs. Again the sails were set; but the *Speedwell* was unable to breast the ocean, and put back to Plymouth. Here the ship was abandoned; but the Pilgrims were encouraged by the citizens, and the more zealous went on board the *Mayflower* for a final effort. On the 6th of September the first colony of New England, numbering one hundred and two souls, saw the shores of Old England sink behind the sea.

14. For sixty-three days the ship was buffeted by storms. It had been the intention of the Pilgrims to found their colony on the Hudson; but the tempest carried them northward to Cape Cod. On the 9th of November the vessel was anchored in the bay; a meeting was held and the colony organized under a solemn compact. In the charter which they there made for themselves the emigrants declared their loyalty to the English king, and agreed to live in peace and harmony. Such was the simple constitution of the oldest New England State. To this instrument all the heads of families, forty-one in number, set their names. An election was held in which all had an equal voice, and John Carver was chosen governor.

15. Miles Standish, John Bradford, and a few others, went on shore and explored the country; nothing was found but a heap of Indian corn under the snow. On the 6th of December, the governor landed with fifteen companions. The weather was dreadful. Rains and snow-storms covered the clothes of the Pilgrims with ice. They were attacked by the Indians, but escaped to the ship with their lives. The vessel was steered to the southwest for forty-five miles, and at last driven by accident into a haven on the west side of the bay. The next day, being the Sabbath, was spent in religious services, and on Monday, the 11th of December (Old Style), 1620, the Pilgrims landed on Plymouth Rock.

16. It was the dead of winter. The houseless immigrants fell a-dying of hunger and cold. After a few days spent in explorations, a site was selected near the first landing, the snow-drifts were cleared away, and on the 9th of January the toilers began to build

New Plymouth. Every man took on himself the work of making his own house; but the ravages of disease grew daily worse. Lung-fevers wasted every family. At one time only seven men were able to work on the sheds which were built for protection. If an early spring had not brought relief, the colony must have perished. Such were the sufferings and sorrows of that winter when New England began to be.

RECAPITULATION.

King James issues patents to the London and Plymouth Companies.—The London Company to plant colonies between the 34th and the 38th parallels.—The Plymouth Company to make settlements from the 41st to the 45th degree.—Gosnold, Smith, Hakluyt, and Wingfield, the leaders.—No democratic principles in the charter.—A ship is sent out by the Plymouth Company.—A second vessel despatched to America.—A settlement is attempted on the Kennebec.—Is abandoned.—A fleet is sent out by the London Company.—Arrives in the Chesapeake.—Jamestown is founded.—The Plymouth Company revived by Smith.—He explores and maps New England.—Attempts are made to form a colony.—The Plymouth Company is superseded by the Council of Plymouth.—A new plan of colonization is made.—Smith appointed admiral.—The Puritans in England.—They remove to Amsterdam and Leyden.—Determine to remove to America.—Ask permission.—Meet with discouragements.—Procure two vessels.—Sail from Leyden, and afterward from Southampton.—The *Speedwell* is found unfit for the voyage.—The Pilgrims depart in the *Mayflower*.—A stormy voyage.—Cape Cod is reached.—The frame of government.—Carver is elected governor.—The landing is delayed.—The ship driven by storms.—Enters Plymouth harbor.—The Puritans on shore.—Begin to build.—Attacked with diseases.—Many die.—An early spring brings relief.

CHAPTER VIII.

VOYAGES AND SETTLEMENTS OF THE DUTCH.

THE first Dutch settlement in America was made on Manhattan Island. The colony resulted from the voyages of SIR HENRY HUDSON. In the year 1607 this great sailor was employed by a company of London merchants to discover a new route to the

Indies. He first made a voyage in a single ship into the North Atlantic, but was compelled by the icebergs to return to England. Another voyage also resulted in failure; and his employers gave up the enterprise. In 1609 the Dutch East India Company furnished him with a ship called the *Half Moon*, and in April he set out on his third voyage for the Indies. Again he ran among the icebergs, and further sailing was impossible. But not discouraged, he immediately set sail for America.

2. In July, Hudson reached the coast of Maine. Sailing southward, he passed Cape Cod, and in August reached the Chesapeake. Again he turned to the north, and on the 28th of the month anchored in Delaware Bay. Then the voyage was continued along the coast of New Jersey, until, on the 3d of September, the *Half Moon* came to anchorage in the bay of Sandy Hook. Two days later a landing was effected. The natives came with gifts of corn, wild fruit, and oysters. On the 10th of the month the vessel passed the Narrows and entered the noble river which bears the name of HUDSON.

3. For eight days the *Half Moon* sailed up the river. Such beautiful forests and valleys the Dutch had never seen before. On the 19th of September the vessel was moored at Kinderhook; but an exploring party rowed up stream beyond the site of Albany. After some days they returned to the ship, the vessel dropped down the river, and on the 4th of October the sails were spread for Holland. On the homeward voyage the *Half Moon* was detained in England, and the crew were claimed as Englishmen.

4. In the summer of 1610, a ship, called the *Discovery*, was given to Hudson, who now left England never to return. He sailed in the track which Frobisher had taken, and on the 2d day of August entered the strait which bears the name of its discoverer. No ship had ever before been in these waters. The great captain and his crew believed that the route to China was at last discovered; but he soon found himself environed with the terrors of winter in the frozen gulf of the North. With great courage he bore up until his provisions were almost exhausted. Then the treacherous crew broke out in mutiny. They seized Hudson and his only son, with seven other faithful sailors, threw them into an

open boat, and cast them off among the icebergs. The fate of the illustrious mariner has never been ascertained.

5. In 1610 the *Half Moon* was liberated and returned to Amsterdam. In the same year several ships owned by Dutch merchants sailed to the banks of the Hudson and engaged in the fur-trade. In 1614 an act was passed by the States-General of Holland giving to merchants of Amsterdam the right to trade and establish settlements in the country explored by Hudson. A fleet of five trading-vessels arrived in the summer of the same year at Manhattan Island. Here some rude huts had already been built by former traders, and the settlement was named New Amsterdam.

6. In the fall of 1614, Adrian Block sailed into Long Island Sound, made explorations to the mouth of the Connecticut, thence to Narraganset Bay, and to Cape Cod. Christianson, another Dutch commander, sailed up the river from Manhattan to Castle Island, and erected a block-house, which was named Fort Nassau. Cornelius May, the captain of a small vessel called the *Fortune*, sailed from New Amsterdam and explored the Jersey coast as far as the Bay of Delaware. Upon these two voyages Holland set up a claim to the country which was now named NEW NETHERLAND, extending from Cape Henlopen to Cape Cod—a claim which Great Britain and France treated with contempt. Such were the feeble beginnings of the Dutch colonies in New York and Jersey.

RECAPITULATION.

Dutch settlements in America result from the voyages of Hudson.—He is employed to find the Indies.—Sails into the North Atlantic.—Fails in his effort.—Is sent on a second voyage.—And fails.—Goes into the service of the Dutch.—Sails on a third voyage.—Is driven back by the icebergs.—Turns to America.—Explores the coast.—Enters New York harbor.—Discovers the Hudson River.—Explores that stream as far as Albany.—Returns to Dartmouth.—Is detained by the English.—Is sent on a fourth expedition.—Discovers Hudson Strait and Bay.—Is overtaken by winter.—The crew mutiny.—Hudson is cast off among the icebergs.—Dutch vessels begin to trade at Manhattan.—The States-General grant a right to trade.—A settlement is made on Manhattan Island.—Block explores Long Island Sound.—Christianson builds Fort Nassau.—May explores the coast of New Jersey.—Holland claims the country from Delaware Bay to Cape Cod.

PART III.

COLONIAL HISTORY.

PARENT COLONIES.

A. D. 1607—1754.

CHAPTER IX.

VIRGINIA—THE FIRST CHARTER.

THE first settlers at Jamestown were idle and improvident. Only twelve of those who came in 1607 were common laborers. There were four carpenters in the company, six or eight masons and blacksmiths, and a long list of *gentlemen*. If necessity had not soon driven these to toil, the colony must have perished. The few married men had left their families in England.

2. The affairs of the colony were badly managed. King James had made out sealed instructions; and the names of the governor and members of the council were unknown during the voyage. In this state of misrule, Captain John Smith, the best man in the colony, was suspected of making a plot to murder the council and to make himself king of Virginia. He was arrested and confined until the end of the voyage. When at last the colonists reached their destination, the king's instructions were unsealed and the names of the Inferior Council made known. A meeting was held and Edward Wingfield elected first governor of Virginia. Smith was now charged with sedition and excluded from the council. But when it was found that his enemies could bring nothing against him, he was restored to his place.

3. As soon as the settlement was well begun, Smith and Newport, with twenty others, explored James River for forty-five miles.

Just below the falls, near the present site of Richmond, the explorers found the capital of Powhatan, the Indian king. But the "city" was only a squalid village of twelve wigwams. The monarch received the foreigners with courtesy and showed no dislike at the intrusion. The company returned to Jamestown, and on the 15th of June Newport embarked for England.



CAPTAIN JOHN SMITH.

4. The colonists now began to realize their situation. They were alone in the New World. Winter was approaching. Dreadful diseases broke out in the settlement, and the colony was brought almost to ruin. At one time only five men were able to go on duty as sentinels. Gosnold died, and before the middle of September one-half of the colonists had been swept off by the malady. But the frosts of autumn came, and the ravages of disease were checked.

5. Civil dissension was added to other calamities. President Wingfield and George Kendall were detected in embezzling the stores of the colony, and were removed from office. Ratcliffe was then chosen president, but was found incompetent. Only Martin and Smith now remained in the council, and by common consent the latter took charge of the colony.

6. The new president was an Englishman by birth; a soldier, a traveler, and a hero. Under his administration the new settlement soon began to show signs of progress. His first care was to

11-32. **Gustavus Adolphus the Great.**
18-48. **The Thirty Years' War.**
24-42. **Richelieu.**
1564-42. **Galileo,** the Astronomer.
1561-26. **Bacon,** the Philosopher.
1564-16. **Shakespeare,** the Dramatist.
1583-45. **Grotius,** Author and Statesman.
1571-30. **Kepler,** the Astronomer.
8-74. **Milton,** the Poet.
3. James VI. of Scotland becomes **James I.** of England.
43. **Louis XIV.**
32-1704. **John Locke,** the Philosopher.
48. Peace of Westphalia.
49. Abolition of the English Monarchy.
49. **Oliver Cromwell,** Protector.
60. The Restoration.
25. **Charles I.**
42. **The English Revolution.**
60. **Charles II.**
89. **Pete** 97.
85. Revocation c
87. The Habea
88. Second En
88. **William**
85. **James II.** 94. **Wi**

7. VIRGINIA colonized by the **London Company** at Jamestown.
8. **John Smith,** governor, explores the Chesapeake.
9. Second Charter granted.
12. Third Charter granted.
19. Establishment of the **House of Burgesses.**
19. **Introduction of Slavery.**
24. The London Company is dissolved.
24. The royal government.
29. Harvey's administration.
43. Persecutions of the Baptists and Quakers.
44. The Indian massacre.
42. Berkeley's administration.
73. Grant to Arlington and Culpe
76. Bacon's Rebellion.
80. Virginia becomes
84. Royal gover
60. Berkeley's second administrat'n. 92. Wil

51. NORTH CAROLINA colonized by the **English.**
63. Grant made to Lord Clarendon.
69. The Grand Model is prepared.
84. **Seth Sothe**

34. MARYLAND colonized by the **Baltimores.**
39. Representative government established.
42. **War with the Indians.**
45. Clayborne's insurrection.
75. Administration of **Si**
91. Roya
92. **Li**

14. NEW YORK settled by the **Dutch.**
23. The Walloons come to New Amsterdam.
47. **Peter Stuyvesant,** governor.
63. **War with the Indians.**
64. Conquest of New Netherland by the
92. **Fl**
26. **Minuit,** governor.
29. The Charter of Privileges is granted.
38. Administration of **Kieft.**
84.
88. **Leisler's**

38. DELAWARE colonized by the **Swedes.**
55. Conquered by the Dutch.
82. Finally separa
91. Secon

23. NEW JERSEY settled by the **Dutch.**
64. Permanent colonization.
68. First General Assembly.
77. Division of East and

20. MASSACHUSETTS colonized by the **Puritans** at Plymouth.
21. Treaty with Massasoit.
26. First settlement in **Maine.**
30. Boston founded
34. The ballot-box introduced.
36. Banishment of Williams.
38. Founding of Harvard College.
39. The printing-press at Cambridge.
43. The Union of New England.
79. NEW HAMPSHIRE organized as a distinct colony.
75. **King Philip's War**
81. Massachusetts to
89. **King W**
90. First

36. RHODE
38. Arrival
41. The

30. CONNECTICUT granted to **Warwick.**
33. Hartford founded.
37. **Pequod War.**
39. Constitution framed.
62. **Winthrop,** governor.
87. Hiding of t
87. Andros' Us
75. Captain Bull's defense of

70. colon
71.
60. ounded
al of
38. The

82.
83.

CHART II.

COLONIAL PERIOD.

A. D. 1607–1775.

1700

the Great.
harles XII.
War of the Spanish Succession.
13. Peace of Utrecht.
15. Louis XV.

62. Catharine II.
40. Frederick the Great.
40. War of the Austrian Succession.
48. Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle.

30–97. Burke.
89. French Revolution.
74. Louis XVI.
93. Reign of Terror.

the Edict of Nantes.
Corpus granted.

1642-27. Sir Isaac Newton, the Mathematician.

1640–16. Leibnitz, German philosopher.
lish Revolution.
and Mary 14. Accession of the House of Hanover-Brunswick.

9–84. Dr. Samuel Johnson.
59. *Fall of Quebec.*
65. The Rockingham Ministry.
65. The Stamp Act.
8–78. Chatham.
59–1806. Pitt.
49–1806. Fox.

2. Anne. 14. George I.
liam III. 27. George II.
60. George III.

per.
32. Birth of Washington.
65. Passage of the Virginia Resolutions
Proprietary Government.
ment re-established.
am and Mary College founded.
9. Arrival of German immigrants.
11. War with the Tuscaroras.
29. Final separation of the Carolinas.

15. Restoration of the Baltimores.
government established.
Charles Calvert.
nel Copley, governor.

he
Eng
tel ion.
ma
Be nor.
ny. inistration.
urre on against Montreal.
32. Tuft of Kenger.
32. Administration of Cosby.
41. The negro plot.
54. French and Indian War.
54. Franklin's Constitution adopted at Albany.
65. First Colonial Congress.
70. The British riot.
58. Fall of Louisburg.

d from New York.
ion of Delaware from Pennsylvania.

2. Union of the Jerseys.
2. Royal government established.
est Jersey.
28. Separated from New York.
38. Administration of Lewis Morris.

Re-united with Massachu
2. Queen Anne's
4. The
First post-
Expedition
es her cha
illiam's
ue of pe
alem wi
Final separation of New Hampshire from Massachusetts.
20. Int
ea.
Lexington.
Bunker Hill.
in Boston.
Boston Tea-party.
Address.

e charter.
rpation.
Saybrook.
1. Yale College founded.
17. Removal of Yale to New Haven.

zed
2.
the Indians.
he
War with the Yamassees.
ira
ated.
29. Royal government established.
St. Augustine.
19. Revolution in the government.
73. Destruction of tea at Charleston.

econd Colonial Congress at Philadelphia.
Independence.

33. GEORGIA colonized by Oglethorpe.
42. *Bloody Marsh.*
52. Royal government established.
58. Establishment of the Episcopal Church.

improve the buildings of the plantation. The next measure was to secure a supply of provisions. There had been a plentiful harvest among the Indians; but the work of procuring corn was not an easy task. Descending James River to Hampton Roads, Smith landed with five companions and offered the natives hatchets and copper coins in exchange for corn. The Indians only laughed at the proposal, and mocked the foreigners by offering a piece of bread for Smith's sword and musket. The English then charged on the wigwams, and found an abundant store of corn. A parley ensued; and the warriors were obliged to purchase peace by loading the boats of the English, who then rowed up the river to Jamestown.

7. Soon the Indians in the neighborhood of the settlement began to come into the fort with voluntary contributions. The fear of famine passed away. The woods were full of wild turkeys. Good discipline was maintained in the colony, and friendly relations were established with the natives. Seeing the end of their distresses, the colonists became cheerful and happy.

8. As soon as winter set in, the president, with six Englishmen and two Indian guides, began to explore the country on the Chickahominy. It was believed by the people of Jamestown that by going up this stream *they could reach the Pacific Ocean!* Smith knew the absurdity of such an opinion, but humored it because of the opportunity which it gave him to explore new territory. The rest might dig for gold-dust and hunt for the Pacific; he would see the country and make maps.

9. The president and his companions ascended the river until it dwindled to a mere creek, winding about the woods and meadows. The men who were left to protect the boats were attacked by the Indians, and several of the English were killed. Smith was at last discovered, wounded with an arrow, and chased through the woods. He fought, ran, and fired by turns, stumbled into a morass, and was finally overtaken. The savages were wary of their antagonist until he laid down his gun and was pulled out of the mire.

10. Smith demanded to see the Indian chief, and on being taken into his presence, excited his curiosity by showing him a pocket-compass and a watch. These instruments struck the Indians with awe; but the savages grew tired of trifling, bound their captive to

a tree, and prepared to shoot him. At the critical moment he flourished his compass in the air and the Indians were afraid to fire. But the danger of torture was yet to be avoided.

11. Smith was next taken to Orapax, a few miles from the site of Richmond. Here he found the Indians making preparations to attack and destroy Jamestown. They invited him to become their leader, but he refused and managed to write a letter to his countrymen telling them of their peril. This letter, which seemed to the Indians to have a mysterious power of carrying intelligence, frightened them more than ever. When the warriors arrived at Jamestown and found every thing as Smith had said, their terror knew no bounds; and, as soon as they returned, all thought of attacking the colony was given up.

12. The Indians now marched their captive about from village to village. Near the fork of York River, they came to Pamunkey, the capital of Opechancanough. Here Smith was turned over to the priests, who assembled in their Long House and for three days danced around him, sang and yelled after the manner of their superstition. The object was to determine by this wild ceremony what his fate should be. The decision was against him, and he was condemned to death.

13. Smith was next taken down the river to a town where Powhatan lived in winter. The savage monarch was now sixty years of age. He received the prisoner with all the formalities peculiar to his race. Clad in a robe of raccoon skins, he took his seat in the Long House. His two daughters sat near him, and warriors and women were ranged around the hall. The king reviewed the cause and confirmed the sentence of death. Two large stones were brought into the hall, Smith was dragged forth bound, and his head put into position to be crushed with a war-club. A painted savage was ordered out of the rank and stood ready. The signal was given; the executioner raised his club, and another moment had decided the fate of the captive and his colony. But in that moment, Matoaka,* the eldest daughter of Powhatan, rushed be-

*Powhatan's tribe had a superstition that a person *whose real name was unknown* could not be injured. They therefore told the English falsely that Matoaka's name was *Pocahontas*.

tween the warrior's club and the prostrate prisoner. She clasped his head in her arms and held on until her father, yielding to her appeals, ordered Smith to be unbound. Again he was rescued from a terrible death.

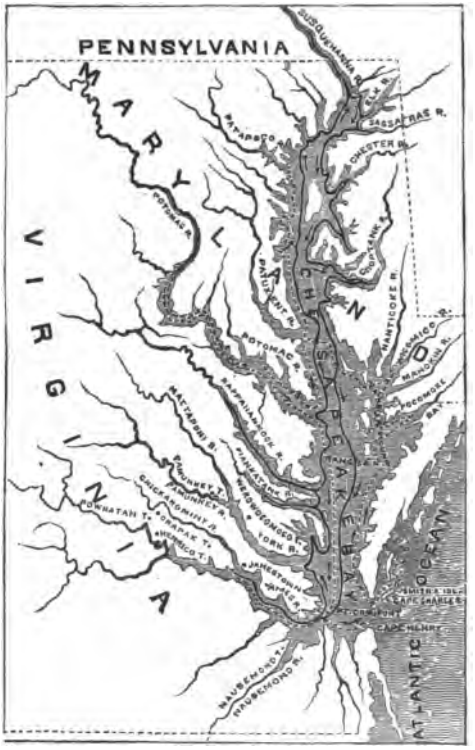
14. Powhatan decided that the prisoner should remain in his household and make toys for his daughters. Soon, however, it was agreed that he should return to Jamestown. He was liberated on condition that he should send back to Orapax two cannons and a grindstone. Certain warriors accompanied Smith to the settlement, where, under pretense of teaching them gunnery, he had the cannons loaded with stones and discharged among the tree-tops. There was a terrible crash, and the savages, fearing to touch the dreadful engines, returned to their king with neither guns nor grindstones.

15. Only thirty-eight of the settlers were now alive, and these were frost-bitten and half starved. Their leader had been absent for seven weeks in the middle of winter. The old fears of the colonists had revived, and when Smith returned he found all hands preparing to abandon the settlement. With much persuasion he induced the majority to abandon this project, but the rest, burning with resentment against him, made a conspiracy to kill him.

16. In these days Newport arrived from England, bringing a store of supplies and a hundred and twenty immigrants. But the new-comers gave no promise of good. They were gentlemen, gold-hunters, jewelers, engravers, adventurers, and strollers. Smith was much vexed at this, for he had urged Newport to bring over only a few industrious mechanics and laborers.

17. As soon as the weather would permit, the new-comers and some of the old settlers began to stroll about the country digging for gold. In a bank of sand at the mouth of a small creek some glittering particles were found, and the whole settlement was thrown into excitement. Martin and Newport filled one of the ships with the supposed gold-dust and sent it to England. Soon afterward a company sailed up James River to find the Pacific Ocean! Fourteen weeks of the spring-time were consumed in this nonsense. Even the Indians ridiculed the madness of men who were wasting their chances for a crop of corn.

18. In the midst of this general folly Smith formed the design of exploring the Chesapeake Bay and its tributaries. Accompanied by Dr. Russell and thirteen others, he left Jamestown on the 2d day of June. In an open barge he steered boldly out by way of Hampton Roads as far as Smith's Island. Returning thence around Cape Charles, the survey of the eastern shore of the bay was begun, and continued northward as far as the river Wicomico. From this point the expedition crossed over to the Patuxent, and thence northward along the western side to the Patapsco. Here some of the company became discontented, and insisted on returning to the colony. Smith consented, but in steering southward had the good fortune to enter the mouth of the Potomac. Pleased with the prospect, the crew turned the barge up stream and continued the voyage as far as the falls at Georgetown. Tired of adventure, they then dropped down the river to the bay, and reached Jamestown on the 21st of July.



JAMESTOWN AND VICINITY.
Smith's First Voyage in the Chesapeake .....
Smith's Second Voyage in the Chesapeake ——

19. After a rest of three days a second voyage was begun. This time the expedition reached the head of the bay, and sailed

far up the Susquehanna. Here the Indians were of gigantic stature and fierce disposition. On the return voyage Smith explored every sound and inlet of any note, as far as the Rappahannoc. This stream he ascended to the head of navigation, and then returned to Jamestown. He had been absent a little more than three months, and had explored the coast of the great bay for fully three thousand miles. He had been driven about by storms, once wrecked, once stung by a poisonous fish and brought so near to death that his comrades digged his grave; now he was come back to the colony with a MAP OF THE CHESAPEAKE, which he sent by Newport to England, and which is still preserved.

20. Smith was now formally elected president. Soon there was a marked change for the better; gold-hunting ceased, and the rest of the year was noted as a time of prosperity. In the autumn Newport arrived with seventy additional immigrants. The health was so good that only seven deaths occurred between September and the following May. Every well man was obliged to work six hours a day. New houses were built, new fields fenced in; and through the winter the sound of axe and hammer gave token of a prosperous and growing village.

RECAPITULATION.

Bad character of the first settlers.—Necessity drives them to labor.—The king gives sealed instructions.—Smith is arrested.—Restored to his place in the council.—He and Newport explore the James.—Newport goes to England.—The colonists are discouraged.—Disease ravages the settlement.—Gosnold dies.—Wingfield embezzles the funds.—Is removed from office.—Ratcliffe succeeds.—And is impeached.—Smith takes control of the colony.—Sketch of his life.—The settlement flourishes.—Smith procures supplies.—The Indians bring provisions.—Smith explores the Chickahominy.—Is captured by the Indians.—Saves his life by stratagem.—Is carried to Orapax.—Is condemned to death.—And saved by Pocahontas.—Is liberated.—Returns to Jamestown.—Terrifies the savages.—Deplorable condition of the settlement.—Plot to abandon the place.—Newport arrives with new immigrants.—As bad as the others.—The gold-hunters go abroad.—And find mica in the sand.—A ship load of dirt sent to England.—The planting season goes by.—Smith makes his exploration of the Chesapeake.—Returns.—Is elected president.—Newport arrives with immigrants and supplies.—Progress of the colony.

CHAPTER X.

VIRGINIA.—THE SECOND CHARTER.

ON the 23d day of May, 1609, King James granted to the London Company a new charter, by which the government of Virginia was completely changed. The territory was extended from Cape Fear to Sandy Hook, and westward to the Pacific Ocean. The members of the Superior Council were now to be chosen by the stockholders of the company, vacancies were to be filled by the councilors, who were also empowered to elect a governor.

2. The new council was at once organized, and Lord De La Ware chosen governor for life. With him were joined in authority Sir Thomas Gates, Sir George Somers, Christopher Newport, Sir Thomas Dale, and Sir Ferdinand Wainman. Five hundred emigrants were speedily collected, and in June a fleet of nine vessels sailed for America. Lord Delaware did not himself accompany the expedition, but delegated his authority to Somers, Gates, and Newport. In July the ships, then in the West Indies, were scattered by a storm. One vessel was wrecked, and another, having on board the commissioners of Delaware, was driven ashore on one of the Bermudas; the other seven ships came safely to Jamestown.

3. Captain Smith continued in authority under the old constitution; but the colony was in an uproar. The president was in daily peril of his life. He put some of the most rebellious brawlers in prison, and then, in order to distract the attention of the rest, planned two new settlements—one, of a hundred and twenty men, at Nansemond; the other, of the same number, at the falls of the James. Both companies behaved badly. In a few days after their departure troubles arose with the Indians. While

attempting to quell these difficulties, Smith was wounded by the explosion of a bag of gunpowder. Despairing of relief under the imperfect medical treatment which the colony afforded, he decided to return to England. He accordingly delegated his authority to Sir George Percy, and about the middle of September, 1609, left the scene of his toils and sufferings, never to return.

4. A colony of four hundred and ninety persons remained at Jamestown. Such was the bad management after Smith's departure that the settlement was soon brought face to face with starvation. The Indians became hostile; stragglers were murdered; houses were set on fire; disease returned to add to the desolation; and cold and hunger made the winter long remembered as THE STARVING TIME. By the last of March only sixty persons were left alive.

5. Meanwhile, Sir Thomas Gates and his companions who had been shipwrecked in the Bermudas, constructed two small vessels, and set sail for Virginia. They came in expectation of a joyful greeting. What was their disappointment when a few wan, half-starved wretches crawled out of their cabins to beg for bread! Whatever stores the commissioners had brought with them were distributed to the settlers, and Gates assumed control of the government.

6. But the colonists had now determined to abandon the place forever. In vain did the commissioners remonstrate; they were almost driven to yield to the common will. An agreement was made to sail for Newfoundland, and on the 8th of June Jamestown was abandoned. The disheartened settlers were anxious to burn the town, but Gates prevented them from doing so. Embarking in their four boats, the colonists dropped down with the river, and it seemed that the enterprise of Raleigh and Gosnold had ended in a failure.

7. Lord Delaware was already on his way to America. Before the escaping settlers had reached the sea the ships of the governor came in sight. He brought additional immigrants, plentiful supplies, and promise of better things. The colonists reluctantly consented to return, and before nightfall the fires were again kindled at Jamestown. On the next day the governor caused his commis-

sion to be read, and entered upon the discharge of his duties. His amiability and virtue, no less than the wisdom of his administration, endeared him to all and inspired the colony with hope.

8. Lord Delaware was compelled, on account of ill-health, to return to England. His authority was delegated to Percy, who had been the deputy of Captain Smith. The Superior Council had already dispatched a new shipload of stores and another company of emigrants, under Sir Thomas Dale. When the vessel arrived at Jamestown, Percy was superseded by Dale, who adopted a system of martial law as the basis of his administration. In the latter part of August, Sir Thomas Gates arrived with a fleet of six ships, having on board three hundred additional immigrants and a large quantity of stores.

9. Thus far the property of the settlers at Jamestown had been held in common. The colonists had worked together, and in time of harvest deposited their products in public storehouses. Now the right of holding private property was recognized. Governor Gates had the lands divided so that each settler should have three acres of his own; every family might cultivate a garden and plant an orchard, the fruits of which no one but the owner was allowed to gather. The benefits of this system of labor were at once apparent, and the laborers became cheerful and industrious.

RECAPITULATION.

King James grants a new charter.—Changes are made in the government.—A new council is organized.—Delaware is chosen governor.—His associates.—A fleet with emigrants sails for America.—Encounters a storm.—Two vessels are wrecked.—Seven ships reach Jamestown.—The commissioners are left on the Bermudas.—Smith retains the presidency.—New settlements are projected.—Smith is wounded.—Returns to England.—Colony suffers after his departure.—The starving time.—Gates and his companions reach Virginia.—The settlement is abandoned.—Delaware meets the colony.—And persuades them to return.—Prosperity begins.—Delaware falls sick.—And returns to England.—Percy is deputy.—Dale arrives as governor.—Brings immigrants.—New colonists arrive.—The colony improves.—Gates is made governor.—The right of private property is recognized.

CHAPTER XI.

VIRGINIA—THE THIRD CHARTER.

IN the year 1612 the London Company obtained from the king a third patent, by which the character of the government was again changed. The Superior Council was abolished, and the stockholders were authorized to elect their own officers and to govern the colony on their own responsibility. The cause of this change was the unprofitableness of the colony and the dissatisfaction of the company with the management of the council. The new patent was a great step toward a democratic form of government in Virginia.

2. In 1613, while Captain Samuel Argall was on an expedition up the Potomac, he learned that Pocahontas was residing in that neighborhood. With the help of an Indian family the captain enticed the girl on board his vessel and carried her captive to Jamestown. The authorities of the colony decided that Powhatan should pay a heavy ransom for his daughter's liberation. The old king indignantly refused, and ordered his tribes to prepare for war. Meanwhile, Pocahontas was converted to the Christian faith and became a member of the Episcopal Church. Soon afterward John Rolfe, a worthy young man of the colony, sought the hand of the princess in marriage. Powhatan and his chiefs gave their consent, and the nuptials were celebrated in the spring of the next year. By this means a bond of union was established between the Indians and the whites.

3. Two years later, Rolfe and his wife went to England, where they were received with great respect. Captain Smith gave them a letter of introduction to Queen Anne, and many attentions were bestowed on the modest daughter of the Western wilderness. In the following year, while Rolfe was making preparations to return

to America, Pocahontas fell sick and died. There was left of this marriage a son, who came to Jamestown, and was a man of some importance in the colony. To him several families of Virginians still trace their origin. John Randolph of Roanoke was a descendant of Pocahontas.

4. Captain Argall was next sent with an armed vessel to the coast of Maine. The object of the voyage was to protect the English fishermen, and to destroy the colonies of France, if any should be found within the territory claimed by England. The French authorities of Acadia were at this time building a village near the mouth of the Penobscot. This settlement was pillaged and the houses burned; part of the inhabitants were sent to France and the rest carried to the Chesapeake. The French colony at the mouth of the St. Croix was next attacked, and the fort cannonaded and destroyed. At Port Royal, Argall burned the hamlet which Poutrincourt had built there eight years before. On his way back to Virginia he fell upon the Dutch of Manhattan Island, destroyed their huts, and compelled the settlers to acknowledge the king of England. By these outrages, the French settlements in America were confined to the banks of the St. Lawrence.

5. In March of 1614, Sir Thomas Gates returned to England, leaving the government in the hands of Dale. In these times the laws of the colony were much improved, and the colonial industry took a better form. Hitherto the settlers had engaged in planting vineyards and in the manufacture of soap, glass, and tar. The managers of the company had at last learned that these articles could be produced more cheaply in Europe than in America. They had also discovered that the products of the New World might be raised and exported with great profit. The chief of these products was the tobacco-plant, the use of which had become fashionable in Spain, England, and France. This, then, became the leading staple of the colony, and was even used for money. So entirely did the settlers give themselves to the cultivation of the weed that the streets of Jamestown were plowed up and planted with it.

6. In 1617 the unprincipled Captain Argall was elected governor. His administration was marked by fraud and violence. When the

news of his proceedings reached England emigration ceased, and Lord Delaware embarked for Virginia, in the hope of restoring order. But the worthy nobleman died on the voyage, and Argall continued in office. In 1619 he was at last displaced, and Sir George Yeardley appointed to succeed him.

7. Martial law was now abolished. Taxes were repealed, and the people freed from many burdens. Another action was taken of still greater importance. Governor Yeardley divided the plantations into eleven districts, called boroughs, and ordered the citizens of each borough to elect two of their number to take part in the government. The elections were duly held, and on the 30th of July, 1619, the Virginia HOUSE OF BURGESSES was organized—the first popular assembly in the New World. In this body there was freedom of debate but very little political power.

8. The year 1619 was also marked by the introduction of slavery. The servants at Jamestown had hitherto been English or Germans, whose term of service had varied from a few months to many years. No perpetual servitude had thus far been recognized. In the month of August a Dutch man-of-war sailed up the river to the plantations, and offered by auction twenty Africans. They were purchased by the wealthier class of planters, and made slaves for life.

9. There were now six hundred men in the colony; but they were, for the most part, rovers who intended to return to England. Very few families had emigrated, and society in Virginia was rude and coarse. In this condition of affairs, Sir Thomas Smith was superseded by Sir Edwyn Sandys, a man of prudence and integrity. A reformation of abuses was at once begun and carried out. In the summer of 1620, the new treasurer succeeded in sending to America a company of twelve hundred and sixty-one persons. Among the number were ninety young women of good breeding and modest manners. In the following spring, sixty others of similar good character came over, and received a hearty welcome.

10. When Sandys sent these women to America, he charged the colonists with the expense of the voyage—a measure made necessary by the fact that the company was bankrupt. An assessment was made according to the number who were brought over, and the rate fixed at a hundred and twenty pounds of tobacco for

each passenger—a sum which the settlers cheerfully paid. There were merry marriages at Jamestown, and the social condition of the colony was much improved. When the second shipload came, the cost of transportation was fixed at a hundred and fifty pounds for each passenger, which was also paid without complaint.

11. In July of 1621 the London Company gave to Virginia a code of written laws framed according to the English constitution. The governor of the colony was to be appointed by the company, a council to be chosen by the same body, and a house of burgesses to be elected by the people. In making laws the councilors and burgesses sat together. When a new law was proposed, it was debated, and if passed received the governor's signature, and was then sent to England to be ratified. The constitution acknowledged the right of petition and of trial by jury; and the burgesses were given the power of vetoing the acts of the company.

12. In October, 1621, Sir Francis Wyatt, who had been commissioned as governor, brought the new constitution of Virginia. The colony was found in a flourishing condition. The settlements extended for a hundred and forty miles along the banks of James River, and far into the interior. But the Indians had grown jealous of the colonists, and determined to destroy them before it should be too late. Circumstances favored the savages in their meditated treachery. Pocahontas was dead. The peaceable Powhatan had likewise passed away. Opechancanough, who succeeded him in 1618, had long been plotting the destruction of the English, and the time had come for the tragedy.

13. Until the very day of the massacre the Indians continued on terms of friendship with the colonists. They came into the settlements, ate with their victims, borrowed boats and guns, and gave no token of hostility. On the 22d of March, at midday, the work of butchery began. Every hamlet in Virginia was attacked by the barbarians. Men, women, and children were indiscriminately slaughtered, until three hundred and forty-seven had perished under the hatchets of the savages.

14. But Indian treachery was thwarted by Indian faithfulness. A converted Red man, wishing to save an Englishman who had been his friend, went to him on the night before the massacre and

revealed the plot. The alarm was spread among the settlements, and thus the greater part of the colony escaped destruction. But the outer plantations were entirely destroyed. The people crowded together on the larger farms about Jamestown, until of the eighty settlements there were only eight remaining. Still, there were sixteen hundred brave men in the colony; and sorrow soon gave place to vengeance. Parties of English soldiers scoured the country, burning villages and killing every savage that fell in their way, until the tribes were driven into the wilderness. The colonists, regaining their confidence, returned to their farms, and the next year the population increased to two thousand five hundred.

15. The liberal constitution of Virginia soon proved offensive to King James, and he determined to obtain control of the London Company, or suppress it altogether. A committee was appointed to look into the affairs of the corporation and report on its management. The commissioners performed their duty, and reported that the company was unsound in its principles, that the treasury was bankrupt, and that the government of Virginia was very bad.

16. Legal proceedings were now instituted against the company, and the judges decided that the patent was null and void. The charter of the corporation was accordingly canceled by the king, and in June of 1624 the London Company ceased to exist. But its work had been well done. A torch of liberty had been lighted on the banks of the James, which all the tyranny of after times could not extinguish.

RECAPITULATION.

The London Company receives a third patent.—The colony unprofitable.—Argall kidnaps Pocahontas.—Who is married to Rolfe.—They visit England.—And leave descendants in Virginia.—Argall destroys the French settlements in Acadia.—Subdues the Dutch of Manhattan.—Dale becomes governor.—Tobacco is the staple of Jamestown.—Is used for money.—Argall is chosen governor.—Delaware sails for America.—And dies.—Yeardley supersedes Argall.—Abolishes martial law.—Establishes the House of Burgesses.—Slavery is introduced.—Society is low.—Women are sent over.—And married to the colonists.—A constitution is granted.—Wyatt becomes governor.—Settlements spread abroad.—The Indians become jealous.—And massacre the people.—But are defeated.—The company is opposed by the king.—A commission is appointed.—And the company's charter is revoked.—But liberty is planted in Virginia.

CHAPTER XII.

VIRGINIA.—THE ROYAL GOVERNMENT.

A ROYAL government was now established in Virginia. The new administration consisted of a governor and twelve councilors. The General Assembly of the colony was left undisturbed, and the rights of the colonists remained as before. Governor Wyatt was continued in office; and in making up the new council, the king wisely selected the friends of the colony rather than the untried partisans of his court. The Virginians found in the change of government as much cause of gratitude as of grief.

2. Charles I., the successor of King James, paid but little attention to the affairs of his American colony. By and by the commerce in tobacco attracted his notice, and he attempted to gain a monopoly of the trade, but the colonial authorities defeated the project. It is worthy of note that at this time the king recognized the Virginia assembly as a rightfully constituted body. The reply which was returned to his proposal was signed by the governor and council, *and by thirty-one of the burgesses.*

3. In 1626 Governor Wyatt retired from office, and Yeardley, the old friend of the colonists, was reäppointed. The young State was never more prosperous than under this administration, which was ended with the governor's death, in 1627. During the preceding summer a thousand new immigrants had come to swell the population of the province.

4. The council of Virginia had a right, in case of an emergency, to elect a governor. In this manner Francis West was chosen by the councilors; but as soon as the death of Yeardley was known in England, King Charles commissioned John Harvey to assume the government. He arrived in the autumn of 1629, and from this time until 1635, the colony was distracted with the presence of a most unpopular chief magistrate. He began his administration by

taking the part of certain land speculators against the people. Finally the assembly of 1635 passed a resolution that Sir John Harvey be thrust out of office, and Captain West be appointed in his place "until the king's pleasure may be known in this matter." But King Charles treated the whole affair with contempt. The commissioners appointed by the council of Virginia to conduct Harvey's impeachment were refused a hearing, and he was restored to the governorship of the colony. He continued in power until the year 1639, when he was superseded by Wyatt, who ruled until the spring of 1642.

5. About this time monarchy was abolished in England. Oliver Cromwell was made Lord Protector of the Commonwealth. By him the nation was ruled until 1658, when he was succeeded by his son Richard. But the latter became alarmed at the dangers around him, and resigned. Soon afterward, Charles II., exiled son of Charles I., was called home, and on the 18th of May, 1660, was restored to the throne of England.

6. Virginia shared in some degree the distractions of the mother-country. In 1642 Sir William Berkeley became governor of the colony, and remained in office for ten years. His administration, notwithstanding the troubles abroad, was noted as a time of rapid growth and development. The laws were greatly improved. The old disputes about the lands were satisfactorily settled. Cruel punishments were abolished, and the taxes equalized. The general assembly was regularly convened, and Virginia became a free and prosperous State. In 1646 there were twenty thousand people in the colony.

7. In March of 1643, a law was enacted by the assembly declaring that no person who disbelieved the doctrines of the English Church should be allowed to teach, or to preach the gospel, within the limits of Virginia. This act was the source of much bitterness among the people. The few Puritans in the colony were excluded from places of trust, and some were driven from their homes. Governor Berkeley was a leader in these persecutions, by which all friendly relations with New England were broken off for many years.

8. Next came another war with the Indians. Early in 1644,

the natives, believing that there still remained a hope of destroying the English, planned a general massacre. On the 18th of April, when the authorities were off their guard, the savages fell upon the frontier settlements, and before assistance could be brought murdered three hundred people. The warriors then fled, but were followed by the English and driven into the woods and swamps. Opechancanough was captured, and died a prisoner. The tribes were punished without mercy, and were soon glad to buy a peace by the cession of large tracts of land.

9. During the Commonwealth an ordinance was passed by Parliament laying heavy restrictions on the commerce of such English colonies as refused to acknowledge the supremacy of Cromwell's government. Foreign ships were forbidden to enter the colonial harbors. In 1651 the Navigation Act was passed, and the trade of the colonies was still more seriously distressed. In this new law it was enacted that the foreign commerce of Virginia should be carried on wholly in English vessels, and directed exclusively to the ports of England.

10. The Virginians opposed these measures, and Cromwell determined to compel obedience. A war-vessel with commissioners on board was sent into the Chesapeake. Negotiations were opened; an offer of peace was made, and gladly accepted. The terms of the settlement were very favorable to popular liberty; the commercial restrictions were removed, and the trade of the colony was made as free as that of England. English liberty was guaranteed to every citizen, and Virginia again grew prosperous.

11. For a while the colonists conducted their government as they would. The important matter of choosing a governor was submitted to the House of Burgesses; when so great a power had been once exercised, it was not likely to be relinquished. Three governors were chosen in this way, and the *privilege* of electing soon became a *right*. The assembly even declared that such a right existed, and that it should not be taken away.

12. In 1660 Samuel Matthews, the last of the three elected governors, died. The Burgesses were convened and an ordinance passed declaring that the supreme authority of Virginia was *in the colony*, and would continue there until a delegate should arrive

from the British government. The house then elected as governor Sir William Berkeley, who acknowledged the right of the Burgesses to choose. The question of recognizing Charles II. as king was debated at the same session, but not decided. Most of the people desired the Restoration, but prudence forbade an open expression of such a preference.

13. As soon as it was known in Virginia that Charles II. had become king, Governor Berkeley issued writs in the name of the king for the election of a new assembly. The adherents of the Commonwealth were thrust out of office, and royal favorites established in their places. The Virginians soon found that they had exchanged a republican tyrant with good principles for a monarchial tyrant with bad ones. The former commercial system was reënacted in a worse form than ever. The new law provided that all the colonial commerce should be carried on in English ships; the trade of the colonies was burdened with a heavy tax, and tobacco, the staple of Virginia, could be sold nowhere but in England.

14. King Charles, regarding the British empire as personal property, soon began to reward the profligates who thronged his court, by granting them large tracts of land in Virginia. It was no uncommon thing for an American planter to find that his farm was given away to some flatterer of the royal household. Great distress was occasioned by these unjust grants, and finally, in 1673, the king set a limit to his own recklessness *by giving away the whole State.* Lord Culpepper and the Earl of Arlington received a deed by which was granted to them for thirty-one years all the country called Virginia.

15. The colonial legislation of these times was selfish and narrow-minded. The aristocratic party in the colony had obtained control of the House of Burgesses, and the new laws were as bad as those of England. A statute was passed against the Baptists, and the peace-loving Quakers were fined and persecuted. Personal property was heavily taxed, while the large estates were exempt. The salaries of the officers were secured by a duty on tobacco, and the biennial election of Burgesses was abolished.

16. When the people were worn out with the governor's exactions, they availed themselves of a pretext to assert their rights

by force of arms. A war with the Susquehanna Indians furnished the occasion for an insurrection. The tribes about the head of Chesapeake Bay had been attacked by the Senecas and driven from their homes. They, in turn, fell upon the English settlers of Maryland, and the banks of the Potomac became the scene of a border war. Virginia and Maryland made common cause. John Washington, great-grandfather of the first President, led a company of militia against the Indians, and compelled them to sue for peace. Six of their chieftains went into Virginia as ambassadors, and were foully murdered. This atrocity maddened the savages, and a devastating warfare raged along the whole frontier.

17. Governor Berkeley sided with the Indians; but the colonists remembered only the acts of treachery of which the Red men had been guilty, and thirsted for revenge. There was a division of opinion among the people; the aristocratic party took sides with the governor and favored a peace; while the popular party, led by young Nathaniel Bacon, clamored for war.

18. Five hundred men rushed to arms, and the march was begun into the enemy's country. Berkeley and the aristocratic faction were enraged, and proclaimed Bacon a traitor. Troops were levied to disperse the militia; but scarcely had Berkeley and his forces left Jamestown when another popular uprising compelled him to return. Bacon came home victorious. The old assembly was broken up, and a new one elected on the basis of universal suffrage. Bacon was chosen a member, and made commander-in-chief of the Virginia army. The governor refused to sign his commission; but Bacon appealed to the people, and Berkeley was compelled to yield. The governor was also obliged to sign a paper commending Bacon's loyalty, zeal, and patriotism.

19. A military force was now stationed on the frontier, and peace returned to all the settlements. But Berkeley was proud and vengeful, and only awaited an opportunity to begin the struggle anew. In a short time he repaired to the county of Gloucester, where he summoned a convention of loyalists, and Bacon was again proclaimed a traitor.

20. The governor's forces were collected on the eastern shore of the Chesapeake; the crews of some English ships were joined

to his command, and the fleet set sail for Jamestown. The place was taken without much resistance; but when Bacon and the patriots drew near, the loyal forces went over to his standard. Berkeley was again obliged to fly, and the capital was held by the people's party. It was now rumored that an English fleet was approaching for the subjugation of the colonies. The patriot leaders held a council, and it was decided that Jamestown should be burned. Accordingly, in the dusk of the evening the torch was applied, and the only town in Virginia was laid in ashes.

21. In this juncture of affairs Bacon fell sick and died. The patriot party, discouraged by the loss of their leader, was easily dispersed. A few feeble efforts were made to revive the cause of the people, but the animating spirit was gone. The royalists found an able captain in Robert Beverly, and the authority of the governor was rapidly restored. The cause of the people and the leader of the people had died together.

22. Berkeley's vindictive passions were now let loose upon the defeated insurgents. Twenty-two of the leading patriots were seized and hanged with scarcely time to bid their friends farewell. Thus died Thomas Hansford, the first American who gave his life for freedom. Thus perished Edmund Cheesman, Thomas Wilford, and William Drummond, martyrs to liberty. Nor is it certain when the executions would have ended had not the assembly met and passed an act that no more blood should be spilt for past offences. When Charles II. heard of Berkeley's ferocity, he exclaimed, "The old fool has taken away more lives in that poor country than I for the murder of my father."

23. The consequences of the rebellion were very disastrous. Berkeley and the aristocratic party had now a good excuse for suppressing all liberal principles. The printing-press was interdicted. Education was forbidden. To speak or to write any thing against the administration or in defence of the late insurrection, was made a crime to be punished by fine or whipping. If the offence should be three times repeated, it was declared to be treason punishable with death. The former methods of taxation were revived, and Virginia was left at the mercy of arbitrary rulers.

24. In 1675 Lord Culpepper, to whom with Arlington the

province had been granted, obtained the appointment of governor for life. The right of the king was thus relinquished, and Virginia became a proprietary government. The new magistrate arrived in 1680 and assumed the duties of his office. His administration was characterized by avarice and dishonesty. Regarding Virginia as his personal estate, he treated the Virginians as his tenants and slaves.

25. In 1683 Arlington surrendered his claim to Culpepper, who thus became sole proprietor as well as governor; but before he could proceed to further mischief, his career was cut short by the king. Charles II. found in Culpepper's vices and frauds a sufficient excuse to remove him from office and to revoke his patent. In 1684, Virginia again became a royal province, under the government of Lord Howard, of Effingham, who continued in office until near the close of the century. The affairs of the colony during the next fifty years are not of sufficient interest and importance to require extended notice. When the French and Indian War shall come, Virginia will show to the world that the labors of Smith and Gosnold and Bacon were not in vain.

RECAPITULATION.

Royal government is established.—The administration is unchanged.—Charles I. becomes king.—Recognizes the Virginia Assembly.—Yeardley is re-elected governor.—Dies.—West is chosen by the council.—Harvey arrives from England.—Land-grants vex the people.—Harvey is impeached.—But is sustained by the king.—Wyatt succeeds.—Monarchy is abolished in England.—Cromwell becomes Protector.—Berkeley becomes governor.—The Puritans are persecuted.—An Indian war arises.—The savages are beaten.—Cromwell restricts the commerce of Virginia.—Sends a fleet to America.—And the Virginians submit.—Favorable terms are granted.—Peace continues during the commonwealth.—The Burgesses elect three governors.—Berkeley is thus chosen.—At the Restoration issues writs in the king's name.—Tyranny follows.—Commerce is restricted.—The Virginians complain.—Charles II. gives away Virginia lands.—And finally the whole State to Arlington and Culpepper.—The Quakers and the Baptists are persecuted.—Taxes are odious.—The people rebel.—An Indian war is the excuse.—Bacon heads the insurrection.—The Indians are punished.—Berkeley flees.—Returns.—Captures Jamestown.—Bacon takes the place, and burns it.—Dies.—The patriots are dispersed.—And the leaders hanged.—A despotism is established.—Culpepper becomes governor.—Treats Virginia as an estate.—Arlington surrenders his claim.—The king recalls the grant.—And Virginia becomes a royal province.—Howard administers the government.

CHAPTER XIII.

MASSACHUSETTS.—SETTLEMENT.

THE spring of 1621 brought hope to the Pilgrims of New Plymouth. The returning sun was welcome. The winter had swept off half of the number. The son of the noble Carver was among the first victims. The governor himself sickened and died, and his wife found rest in the same grave with him. Now, with the approach of warm weather, the pestilence was checked, and the survivors revived with the season. Out of the snows of winter and the terrors of death the Puritans came forth triumphant.

2. In February, Miles Standish was sent out with his soldiers to gather information concerning the natives. The army of New England consisted of six men besides the general. Deserted wigwams were found; the smoke of camp-fires arose in the distance; savages were occasionally seen in the forest. These fled at the approach of the English, and Standish returned to Plymouth.

3. A month later a Wampanoag Indian, named Samoset, ran into the village and bade the strangers welcome. He gave an account of the neighboring tribes, and told of a great plague by which the country had been swept of its inhabitants. The present feebleness and desolation of the natives had resulted from the malady. Another Indian, called Squanto, who had been carried away in 1614, and had learned to speak English, came to Plymouth, and confirmed what Samoset had said.

4. By the influence of these two natives, friendly relations were established with the Wampanoags. Massasoit, the sachem of the nation, was invited to visit Plymouth. The Pilgrims received him with much ceremony. Standish ordered out his soldiers, and Squanto acted as interpreter. Then and there was ratified the first treaty made in New England. The terms were few and

simple. There should be peace between the whites and the Red men. No injury should be done by either party to the other. All offenders should be given up to be punished. If the English engaged in war, Massasoit should help them; if the Wampanoags were attacked unjustly, the English should give them aid.



THE TREATY BETWEEN GOVERNOR CARVER AND MASSASOIT.

5. This treaty remained inviolate for fifty years. Other chiefs followed the example of Massasoit. Nine of the tribes acknowledged the English king. One chieftain threatened war, but Standish's army obliged him to beg for mercy. Canonicus, king of the Narragansetts, sent to William Bradford, who succeeded Governor Carver, a bundle of arrows wrapped in the skin of a rattlesnake; but the governor stuffed the skin with powder and balls and sent it back to the chief, who did not dare to accept the challenge. The hostile emblem was borne about from tribe to tribe, until finally it was returned to Plymouth.

6. The summer was unfruitful, and the Pilgrims were brought to the point of starvation. New immigrants, without provisions or

stores, arrived, and were quartered on the colonists during the winter. For six months the settlers were obliged to subsist on half allowance. At one time only a few grains of corn remained to be distributed, and at another there was absolute want. Then some English fishing-vessels came to Plymouth and charged the colonists two prices for food enough to keep them alive.

7. The new immigrants remained at Plymouth until the summer of 1622, then removed to the south side of Boston harbor and founded Weymouth. There they wasted the fall in idleness, and attempted to keep up their stock of provisions by defrauding the Indians. Thus provoked, the natives planned to destroy the colony; but Massasoit went to Plymouth and revealed the plot. Standish marched to Weymouth with his eight men, killed several warriors, and carried home the chief's head on a pole. The tender-hearted John Robinson wrote from Leyden: "I would that you had converted some of them before you killed any."

8. The summer of 1623 brought a plentiful harvest to the people of the colony, and there was no longer any danger of starvation. The natives became dependent on the settlement for corn, and brought in an abundance of game. At the end of the fourth year, there were a hundred and eighty persons in New England. The managers, who had expended thirty-four thousand dollars on the enterprise, were discouraged, and proposed to sell out their claims to the colonists. The offer was accepted; and in November of 1627, eight of the leading men of Plymouth purchased from the Londoners their entire interest for nine thousand dollars.

9. Before this transfer, the colony had been much vexed by the attempt to set over them a minister of the English Church. To avoid this very thing they had come to the New World. There was dissension for a while. The English managers withheld support; the stores of the colonists were sold to them at three prices; and they were obliged to borrow money at sixty per cent. But the Pilgrims would not yield, and the conflict ended with the purchase of the proprietors' rights in the colony.

10. In 1624 a settlement was made at Cape Ann. John White, of Dorcester, England, collected the emigrants and sent them to America. The colony was established, but after two years the

cape was abandoned; the company moved farther south and founded Salem. In 1628 a second colony arrived in charge of John Endicott, who was chosen governor. In 1629, Charles I. issued a charter by which the colonists were incorporated under the name of THE GOVERNOR AND COMPANY OF MASSACHUSETTS BAY IN NEW ENGLAND. In July two hundred immigrants arrived, half of whom settled at Plymouth, while the other half removed to the north side of Boston harbor and founded Charlestown.



JOHN WINTHROP.

11. In September, 1629, it was decreed that the government of the colony should be transferred from England to America, and that the charter should be entrusted to the colonists themselves. As soon as this action was known, emigration began on an extensive scale. In the year 1630 about three hundred of the best Puritan families came to New England. They were virtuous, well-educated, courageous men and women, who left comfortable homes with no expectation of returning. It was their good fortune to choose a noble leader.

12. The name of John Winthrop, governor of Massachusetts, is worthy of lasting remembrance. Born a royalist, he cherished the principles of republicanism. Surrounded with affluence and comfort, he left all to share the destiny of the Pilgrims. Calm,

prudent, and peaceful, he joined the zeal of an enthusiast with the faith of a martyr.

13. A part of the new immigrants settled at Salem; others at Cambridge and Watertown, on Charles River; while others founded Roxbury and Dorchester. The governor resided for a while at Charlestown, but soon crossed over to the peninsula of Shawmut and founded BOSTON, which became henceforth the capital of the colony. With the approach of winter sickness came, and the distress was great. The new comers were tender people who could not endure the blasts of Massachusetts Bay. Coarse and scanty fare added to the griefs of disease. Sleet and snow drifted in where feeble men and frail women moaned out their lives. Before mid-winter two hundred had died; but there was heard neither murmur nor repining.

14. In 1631, a law was passed restricting the right of suffrage. It was enacted that none but church members should be permitted to vote at the elections. Nearly three-fourths of the people were thus excluded from exercising the rights of freemen. Taxes were levied for the support of the gospel; attendance on public worship was enforced by law; none but members of the church were eligible to office. The very men who had so recently escaped with only their lives to find religious freedom in another continent, began their career in the New World with intolerance.

15. Young ROGER WILLIAMS, minister of Salem, cried out against the proscriptive law. He declared to his people that the conscience of man is not bound by the authority of the magistrate, and that civil government has only to do with civil matters. For this he was obliged to quit the ministry of the church at Salem and retire to Plymouth. Finally, in 1634, he wrote a paper in which he declared that grants of land, though given by the king of England, were invalid until the natives were justly paid. When arraigned for these teachings, he told the court that a test of church-membership in a voter was as ridiculous as the selection of a doctor on account of his skill in theology.

16. After a trial, Williams was condemned for heresy and banished. In mid-winter he left home and became an exile in the forest. For fourteen weeks he wandered through the snow, sleep-

ing on the ground or in a hollow tree, living on parched corn and acorns. He carried with him a private letter from the good Governor Winthrop, and the Indians showed him kindness. Massasoit invited him to his cabin, and Canonicus, king of the Narragansetts, received him as a brother. On the left bank of the Black-



ROGER WILLIAMS' RECEPTION BY THE INDIANS.

stone a resting-place was found; and with the opening of spring the exile planted a field and built a house. Soon he learned that Plymouth colony claimed that place, and another removal became necessary. With five companions, he embarked in a canoe and came to the west side of the bay. Here he was safe. A tract of land was purchased from Canonicus; and in June of 1636, the founder of Rhode Island laid out the city of PROVIDENCE.

17. In 1634 a representative form of government was established in Massachusetts. On election-day the voters were called together, and the learned Cotton preached long against the proposed change. The assembly listened attentively, and then *went on with the election.* To make the reform complete, a BALLOT-BOX

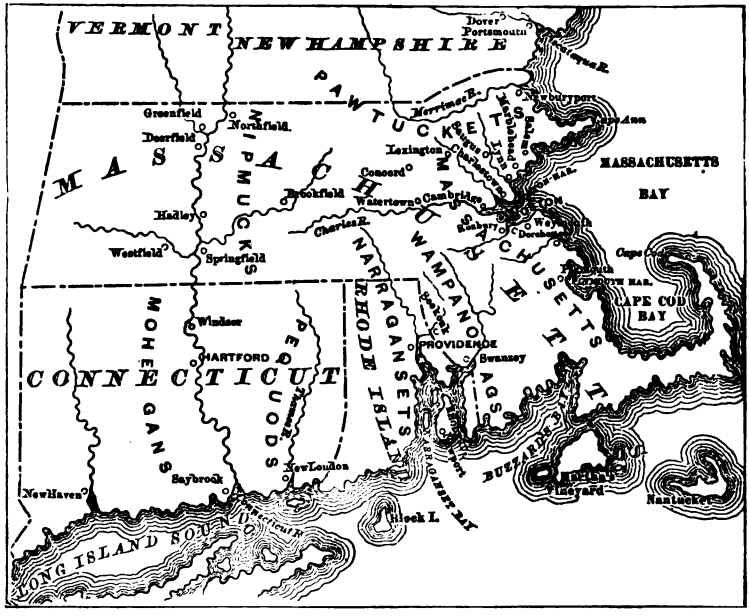
was substituted for the old method of public voting. The restriction on the right of suffrage was the only remaining bar to free government in New England.

18. During the next year three thousand new immigrants arrived. It was worth while to come to a country where the principles of freedom were recognized. The new-comers were under the leadership of Hugh Peters and Sir Henry Vane. Such was the popularity of the latter, that in less than a year after his arrival he was chosen governor of the colony.

19. New settlements were now formed at a distance from the bay. One company of twelve families, led by Simon Willard and Peter Bulkeley, marched through the woods to some open meadows sixteen miles from Boston, and there founded Concord. Later in the same year, another colony of sixty persons left the older settlements and pressed their way westward to the Connecticut River. A dreadful winter overtook them in their new homes. Some died; others waded back through the dreary snows and came half-starved to Boston; but the rest outbraved the winter. Spring brought relief, and the pioneers, creeping out of their huts, became the founders of Windsor, HARTFORD, and Wethersfield.

20. The banishment of Roger Williams created strife among the people of Massachusetts. The ministers were stern and exacting. Still, the advocates of free opinion multiplied. The clergy, notwithstanding their great influence, felt insecure. Religious debates became the order of the day. Every sermon was reviewed and criticised.

21. Prominent among those who were accused of heresy was Mrs. Anne Hutchinson, a woman of genius, who had come over in the ship with Sir Henry Vane. She desired the privilege of speaking at the weekly debates, and was refused. Indignant at this, she became the champion of her sex, and declared that the ministers were no better than Pharisees. She called meetings of her friends, and pleaded with fervor for the freedom of conscience. The doctrines of Williams were reäffirmed with more power and eloquence than ever. Many of the magistrates favored the new beliefs; and the governor himself espoused the cause of Mrs. Hutchinson.



MAP OF EARLY SETTLEMENTS IN NEW ENGLAND.

22. When Sir Henry's term of office expired a meeting of the synod of New England was called. The body convened in August of 1637, and Mrs. Hutchinson and her friends were banished from Massachusetts. A large number of the exiles wended their way toward the home of Roger Williams. Miantonomoh, a Narragansett chieftain, made them a gift of the island of Rhode Island; there, in 1641, a little republic was established, in which persecution, for opinion's sake, was forbidden.

23. In 1636 the general court of the colony passed an act appropriating between one and two thousand dollars to found a college. The measure met with favor, for the Puritans were quick to appreciate the advantages of learning. Newtown was selected as the site of the proposed school. Plymouth and Salem gave gifts to help the enterprise; and from villages in the Connecticut valley came contributions of corn and wampum. In 1638, John Harvard, a minister of Charlestown, died, bequeath-

ing his library and nearly five thousand dollars to the school. To perpetuate his memory the new institution was named HARVARD COLLEGE, and the name of Newtown was changed to Cambridge.

24. The PRINTING-PRESS came also. In 1638 Stephen Daye, an English printer, arrived at Boston, and in the following year set up a press at Cambridge. The first American publication was an almanac for New England, bearing date of 1639. During the next year, Thomas Welde and John Eliot, two ministers of Roxbury, and Richard Mather, of Dorcester, translated the Hebrew Psalms into English verse. This was the first book printed in America.

25. Charles I. and his ministers now took measures to check the growth of the Puritan colonies. The first plan which suggested itself was to stop emigration. In 1638 a squadron of eight vessels, ready to sail from London, was detained by the royal authority. Many of the most prominent Puritans in England were on board of these ships. It has been asserted that John Hampden and Oliver Cromwell were turned back by this detention. By this course King Charles hastened the English Revolution, and brought about his own downfall.

RECAPITULATION.

The Pilgrims are saved by the coming of spring.—Standish reconnoitres.—Samoset and Squanto at Plymouth.—A treaty is made with Massasoit.—Other tribes acknowledge the king.—Canonicus is overawed.—An unfruitful summer.—New immigrants are quartered on the colony.—The Pilgrims are destitute.—Weymouth founded.—Standish punishes the Indians.—Weymouth is abandoned.—A plentiful harvest.—Robinson remains at Leyden.—The colonial enterprise unprofitable.—The managers sell out.—The English Church is favored.—Salem is founded.—The Company of Massachusetts Bay is chartered.—Boston is founded.—The government is transferred to America.—The large immigration.—Winthrop is governor.—Cambridge is founded.—Watertown.—Roxbury.—Dorchester.—The colony suffers.—Suffrage is restricted.—Williams protests.—And is banished.—Goes among the Indians.—Tarries at Seekonk.—Founds Providence.—A representative government is established.—The ballot-box is introduced.—Three thousand immigrants arrive.—Vane and Peters are the leaders.—Concord is founded.—Colonies remove to the Connecticut.—Religious controversies.—Mrs. Hutchinson is banished.—She and her friends establish a republic on Rhode Island.—Harvard College is founded.—A printing-press is set up.—Eliot, Welde and Mather translate the Psalms.—Liberty flourishes.—Emigration is hindered.

CHAPTER XIV.

MASSACHUSETTS.—THE UNION.

NEW ENGLAND was fast becoming a nation. Wellnigh fifty villages dotted the face of the country. Enterprises of all kinds were rife. Manufactures, commerce and the arts were introduced. William Stephens, a shipbuilder of Boston, had already built and launched an American vessel of four hundred tons' burden. Twenty-one thousand two hundred people had found a home between Plymouth Rock and the Connecticut.

2. Circumstances suggested a union of the colonies. The western frontier was exposed to the hostilities of the Dutch on the Hudson. Similar trouble was apprehended from the French on the north. Indian tribes capable of mustering a thousand warriors were likely at any hour to fall upon the helpless villages. The prevalence of common interests made a union of some sort indispensable.

3. The first effort to consolidate the colonies was ineffectual. But in 1643, a plan of union was adopted, by which Massachusetts, Plymouth, Connecticut, and New Haven were joined in a confederacy, called THE UNITED COLONIES OF NEW ENGLAND. The chief authority was conferred upon an assembly composed of two representatives from each colony. These delegates were chosen annually at an election where all the freemen voted by ballot. There was no president other than the speaker of the assembly. Provision was made for the admission of other colonies into the union, but none were ever admitted.

4. At a meeting of the assembly in December, 1641, Nathaniel Ward brought forward a written instrument, which was adopted as the constitution of the State. This statute was called the BODY OF LIBERTIES, and was ever afterward esteemed as the great charter of colonial freedom. In 1644 it was decreed that the

councilors and the representatives of the people should sit apart, each with their own officers and under their own management. By this measure the legislature was made independent and of equal authority with the governor's council.

5. During the supremacy of the Long Parliament in England several acts were passed which endangered the interests of Massachusetts, but powerful friends, especially Sir Henry Vane, stood up in Parliament and defended the colony against her enemies. After the abolition of monarchy, an English statute was made which threatened the complete overthrow of the new State. Massachusetts was invited to surrender her charter, and to hold her courts *in the name of Parliament.* But the people of New England were too cautious to accept the proposition. Cromwell did not insist on the measure, and Massachusetts retained her charter.

6. The Protector was the friend of the American colonies. The people of New England were his special favorites. For more than ten years he continued their benefactor. During his administration Massachusetts was left in the full enjoyment of her coveted rights; and the people were as free as those of England.

7. In 1652 it was decreed by the general court at Boston that the jurisdiction of the province extended as far as three miles north of the source of the Merrimac. By this measure the territory of Massachusetts was extended to Casco Bay. Settlements had been made on the Piscataqua in 1626, but had not flourished. In 1639 a charter was issued to Sir Ferdinand Gorges, who became proprietor of the province. His cousin, Thomas Gorges, was made deputy-governor. A constitution, big enough for an empire, was drawn up, and the village of York became the capital. Meanwhile the Plymouth Council had granted to another corporation sixteen hundred square miles of the territory around Casco Bay, and this claim had been purchased by Rigby, a member of Parliament. Between him and Gorges disputes arose; the villagers of Maine appealed to the court at Boston to settle the difficulty, and the province was annexed to Massachusetts.

8. In July of 1656, the QUAKERS began to arrive at Boston. The first who came were Ann Austin and Mary Fisher. They were caught and searched for marks of witchcraft, and then thrown

into prison After several weeks' confinement they were brought forth and banished. Before the end of the year eight others were arrested and sent back to England. A law was passed that Quakers who persisted in coming to Massachusetts should have their ears cut off and their tongues bored through with a red-hot iron.

9. In 1657 Ann Burden, who had come from London to preach against persecution, was seized and beaten. Others were whipped and exiled. The assembly of the four colonies convened, and the penalty of death was passed against the Quakers as disturbers of the public peace.

10. In 1659 four persons were arrested and brought to trial. They were given the option of going into exile or of being hanged. Mary Dyar and Nicholas Davis chose banishment; but Marmaduke Stephenson and William Robinson stood firm and were sentenced to death. Mary Dyar returned from her exile and was also condemned. The men were hanged without mercy; and the woman was banished. But she returned a second time and was executed. William Leddra was next tried, condemned, and hanged.

11. Before the trial of Leddra was concluded, Wenlock Christison rushed into the court-room and upbraided the judges for shedding innocent blood. He spoke boldly in his own defence; but the jury brought in a verdict of guilty, and he was condemned. Others, eager for martyrdom, came forward, and the jails were filled with prisoners. But before the day arrived for Christison's execution, the public conscience was aroused; the law was repealed, and Christison, with twenty-seven others, was liberated.

12. The English Revolution had now run its course. Cromwell was dead. Tidings of the restoration of Charles II. reached Boston on the 27th of July, 1660. In the same vessel that bore the news came Edward Whalley and William Goffe, two of the judges who had passed sentence of death on Charles I. Governor Endicott received them with courtesy. British agents came in hot pursuit to arrest them. For a while the fugitives baffled the officers, then escaped to New Haven, and at last found refuge at the village of Hadley, where they passed the rest of their lives.

13. On the restoration of the English monarchy, a law was passed by which all vessels not bearing the English flag were for-

bidden to trade in New England. Articles produced in the colonies and demanded in England should be shipped to England only. Other articles might be sold in any of the ports of Europe. The products of England should not be manufactured in America, and should be bought from England only; and a duty of five per cent was put on both exports and imports. This was the beginning of those measures which produced the AMERICAN REVOLUTION.

14. In 1664 war broke out between England and Holland. It became a part of the English plans to conquer the Dutch settlements on the Hudson. Charles II. was also anxious to obtain control of all the New England colonies; and with this end in view, four commissioners were appointed to go to America to settle colonial disputes, and to exercise authority in the name of the king. The real object was to get possession of the charter of Massachusetts. In July, 1664, the royal judges arrived at Boston.

15. They were not wanted at Boston. The people of Massachusetts knew that this supreme judgeship was dangerous to their right of self-government. The colonial charter was accordingly put into the hands of a committee for safe keeping. The general court forbade the citizens to answer any summons issued by the royal judges. A letter, full of manly protests, was sent to the king. The commissioners were rejected in all the colonies except Rhode Island. Meanwhile, the English monarch, learning how his judges had been received, recalled them, and they left the country. For ten years after this event, the colony was very prosperous.

RECAPITULATION.

Progress of New England.—Circumstances favor a union.—Massachusetts, Plymouth, Connecticut and New Haven are confederated.—Other colonies not admitted.—A Body of Liberties is formed.—The two legislative branches are separated.—The English Revolution is favorable to New England.—Vane defends the colonies.—Parliament demands the charter of Massachusetts.—Cromwell the friend of Massachusetts.—Maine is annexed.—Early settlements in Maine.—The Quakers arrive at Boston.—Are persecuted and banished.—The death penalty against them.—Four persons are executed.—The law is repealed.—News of the restoration reaches Boston.—Whalley and Goffe arrive.—And escape to Connecticut.—The Navigation Act is passed.—War between England and Holland.—Charles II. attempts to subvert the charter.—Commissioners are sent to Massachusetts.—Are defeated in their objects.—The colony prospers.

CHAPTER XV.

MASSACHUSETTS.—KING PHILIP'S WAR.

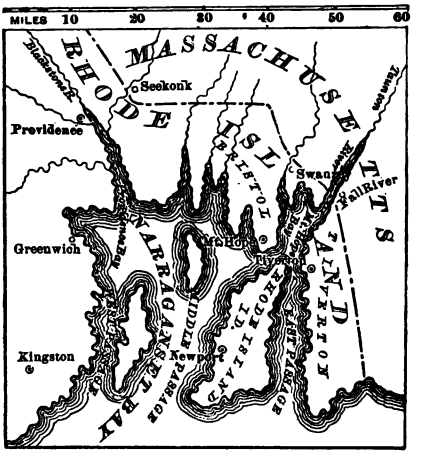
THE old king Massasoit died in 1662. His son, Alexander, now became chief of the nation, but died within the year; and the chieftainship descended to the younger brother, PHILIP OF MOUNT HOPE. It was the fate of this brave man to lead his people in a final struggle against the whites. Causes of war already existed, and the time had come for the conflict.

2. The natives of New England had sold their lands. The English were the purchasers; the chiefs had signed the deeds; the price had been fairly paid. The old men died, but the deeds remained, and the lands could not be recovered. There were at this time in the country east of the Hudson about twenty-five thousand Indians and fifty thousand English. The young warriors could not understand the validity of land-titles. They sighed for the freedom of their fathers' hunting-grounds. The ring of English axes had scared the game out of the forest, and English nets had scooped the fishes from the rivers. The Wampanoags had nothing left but the peninsulas of Bristol and Tiverton.

3. There were personal grievances also. King Alexander had been arrested, tried by an English jury, and imprisoned. He had caught his death-fever in a Boston jail. Perhaps King Philip, if left to himself, would have still sought peace. He was not a rash man; and he clearly foresaw the result of a war with the whites. But the young men of the tribe were thirsting for revenge, and could no longer be restrained. The women and children were put under the protection of Canonchet, king of the Narragansetts. On the 24th of June, 1675, the village of Swanzey was attacked, and eight Englishmen were killed.

4. Within a week the militia of Plymouth, joined by volunteers

from Boston, entered the enemy's country. A few Indians were overtaken and killed. The troops marched into the peninsula of Bristol and compelled Philip to fly for his life. With five or six hundred fugitives he escaped to Tiverton, on the eastern side of the bay. Here they were attacked, but lying concealed in a swamp, they beat back the English with considerable loss. The place was then surrounded and besieged for two weeks; but Philip and his men managed to escape in the night and fled to the country of the Nipmucks, in Central Massachusetts. A general Indian war broke out. The hatred of the savages was easily kindled into hostility. For a whole year the settlements on the frontier became a scene of burning and massacre.



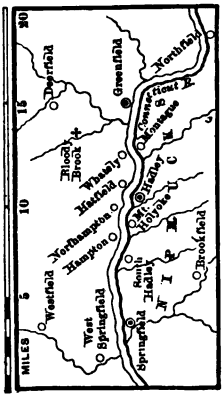
FIRST SCENE OF KING PHILIP'S WAR.

5. After Philip's flight, the English forces marched against the Narragansetts. By them the women and children of the Wampanoags had been received and sheltered. King Canonchet was given his choice of peace or war. Afraid of English muskets, he signed a treaty, agreeing to deliver up all fugitives from the hostile tribe. Still, it was expected that the Narragansetts would break their pledges and join Philip.

6. Philip soon persuaded the Nipmucks to take up arms. As usual with savages, hostilities were begun with treachery. Captains Wheeler and Hutchinson were sent with twenty men to Brookfield to hold a conference with the Nipmuck chiefs. Near the village the Indians laid an ambush, surrounded the English, and killed nearly the whole company. A few survivors escaping to the settlements, gave the alarm, and the people fled to their block-house in time to save their lives.

7. After a siege of two days, the savages succeeded in firing the

house with burning arrows, and the destruction of all seemed certain. But a shower of rain poured down, and the flames were extinguished. Reinforcements came from Springfield, and the Indians fled. The people of Brookfield now sought refuge in the towns along the river. On the 26th of August, a battle was fought at Deerfield. The whites were successful; but a few days afterward the savages fired the village, and the greater part of it was burned. A storehouse containing the harvests was saved, and Captain Lathrop, with eighty men, undertook the task of removing the stores to Hadley. A train of wagons, guarded by the soldiers, left Deerfield on the 18th of September, and proceeded five miles, when they were surrounded by eight hundred Indians who lay in ambush at the ford of Bloody Brook. The whites fought desperately, and were killed almost to a man. Meanwhile, Captain Mosely arrived with seventy militia and the battle continued, the English retreating until they were reinforced by a hundred and sixty English and Mohegans. The savages were then beaten back with heavy losses.



SECOND SCENE OF KING PHILIP'S WAR.

8. On the day of the burning of Deerfield, Hadley was attacked while the people were at church. The savages had already begun their work of butchery, when the gray-haired General Goffe rushed forth from his place of concealment, rallied the people, and saved them from destruction. After the Indians had been driven into the woods, the veteran went back to his covert and was seen no more. During the autumn there was fighting at Springfield, Hadley, and Hatfield. At the latter place the Indians were repulsed with heavy losses. The distant farms and settlements were abandoned, and the people sought shelter in the larger towns near the river.

9. Philip now gathered his warriors and repaired to the Narragansetts. By receiving them, Canonchet violated his treaty with the English, but he chose to share the fate of Philip. Massachu-

setts immediately declared war against the Narragansetts, and Rhode Island was invaded by a thousand men led by Colonel Winslow. The manner of defence adopted by the savages favored their destruction at one blow. In the middle of a cedar swamp, near Kingston, the Wampanoags and Narragansetts collected to the number of three thousand. Into this place was gathered the whole wealth of the two nations. The wigwams extended over several acres of land that rose out of the swamp. A fort was built on the island, and fortified with a breastwork of felled trees. Here the savages believed themselves secure from assault.



THIRD SCENE OF KING PHILIP'S WAR.

10. The English forces reached the fort on the 19th of December. The only entrance to the camp was over a fallen tree. A few brave men sprang forward, but were swept off by the fire of the Indians. Another company crept around the defences, and, finding a point unguarded, charged into the inclosure. The work of death now began in earnest. The wigwams were set on fire, and the flames swept around the village. The Indians, attempting to escape from the burning fort, were met by the English with loaded muskets. More than a thousand warriors were killed or captured. The wounded, the old men, the women and children of the nation, were burned to death. Eighty English soldiers were killed and a hundred and fifty wounded.

11. A few of the savages, led by Philip, escaped to the Nipmucks. In the following spring the war was renewed. Around three hundred miles of frontier, from Maine to the mouth of the Connecticut, there was massacre and devastation. Lancaster, Medfield, Groton, and Marlborough were laid in ashes. Weymouth, within twenty miles of Boston, met the same fate. Everywhere were the traces of burning and murder.

12. But the resources of the savages were soon wasted, and their

numbers grew daily less. In April, Canonchet was captured on the banks of the Blackstone. Refusing to make a treaty, the haughty chieftain was put to death. Philip's company had dwindled to a handful. His wife and son were made prisoners; the latter was sold as a slave, and ended his life in the Bermudas. The savage monarch cared no longer to live. A company of soldiers surrounded him near his old home at Mount Hope. A treacherous Indian took a deadly aim at the breast of his chieftain. The report of a musket rang through the woods, and the king of the Wampanoags sprang forward and fell dead.

13. New England suffered terribly in this war. The losses of the war amounted to five hundred thousand dollars. Thirteen towns and six hundred dwellings lay in ashes. Six hundred men had fallen in the field. Gray-haired sire, mother and babe had sunk together under the blow of the Red man's tomahawk. Now there was peace again. The Indian race was swept out of New England. The tribes beyond the Connecticut came and pleaded for their lives. The colonists returned to their farms and villages to build new homes in the ashes of old ruins.

14. It was hoped that the English government would help to repair the losses which the colonists had sustained; but not so. Instead of help came Edward Randolph with authority from the king to collect duties in New England. Governor Leverett received him coldly, and told him that the people had finished the Indian war without expense to the English treasury, and that they were now entitled to the enjoyment of their rights. And so Randolph sailed back to London.

15. The next trouble was concerning the province of Maine. Sir Ferdinand Gorges, the old proprietor, was now dead; but his heirs still claimed the territory. The people of Maine had put themselves under the authority of Massachusetts; but the heirs of Gorges carried the matter before the English council, and in 1677 a decision was given in their favor. The Boston government then made a proposition to the Gorges family to purchase their claims; the proposition was accepted, and for the sum of twelve hundred and fifty pounds the province was transferred to Massachusetts.

16. A similar difficulty arose in regard to New Hampshire. As

early as 1622 the Plymouth council had granted this territory to Ferdinand Gorges and Captain John Mason. Seven years afterward Gorges surrendered his claim to Mason, who thus became sole proprietor. But this territory was also covered by the charter of Massachusetts. Mason died; and in 1679 his son Robert came forward and claimed the province. This cause was also taken before the ministers, who decided that the title of the younger Mason was valid. To the great disappointment of the people of both provinces, the two governments were separated. A royal government, the first in New England, was now established over New Hampshire, and Edward Cranfield became governor.

17. But the people refused to recognize Cranfield's authority. The king attributed this conduct to the influence of Massachusetts, and directed his judges to make an inquiry as to whether Massachusetts had not forfeited her charter. In 1684, the royal court gave a decision in accordance with the monarch's wishes. The patent was forfeited, said the judges; and the king might assume control of the colony. But before the charter could be revoked, Charles II. fell sick and died.

18. The new king, James II., adopted his brother's policy, and in 1686, the scheme so long entertained was carried out. The charter of Massachusetts was formally revoked; all the colonies between Nova Scotia and Narragansett Bay were consolidated, and Sir Edmund Andros was appointed royal governor of New England. King James could hardly have found a tool better fitted to do his will. It was enacted that nothing might be printed in Massachusetts without the governor's sanction. Popular representation was abolished. Voting by ballot was prohibited. Town meetings were forbidden. The public schools were allowed to go to ruin.

19. The despotism of Andros was quickly extended from Cape Cod Bay to the Piscataqua. The civil rights of New Hampshire were overthrown. In May of 1686 the charter of Rhode Island was taken away and her constitution subverted. The seal was broken, and a royal council appointed to conduct the government. Andros next proceeded to Connecticut. Arriving at Hartford in October of 1687, he found the assembly in session, and demanded the surrender of the charter. The instrument was brought in and

laid upon the table. A debate ensued, and continued until evening. When it was about to be decided that the charter should be given up, the lamps were dashed out. Other lights were brought in; but the charter had disappeared. Joseph Wadsworth, snatching up the parchment, bore it off through the darkness and concealed it in a hollow tree, ever afterward remembered as THE CHARTER OAK. But the assembly was overawed and the authority of Andros established throughout the country.

20. But his dominion ended suddenly. The English Revolution of 1688 was at hand. James II. was driven from his throne; the system of arbitrary rule which he had established fell with a crash, and Andros with the rest. The news of the accession of William and Mary reached Boston on the 4th of April, 1689. On the 18th of the month, the citizens of Boston rose in rebellion. Andros was seized and marched to prison. The insurrection spread; and before the 10th of May New England had regained her liberties.

RECAPITULATION.

Philip king of the Wampanoags.—Causes of war.—Alexander's imprisonment.—Outrages are committed.—The war begins.—Philip is pursued to Mount Hope.—Is driven from the country.—Goes to the Nipmucks.—A general war ensues.—The Narragansetts remain neutral.—English embassadors massacred at Brookfield.—The town is attacked.—And burned.—Deerfield destroyed.—Lathrop is ambushed at Bloody Brook.—Hadley is attacked.—Rescued by Goffe.—Springfield is destroyed.—Hadley burned.—The savages are defeated at Hatfield.—The English invade the country.—Philip and his forces take refuge in a swamp.—Are surrounded.—And utterly routed.—Ruin of the Narragansetts.—The war on the frontiers.—Towns and villages destroyed.—The savages grow feeble.—Canonchet is put to death.—Philip's family are captured.—And sold as slaves.—Himself hunted down.—And shot.—Submission of the tribes.—Losses of New England.—The English government refuses help.—Randolph comes to Massachusetts.—And is resisted.—Massachusetts purchases Maine.—Difficulties concerning New Hampshire.—Royal government is established.—Cranfield's administration.—The king's hostility.—His death.—The charter of Massachusetts is annulled.—James II. appoints Andros governor.—The liberties of the people are destroyed.—The government of Andros is extended over New England.—The charter of Connecticut is saved.—The Revolution of 1688.—Andros is imprisoned.—And the colonies regain their liberties.

CHAPTER XVI.

MASSACHUSETTS.—WAR AND WITCHCRAFT.

IN 1689 war was declared between France and England. This conflict is known in American history as KING WILLIAM'S WAR. When James II. escaped from his kingdom, he took refuge at the court of Louis XIV. of France. The two monarchs were both Catholics, and on this account an alliance was made between them. Louis agreed to support James in his effort to recover the English throne. Parliament, meanwhile, had conferred the crown on King William. Thus the new sovereign was brought into conflict with the exiled James and his ally, the king of France. The war which thus originated in Europe soon extended to the French and English colonies in America.

2. The struggle began on the frontier of New Hampshire. On the 27th of June, a party of Indians in alliance with the French made an attack on Dover. The venerable magistrate of the town, Richard Waldron, now eighty years of age, was murdered. Twenty-three others were killed, and twenty-nine dragged off captive into the wilderness.

3. In August a hundred Abenakis came down from the Penobscot, and attacked Pemaquid—now Bremen. A company of farmers were surrounded in the harvest-field and murdered. The fort was besieged and compelled to surrender. A few of the people escaped into the woods; the rest were killed or carried away captive. The English and the Mohawks entered into an alliance, but the latter refused to make war upon their countrymen of Maine. The Dutch settlements of New Netherland made common cause with the English against the French.

4. In January, 1690, a regiment of French and Indians left Montreal, crossed the Mohawk, and reached the village of Sche-

nectady. At midnight they stole through the gates, raised the war-whoop, and began the work of death. The town was soon in flames. Sixty people were killed and scalped; the rest, escaping half-clad into the darkness, ran sixteen miles through the snow to Albany. The settlement of Salmon Falls, on the Piscataqua, was next attacked and destroyed. The English fort at Casco Bay was taken and the settlements broken up.

5. New England was thoroughly aroused. In order to provide the means of war, a congress was convened at New York. Here it was resolved to attempt the conquest of Canada. At the same time, Massachusetts was to coöperate by sending a fleet up the St. Lawrence against Quebec. Thirty-four vessels, carrying two thousand troops, were fitted out, and the command given to Sir William Phipps. Proceeding first against Port Royal, he compelled a surrender; the whole of Nova Scotia submitted without a struggle. The expedition was foolishly delayed until October; and an Indian carried the news to the governor of Canada. When the fleet came in sight of the town, the castle was so well garrisoned as to bid defiance to the English; and it only remained for Phipps to sail back to Boston. To meet the expenses of this expedition, Massachusetts issued bills of credit which were made a legal tender. Such was the origin of PAPER MONEY in America.

6. Meanwhile, the land forces had proceeded from Albany to Lake Champlain. Here dissensions arose among the commanders, and the expedition had to be abandoned. Sir William Phipps was now sent to England to procure aid from the government and to secure a reïssue of the old colonial charter. But the ministers replied that the English armies could not be spared, and that the old patent would not be reïssued. In the spring of 1692, Sir William returned to Boston commissioned as royal governor of Massachusetts, Plymouth, Maine, and Nova Scotia.

7. The war still continued. In 1694, the village of Oyster River was destroyed by the savages. The inhabitants were either killed or carried into captivity. Two years later, Pemaquid was a second time surrendered to the French and Indians. The captives were sent to Boston and exchanged for prisoners held by the English. In the following March, Haverhill was captured under circum-

stances of great atrocity. Nearly forty persons were butchered in cold blood; only a few were spared for captivity. Among the latter was Mrs. Hannah Dustin. Her child, only a week old, was dashed against a tree. The heart-broken mother, with her nurse and a lad named Leonardson, was taken by the savages to an island in the Merrimac. Here, while their captors, twelve in number, were asleep at night, the three prisoners arose, armed themselves with tomahawks, and with one deadly blow after another crushed in the temples of the savages, until ten of them lay still in death. Then, embarking in a canoe, the captives dropped down the river and reached the English settlement in safety.

8. But the war was already at an end. Early in 1697, commissioners of France and England assembled at the town of Ryswick, in Holland; and on the 10th of the following September, a treaty of peace was concluded. King William was acknowledged as the rightful sovereign of England, and the colonial boundary-lines of the two nations in America were established as before.

9. The darkest page in the history of New England is that which records the SALEM WITCHCRAFT. In February of 1692, in that part of Salem afterward called Danvers, a daughter and a niece of Samuel Parris, the minister, were attacked with a nervous disorder which rendered them partially insane. Parris pretended to believe that the girls were bewitched, and that an Indian maid-servant was the author of the affliction. He had seen her performing some of the rude ceremonies of her religion, and this gave color to his suspicions. He accordingly tied the ignorant creature and whipped her until she confessed herself a witch. Here, perhaps, the matter would have ended had not other causes existed for the spread of the delusion.

10. But Parris had had a quarrel in his church. A part of the congregation, led by George Burroughs, a former minister, disbelieved in witchcraft, while Parris and the rest thought such disbelief the height of wickedness. The celebrated Cotton Mather, minister of Boston, had recently preached much on the subject of witchcraft, teaching that witches were dangerous and ought to be put to death. Sir William Phipps, the royal governor, was a member of Mather's church. Stoughton, the deputy-governor, was

the tool of Parris and Mather. To these men must be charged the dreadful crimes that followed.

11. By the laws of England and of Massachusetts, witchcraft was punishable with death. In the early history of the colony, one person charged with being a wizard had been arrested at Charlestown, convicted and executed. But many people had now grown bold enough to denounce the baleful superstition; and something had to be done to save witchcraft from falling into contempt. A special court was accordingly appointed by Phipps to go to Salem and judge the persons accused by Parris. Stoughton was the presiding officer, Parris the prosecutor, and Mather a bishop to decide when the testimony was sufficient to condemn.

12. On the 21st of March, the proceedings began. Mary Cory was arrested, brought before the court, convicted, and hurried to prison. Sarah Cloyce and Rebecca Nurse, two innocent sisters, were next apprehended as witches. The only witnesses against them were the foolish Indian woman and the niece of Parris. The victims were sent to prison, protesting their innocence. Giles Cory, a patriarch of eighty years, and Edward Bishop, a sturdy farmer, and his wife were next arrested and condemned. George Burroughs was accused and imprisoned. And so the work went on, until seventy-five innocent people were locked up in dungeons.

13. In hope of saving their lives, some of the prisoners confessed themselves witches. It was soon found that those were to be put to death who denied the reality of witchcraft. Convictions followed fast; the gallows stood waiting for its victims. Burroughs was brought to the scaffold. Old Giles Cory refused to plead, *and was pressed to death.* Five women were hanged in one day.

14. Between June and September, twenty victims were hurried to their doom. Fifty-five others were tortured into the confession of falsehoods. A hundred and fifty lay in prison awaiting their fate. Two hundred were accused or suspected, and ruin seemed to impend over New England. But a reaction at last set in among the people. The court which Phipps had appointed to sit at Salem was dismissed. The spell was broken. The prisons were opened, and the victims of superstition went forth free. In the beginning of the next year a few persons were arrested and tried

for witchcraft. Some were even convicted; but not another life was sacrificed.

15. Most of those who participated in these terrible scenes confessed the wrong which they had done; but confessions could not restore the dead. Mather, in a vain attempt to justify himself, wrote a book in which he expressed his thankfulness *that so many witches had met their just doom;* and the hypocritical pamphlet received the approbation of the president of Harvard College.

RECAPITULATION.

King William's War begins.—The causes.—Dover is attacked and burned.—Pemaquid, Schenectady, and Salmon Falls are destroyed.—An expedition is planned against Canada.—Phipps takes Port Royal.—But fails at Quebec.—And returns.—Paper money is issued.—Failure of the land expedition.—Phipps goes to England.—And returns as royal governor.—Oyster River is destroyed.—Haverhill is attacked and burned.—Mrs. Dustin's captivity.—The treaty of Ryswick.—The witchcraft excitement begins at Salem.—The causes.—Parris and Mather.—The trials.—Convictions.—Executions.—The reaction.—Mather's book.

CHAPTER XVII.

MASSACHUSETTS.—WARS OF ANNE AND GEORGE.

IN less than four years after the treaty of Ryswick, France and England were again involved in a war which soon extended to the American colonies. In the year 1700, Charles II., king of Spain, died, having named as his successor Philip of Anjou, a grandson of Louis XIV. This measure pointed to a union of the crowns of France and Spain. The jealousy of England, Holland, and Austria was aroused; the archduke Charles of the latter country was put forward as a candidate for the Spanish throne; and war was declared against Louis XIV. for supporting Philip.

2. In 1701 James II., the exiled king of Great Britain, died at the court of Louis, who now recognized the son of James as sov-

ereign of England. This action was regarded as an insult to English nationality. King William prepared for war, but did not live to carry out his plans. In May of 1702, he died, leaving the crown to his sister-in-law, Anne, daughter of James II. From the circumstances of her reign, the conflict with France is known in American history as QUEEN ANNE'S WAR; but a better name is The War of the Spanish Succession.

3. In August, 1701, the powerful Five Nations, south of Lake Ontario and the St. Lawrence, made a treaty of neutrality with both the French and the English. The Abenakis of Maine did the same; but the French prevailed with the latter to break their compact. The first notice of treachery was a massacre. In one day the whole country between the town of Wells and Casco Bay, was given up to burning and butchery.

4. In midwinter of 1703–4, the town of Deerfield was destroyed by three hundred French and Indians from Canada. Forty-seven of the inhabitants were tomahawked. A hundred and twelve were dragged into captivity. The prisoners, many of them women and children, were obliged to march to Canada. Eunice Williams, the minister's wife, fainted by the wayside, and her brains were dashed out with a hatchet. Those who survived were afterward ransomed and permitted to return to their homes. A daughter of Mr. Williams remained among the Mohawks, married a chieftain, and in after years returned in Indian garb to Deerfield. But love of the woods and of her tawny husband prevailed over the charms of civilization, and she soon went back to the savages.

5. For several years a border-war was carried on in Maine and New Hampshire. In 1707, a fleet, bearing a thousand soldiers, was equipped at Boston and sent against Port Royal. But the defence was conducted with so much skill that the English were obliged to abandon the undertaking. Again the enterprise was renewed; and in 1710 an English and American fleet of thirty-six vessels, having on board four regiments of troops, sailed against Port Royal. The garrison was weak; famine came, and after a feeble defence, the place surrendered. All of Nova Scotia passed under the dominion of the English. The name of Port Royal was changed to ANNAPOLIS, in honor of Queen Anne.

6. Preparations were now made to invade Canada. A land force under General Nicholson was to march against Montreal. Fifteen men-of-war and forty transports were placed under command of Sir Hovenden Walker for the reduction of Quebec. Seven regiments of veterans, from the armies of Europe, were added to the colonial forces and sent with the expedition.

7. For six weeks the fleet was foolishly delayed at Boston. On the 30th of July, the ships set sail for the St. Lawrence. Proceeding up the river, the fleet, on the 22d of August, was enveloped in a fog. A gale came on, and eight of the best vessels were dashed to pieces on the rocks. Eight hundred and eighty-four men went down in the whirlpools. The remaining ships sailed back to England, and the colonial troops were disbanded at Boston.

8. Meanwhile, the army of General Nicholson had marched against Montreal. But when news arrived of the failure of the fleet, the land expedition was also abandoned. The folly of Walker had brought the campaign of 1711 to a shameful end. France had already made overtures for peace. On the 11th of April, 1713, a treaty was concluded at Utrecht, a town of Holland. By the terms of the settlement, England obtained control of the fisheries of Newfoundland. Labrador, the Bay of Hudson, and Nova Scotia, were ceded to Great Britain. On the 13th of July a second treaty was concluded with the Indians by which peace was secured throughout the American colonies.

9. In the times that followed Queen Anne's war, the people were greatly dissatisfied with the royal governors. The opposition to those officers took the form of a controversy about their salaries. The assembly insisted that the governor and his councilors should be paid in proportion to the importance of their offices, and for actual service only. But the royal commissions gave to each officer a fixed salary, which was frequently out of proportion to the services required. The difficulty was finally adjusted with a compromise in which the advantage was on the side of the people. It was agreed that the salaries of the royal officers should be annually allowed, and the amount fixed by vote of the assembly.

10. On the death of Charles VI. of Austria, in 1740, there were two claimants to the crown of the empire—Maria Theresa, daughter

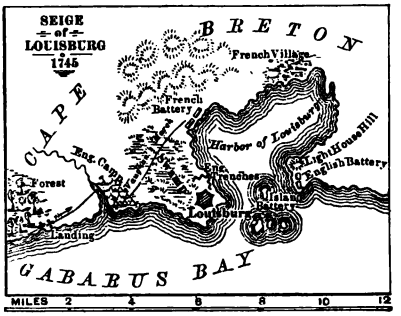
of the late emperor, and Charles Albert of Bavaria. Each claimant had his party and his army; war followed; and nearly all the nations of Europe were swept into the conflict. England and France were arrayed against each other. The contest that ensued is generally known as the War of the Austrian Succession, but in American history is called KING GEORGE'S WAR; for George II. was now king of England.

11. In America the only important event of the war was the capture of Louisburg, on Cape Breton Island. This place, standing at the entrance to the St. Lawrence, was regarded as a key to the Canadian provinces. Governor Shirley brought the matter before the legislature of Massachusetts; it was resolved to attempt the capture of the enemy's stronghold, and the other colonies were invited to aid the enterprise. Connecticut, New Hampshire, Rhode Island, New York, and Pennsylvania contributed men and supplies. The forces of Massachusetts alone numbered more than three thousand. An invitation was sent to Commodore Warren, commanding the English fleet in the West Indies, to join the colonial forces. William Pepperell, of Maine, was appointed commander-in-chief; and on the 4th of April, 1745, the American fleet sailed for Cape Breton.

12. At Canseau, Nova Scotia, the expedition was detained for sixteen days. Commodore Warren brought his fleet safely thither on the 23d of April. On the last day of the month the armament, numbering a hundred vessels, entered the Bay of Gabarus in sight of Louisburg. A landing was effected four miles below the city. On the next day four hundred volunteers, led by William Vaughan, stormed a French battery and turned the guns upon the fortress. An English battery was established on the east side of the harbor, but the walls of Louisburg were so strong that little damage was done by the guns across the bay. The soldiers of New England lashed their heavy cannons upon sledges, and dragged them through a marsh to solid ground within two hundred yards of the enemy's works. Still, the fort stood firm, and the siege progressed slowly.

13. On the 18th of May a French ship of sixty-four guns, laden with stores for the garrison, was captured by Warren's fleet. The French were greatly discouraged, and the defence grew feeble.

On the 26th of the month an effort was made to capture the French battery in the harbor; but the storming party was repulsed with the loss of a hundred and seventy-six men. A general assault was set for the 18th of June; but on the day previous the garrison sent out a flag of truce; terms of capitulation were agreed on, and the English flag was hoisted over the fortress.



SIEGE OF LOUISBURG, 1745.

14. By the terms of surrender, Louisburg and Cape Breton were given up to England. The rejoicing in the colonies was only equaled by the indignation in France. Louisburg must be retaken at all hazards, said the French ministers. For this purpose a powerful fleet was sent out in the following year, but before reaching America the commander died. Storms and disasters drove the ill-fated expedition to ruin. The renewal of the enterprise, in 1747, was attended with like misfortunes.

15. In 1748 a treaty of peace was concluded at Aix-la-Chapelle, a town of Western Germany. Nothing was gained but a restoration of conquests. Cape Breton was given back to France. Not a single boundary line was settled by the treaty. The real war between France and England for supremacy in the West was yet to be fought.

16. The history of Massachusetts has now been traced through a period of a hundred and thirty years. A few words on THE CHARACTER OF THE PURITANS may be added. They were a vigorous and hardy people, firm-set in the principles of honesty and virtue. They were sober, industrious, frugal; resolute, zealous, and steadfast. They esteemed truth more than riches. Loving home and native land, they left both for the sake of freedom; and finding freedom, they cherished it with the devotion of martyrs. Despised and hated, they rose above their revilers. In the school of evil fortune they gained the discipline of patience. They were the children of adversity and the fathers of renown.

17. The gaze of the Puritan was turned ever to posterity. He believed in the future. For his children he toiled and sacrificed. The system of free-schools is the monument of his love. The printing-press is his memorial. Almshouses and asylums are the tokens of his care for the unfortunate. With him the outcast found sympathy, and the wanderer a home. He was the earliest champion of civil rights, and the builder of THE UNION.

18. In matters of religion the fathers of New England were sometimes intolerant and superstitious. Their religious faith was gloomy. Human life was deemed a sad and miserable journey. To be mistaken was to sin. To fail in trifling ceremonies was reckoned a crime. In the shadow of such belief the people became austere and melancholy. They set up a cold and severe form of worship. Dissenters themselves, they could not tolerate the dissent of others. To punish error seemed to the Pilgrims to be right and necessary. But Puritanism contained within itself the power to correct its own abuses. The evils of the system may well be forgotten in the glory of its achievements. Without the Puritans, America would have been a delusion and liberty only a name.

RECAPITULATION.

Causes of Queen Anne's War.—Field of operations in America.—A treaty is made with the Five Nations.—The conflict begins.—Deerfield is burned.—And the inhabitants carried captive to Canada.—Barbarities of the Indians.—An expedition is sent against Port Royal.—The attempt fails.—Is renewed in 1710.—Port Royal is taken.—And named Annapolis.—Preparations are made for invading Canada.—Nicholson commands the land forces.—And Walker the fleet.—The squadron is delayed.—Is ruined by a storm in the St. Lawrence.—Returns in disgrace.—The expedition by land is abandoned.—A treaty is made at Utrecht.—A separate peace with the Indians.—The people of Massachusetts resist the royal governors.—Causes of King George's War.—The conflict begins.—Importance of Louisburg.—Its conquest is planned.—The colonies contribute men and means.—The expedition leaves Boston.—Is joined by Warren's fleet.—Invests Louisburg.—The siege.—Cape Breton submits.—France attempts to reconquer Louisburg.—Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle.—Character of the Puritans.

CHAPTER XVIII.

NEW YORK.—SETTLEMENT.

THE settlement of New Amsterdam resulted from the voyages of the brave Sir Henry Hudson. For ten years after its founding, the colony was governed by the directors of the Dutch East India Company. In 1621 the Dutch West India Company was organized, and Manhattan Island, with its cluster of huts, passed at once under the control of the new corporation.



SIR HENRY HUDSON.

2. In April, 1623, the ship *New Netherland*, with thirty families on board, arrived at New Amsterdam. The colonists, called WALLOONS, were Dutch Protestant refugees. Cornelius May was the leader of the company. Most of the new immigrants settled with their friends on Manhattan; but the captain, with a party of fifty, made explora-

tions as far as Delaware Bay. A few miles below Camden, a block-house was built and named Fort Nassau. In the same year Joris, another Dutch captain, sailed up the Hudson to the present site of Albany, where he built Fort Orange.

3. In 1625 William Verhulst became governor of the colony at Manhattan. In January of the next year, Peter Minuit was appointed to succeed him. In May the island, containing more than twenty thousand acres, was purchased from the natives *for twenty-four dollars.* A block-house was built and surrounded with a palisade. New Amsterdam was already a town of thirty houses.

4. The Dutch of New Amsterdam and the Pilgrims of New Plymouth were early and fast friends. In 1627 an embassy was sent by Minuit to Plymouth with expressions of good will. Governor Bradford replied with words of sympathy, but advised the Dutch to obtain new land-titles from the council of Plymouth.

5. In 1628 the population of Manhattan numbered two hundred and seventy. The settlers engaged in the fur-trade. In 1629 the West India Company framed a CHARTER OF PRIVILEGES, under which a class of proprietors called patroons were authorized to colonize the country. The conditions were that each patroon should purchase his lands of the Indians; and that he should establish a colony of not less than fifty persons.

6. Five estates were immediately laid out. Three of them were on the Hudson; the fourth, on Staten Island; and the fifth, in the southern half of Delaware. Samuel Godyn was patroon of this estate, but the management was entrusted to David de Vries. With thirty immigrants, he reached Delaware Bay in the spring of 1631, and founded Lewistown, the oldest settlement in Delaware.

7. De Vries soon returned to Holland, leaving the settlement in charge of Hosset. The latter brought the colony to ruin. The natives rose upon the colonists and left not a man alive. The houses were burned to the ground; nothing but ashes remained to testify of savage passion.

8. In April of 1633, Minuit was superseded by Wouter van Twiller. Three months previously the Dutch erected a block-house at Hartford. In October of the same year, an armed vessel from Plymouth sailed up the river and defied the Dutch com-

mander. The English proceeded up stream to the mouth of the Farmington, where they built Fort Windsor. Two years later, by the building of Saybrook, at the mouth of the Connecticut, they obtained control of the river above and below the Dutch fort.

9. In 1626, Gustavus Adolphus, the Protestant king of Sweden, formed the design of establishing settlements in America. But before his plans could be carried into effect, he became involved in war, and the company which had been formed was disorganized. In 1632, Gustavus was killed in battle, but the Swedish minister took up the work which his master had left unfinished. The charter of the company was renewed, and after four years the enterprise was brought to a successful issue.

10. Late in 1637, a company of Swedes and Finns left the harbor of Stockholm, and in the following February arrived in Delaware Bay. The country from Cape Henlopen to the falls at Trenton, was honorably purchased of the Indians. The name of NEW SWEDEN was given to the territory. On the left bank of a small tributary of the Brandywine, a spot was chosen for the settlement. The immigrants soon provided themselves with houses. The creek and the fort were both named Christiana, in honor of Christina, the maiden queen of Sweden. In a short time the banks of the bay and river were dotted with pleasant hamlets.

11. The authorities of New Amsterdam were jealous of the Swedish colony. Sir William Kieft, who had succeeded Van Twiller, warned the settlers of their intrusion on Dutch territory. But the Swedes went on enlarging their borders. Kieft, indignant at these aggressions, sent a party to rebuild Fort Nassau, on the old site below Camden. The Swedes adopted active measures of defence. Ascending the river to within six miles of the mouth of the Schuylkill, they landed. On the island of Tinicum, a short distance below Philadelphia, they built a strong fort of hemlock logs. Here, in 1643, Governor Printz established his residence.

12. In 1640 New Netherland became involved in a war with the Indians. Dishonest traders had maddened them with rum and then defrauded them. The savages of the Jersey shore crossed over to Staten Island, burning and killing. New Amsterdam was soon put in a state of defence, and a company of militia was sent

against the savages. On both sides the war degenerated into treachery and murder. Through the mediation of Roger Williams, a truce was obtained, and immediately broken. A chieftain's son, who had been robbed, went to the nearest settlement and killed the first Hollander whom he met. Governor Kieft demanded the criminal, but the chiefs refused to give him up.

13. While the dispute was still unsettled, a party of Mohawks came down the river to enforce their supremacy over the Algonquins in the vicinity of New Amsterdam. The latter begged assistance of the Dutch. Kieft now saw an opportunity of wholesale destruction. A company of soldiers set out from Manhattan, and discovered the camp of the Algonquins. The place was surrounded by night, and the first notice of danger given to the savages was the roar of muskets. Nearly a hundred of the poor wretches were killed by those to whom they had appealed for help.

14. When it was known among the tribes that the Dutch, and not the Mohawks, were the authors of this outrage, the war was renewed with fury. The Indians divided into small war-parties and concealed themselves in the woods; then rose upon defenceless farmhouses, burning and butchering without mercy. At this time Mrs. Anne Hutchinson was living with her son-in-law in the valley of the Housatonic. Her house was surrounded and set on fire by the savages; every member of the family except one child was murdered. Mrs. Hutchinson herself was burned alive.

15. In 1643 Captain John Underhill of Massachusetts was appointed to command the Dutch forces. He first invaded New Jersey, and brought the Delawares into subjection. A decisive battle was fought on Long Island; and at Greenwich, in Western Connecticut, the power of the Indians was finally broken. The Iroquois came forward with proposals for peace. Both parties were anxious to rest from the ruin of war. On the 30th of August, 1645, a treaty was concluded at Fort Amsterdam.

16. Nearly all of the bloodshed of this war may be charged to Governor Kieft. The people had many times desired to make peace with the Indians, but the project had always been defeated by the governor. As soon as the war was ended, petitions for his removal were circulated and signed by the people. In 1647

the West India Company revoked his commission and appointed Peter Stuyvesant to succeed him. Kieft embarked for Europe; but the ship in which he sailed was wrecked on the coast of Wales, and the guilty governor found a grave in the sea.

RECAPITULATION.

The East India Company govern Manhattan.—A colony is sent from Holland.—A charter is granted to the West India company.—The Walloons arrive at New Amsterdam.—May builds Fort Nassau.—And Jorris, Fort Orange.—May is governor.—And then Verhulst.—And Minuit.—Manhattan is purchased.—And fortified.—Friendly relations of the Walloons and the Puritans.—The Dutch devote themselves to the fur-trade.—Growth of the colony.—A charter is granted.—The patroons.—Five manors are laid out.—Delaware is colonized.—And then abandoned.—Van Twiller succeeds Minuit.—A fort is built at Hartford.—The English claim the Connecticut.—Sweden proposes to plant an American colony.—The project is delayed.—But renewed.—A colony reaches the Delaware.—Settles at Christiana.—Is prosperous.—New Netherland is jealous.—Fort Nassau is rebuilt.—Printz removes to Tinicum.—The Indian War breaks out.—The Mohawks come.—Kieft massacres the Algonquins.—The war continues.—Fate of Mrs. Hutchinson.—Underhill conquers the Indians.—Kieft the author of the war.—Stuyvesant succeeds him.

CHAPTER XIX.

NEW YORK.—ADMINISTRATION OF STUYVESANT.

PETER STUYVESANT entered upon his duties on the 11th of May, 1647, and continued in office for seventeen years. His first care was to conciliate the Indians. So intimate and cordial became the relations between the natives and the Dutch that they were suspected of making common cause against the English. Massachusetts was alarmed lest such an alliance should be formed. But the policy of Stuyvesant was based on nobler principles.

2. Until now the West India Company had had exclusive control of the commerce of New Netherland. In 1648 this monopoly was abolished, and regular export duties were substituted. The

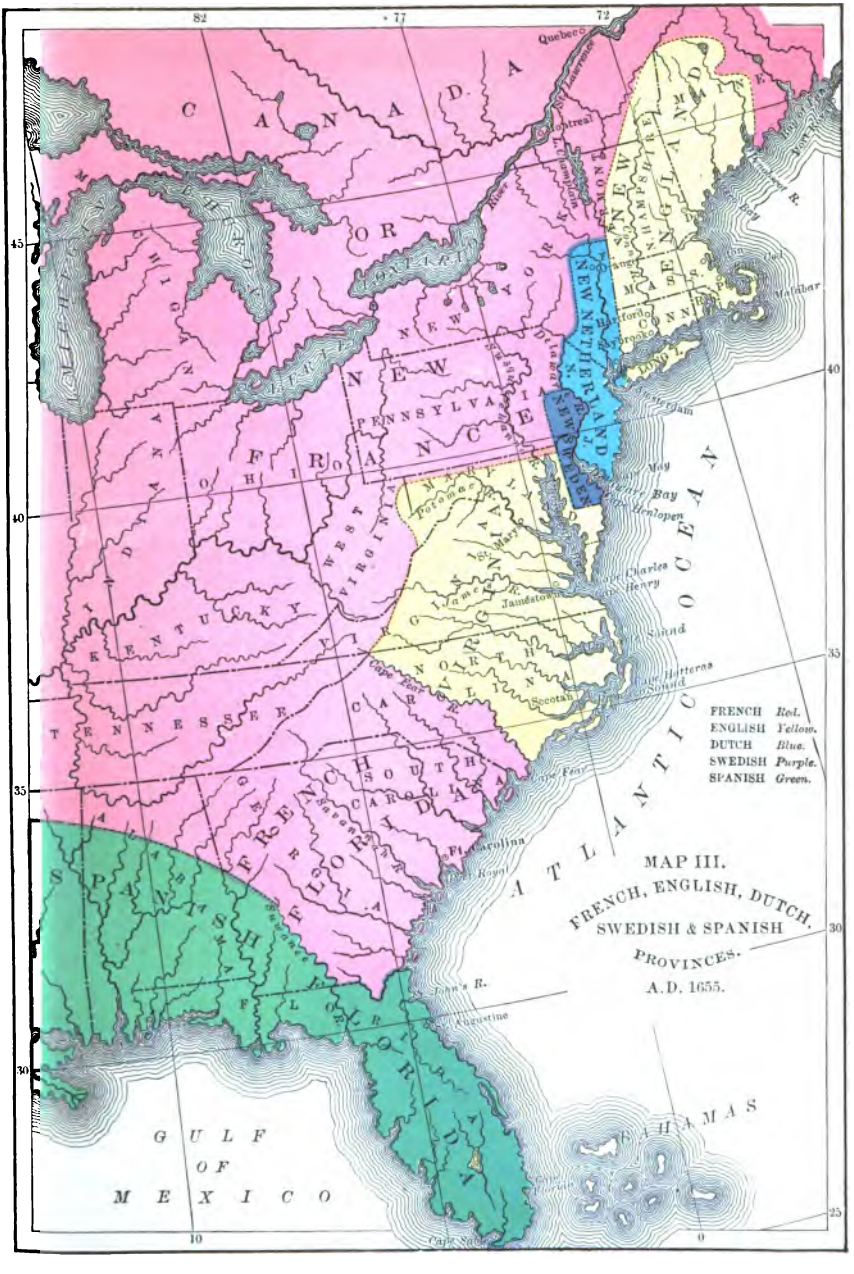
benefit of the change was soon apparent in the improvement of the Dutch province. In a letter written to Stuyvesant by the secretary of the company, the prediction was made that the commerce of New Amsterdam should cover every ocean, and the ships of all nations crowd into her harbor. But for many years the growth of the city was slow. The better parts of Manhattan Island were still divided among the farmers. Central Park was a forest of oaks and chestnuts.

3. In 1650 the boundary was fixed between New England and New Netherland. The line extended across Long Island north and south, passing through Oyster Bay, and thence to Greenwich, on the other side of the sound. From this point northward the dividing-line was nearly identical with the present boundary of Connecticut on the west. This treaty was ratified by the colonies, by the West India Company, and by the States-General of Holland; but England treated the matter with indifference.

4. Stuyvesant now determined to subdue the colony of New Sweden. In 1651, an armament left New Amsterdam for the Delaware. On the present site of New Castle, Fort Casimir was built and garrisoned with Dutch soldiers. The Swedish settlement of Christiana was almost in sight of this fortress, and a conflict could not be avoided. Rising, the governor of the Swedes, waited until Fort Casimir was completed, then captured the place by stratagem, and hoisted the flag of Sweden.

5. It was a short-lived triumph. The West India Company at once issued orders to Stuyvesant to compel the Swedish colonists to submit. In September of 1655, the old governor, at the head of six hundred troops, sailed against New Sweden. Before the 25th of the month every fort belonging to the Swedes had been forced to surrender. Honorable terms were granted to all, and in a few days the authority of New Netherland was established. The little State of New Sweden had ceased to exist. The possessions of the various nations in America may be studied from the accompanying map, drawn for the year 1655.

6. While Stuyvesant was absent on his expedition against the Swedes, the Algonquins rose in rebellion. In a fleet of sixty-four canoes they appeared before New Amsterdam, yelling and


82
77
72
45
40
35
30
25
10
0
CANADA
Quebec
Montreal
NEW ENGLAND
NEW NETHERLAND
NEW YORK
NEW JERSEY
PENNSYLVANIA
MARYLAND
VIRGINIA
NORTH CAROLINA
SOUTH CAROLINA
GEORGIA
FLORIDA
KENTUCKY
TENNESSEE
OHIO
Jamestown
Charles Henry
Cape Fear R.
Cape Fear
Port Royal
St. John's R.
St. Augustine
Cape Sable
GULF OF MEXICO
ATLANTIC OCEAN
BAHAMAS
FRENCH Red.
ENGLISH Yellow.
DUTCH Blue.
SWEDISH Purple.
SPANISH Green.
MAP III.
FRENCH, ENGLISH, DUTCH, SWEDISH & SPANISH PROVINCES.
A.D. 1655.

discharging arrows. After paddling about until their rage was spent, the savages went on shore and began to burn and murder. The return of the Dutch from Delaware induced the chiefs to sue for peace, which Stuyvesant granted on better terms than the Indians deserved.



PETER STUYVESANT.

7. In 1663 the town of Kingston was attacked and destroyed by the Indians. Sixty-five of the inhabitants were tomahawked or carried into captivity. To punish this outrage a strong force was sent from New Amsterdam. The Indians fled to the woods; but the Dutch soldiers pursued them to their villages, burned their wigwams, and killed every warrior who could be overtaken. In May of 1664, a treaty of peace was concluded.

8. Governor Stuyvesant had great difficulty in defending his province against the claims of other nations. Discord at home added to his embarrassments. For many years the Dutch had witnessed the growth and prosperity of the English colonies. Boston had outgrown New Amsterdam. The schools of Massachusetts and Connecticut flourished; the academy on Manhattan, after a sickly career of two years, was discontinued. In New Netherland heavy taxes were levied for the support of the poor; New England had no poor. The Dutch grew emulous of the progress of their neighbors, and attributed their own want of thrift to the mismanagement of the West India Company.

9. On the 12th of March, 1664, the duke of York received

from Charles II. a patent for the whole country between the Connecticut and the Delaware. Without regard to the rights of Holland or the West India Company, through whose exertions the valley of the Hudson had been peopled, the English monarch by this act robbed a sister kingdom of a well-earned province.

10. The duke of York made haste to secure his territory. An English squadron under command of Richard Nicolls was immediately sent to America. On the 28th of August, the fleet anchored before New Amsterdam. Governor Stuyvesant convened the Dutch council and exhorted them to rouse to action and fight. Some one replied that the West India Company *was not worth fighting for*. Burning with indignation, Stuyvesant snatched up the proposal of Nicolls and tore it to tatters. It was all in vain. The brave old man was forced to sign the capitulation; and on the 8th of September, 1664, New Netherland ceased to exist.

11. The English flag was hoisted over the fort and town, and the name of NEW YORK was substituted for New Amsterdam. The surrender of fort Orange, now named Albany, followed on the 24th; and on the 1st of October the Swedish and Dutch settlements on the Delaware capitulated. The conquest was complete. The supremacy of Great Britain in America was finally established. From Maine to Georgia, every mile of the American coast was under the flag of England.

RECAPITULATION.

Stuyvesant is appointed governor.—Peace established with the Indians.—Free trade succeeds monopoly.—Growth of the colony.—A boundary is established between New England and New Netherland.—The Dutch again claim New Sweden.—Build Fort Casimir.—The place is captured by the Swedes.—Stuyvesant conquers New Sweden.—The Algonquins rebel.—And are subdued.—The Indians burn Kingston.—Are punished.—Stuyvesant is beset with difficulties.—New Netherland lags.—The Dutch prefer English laws.—The province is granted to the duke of York.—He makes good his claim.—Conquers New Netherland.

CHAPTER XX.

NEW YORK UNDER THE ENGLISH.

RICHARD NICOLLS, the first English governor of New York, began his duties by settling boundaries. As early as 1623 Long Island had been granted to the earl of Stirling. Connecticut also claimed that part of the island included in the present county of Suffolk. The claim of Stirling was purchased by the governor, but the pretensions of Connecticut were set aside. This action was the source of much discontent until the duke of York compensated Connecticut by making a favorable change in her southwest boundary.

2. In 1664 the territory between the Hudson and the Delaware was granted to Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret. This district, nearly corresponding with the State of New Jersey, was now taken from New York, and a separate government established by the proprietors. The country below the Delaware, called THE TERRITORIES, was consolidated with New York and ruled by deputies of that province. Finally, the name of NEW YORK was extended to all the country formerly called New Netherland.

3. The Dutch had surrendered themselves to the English government in the hope of obtaining civil liberty. But it was a poor sort of liberty that any province was likely to receive from Charles II. The promised rights of the people were evaded and withheld. The old titles by which the Dutch farmers held their lands were annulled. The people were obliged to accept new deeds from the English governor, and to pay him therefor large sums of money.

4. In 1667 Nicolls was superseded by the tyrannical Lord Lovelace. The people became dissatisfied and gloomy. The discontent

was universal. Several towns resisted the tax-gatherers and passed resolutions denouncing the government. The only attention which Lovelace and his council paid to these resolutions was to order them to be burnt before the town-house of New York. When the Swedes, a quiet people, resisted the governor's exactions, he wrote to his deputy: "If there is any more murmuring against the taxes, make them so heavy that the people can do nothing but think how to pay them."

5. In 1672 Charles II. was induced by the king of France to begin a war with Holland. The struggle extended to the colonies, and New York was for a short time revolutionized. In 1673 a small Dutch fleet sailed for America, and arrived before Manhattan on the 30th of July. Manning, the deputy-governor of New York, was frightened, and no defence was attempted. The fort was surrendered; the city capitulated; and the whole province yielded without a struggle. New Jersey and Delaware submitted. The name of New Netherland was revived; and the authority of Holland was restored from Connecticut to Maryland.

6. But the conquest was only a brief military occupation of the country. The civil authority of the Dutch was never reëstablished. In 1674 Charles II. was obliged to conclude a treaty of peace. All conquests made during the war were restored. New York reverted to the English government, and the rights of the duke were again recognized in the province. Sir Edmund Andros was now appointed governor. On the last day of October the Dutch forces were finally withdrawn, and Andros assumed control of the government.

7. It was a sad sort of government for the people. All the abuses of Lovelace's administration were revived. Taxes were levied without authority of law, and the protests of the people were treated with scorn. A popular legislative assembly was demanded, but the duke of York wrote to Andros that popular assemblies were dangerous to the government, and that *he did not see any use for them.*

8. In July of 1675, Andros made an effort to extend his authority over Connecticut. The assembly of that colony heard of his coming, and sent word to Captain Bull, at Saybrook, to resist

Andros in the name of the king. When the latter came in sight and hoisted the flag of England, the same colors were raised within the fort. The governor was permitted to land; but when he began to read his commission, he was ordered in the king's name to desist. Overawed by the Saybrook militia, Andros retired to his boats and set sail for Long Island.

9. The next attempt was to extend the jurisdiction of New York over New Jersey. Andros issued a decree that ships trading with that province should pay a duty at the custom-house of New York. This action was resisted. Andros attempted to frighten the assembly of New Jersey into submission, and arrested Philip Carteret, the deputy-governor. The representatives of the people, however, declared themselves to be under the protection of the Great Charter, which not even the duke of York could alter or annul. In August of 1682 the "Territories" beyond the Delaware were granted by the duke to William Penn. This little district, first settled by the Swedes, afterward conquered by the Dutch, then transferred to England, was now finally separated from New York and joined to the new province of Pennsylvania.

10. In 1683 Thomas Dongan, a Catholic, became governor of New York. For thirty years the people had been clamoring for a general assembly. At last the duke of York yielded to the demand. The new governor came with instructions to call an assembly of the freeholders of New York, by whom certain persons should be elected to take part in the government. Then, for the first time, the people of the province were permitted to choose their own rulers and to frame their own laws.

11. The new assembly made haste to declare THE PEOPLE to be a part of the government. All freeholders were granted the right of suffrage; trial by jury was established; taxes should not be levied except by the assembly; soldiers should not be quartered on the people; martial law should not exist; no person should be persecuted on account of his religion.

12. In July of 1684, the governors of New York and Virginia were met by the chiefs of the Iroquois at Albany; and the terms of a lasting peace were settled. A long war ensued between the Five Nations and the French. The Jesuits of Canada employed

every artifice to induce the Indians to break their treaty with the English; but the alliance was faithfully observed. In 1684, and again in 1687, the French invaded the territory of the Iroquois; but the warlike Mohawks and Oneidas drove back their foes with loss and disaster.

13. In 1685 the duke of York became king of England. It was soon found that even a monarch could violate his pledges. King James became the enemy of the government which had been established in his American province. The legislature of New York was dismissed. An odious tax was levied. Printing-presses were forbidden; and all the old abuses were revived.

14. In 1686 Edmund Andros became governor of New England. It was his plan to extend his authority over New York and New Jersey. To the former province, Francis Nicholson was sent as Andros's deputy; and until the English Revolution of 1688, New York was ruled as a province of New England. When the news of the accession of William of Orange reached New York, there was great rejoicing. The people rose in rebellion against Nicholson, who was glad to escape to England.

15. The leader of the insurrection was Captain Jacob Leisler. A committee of ten took upon themselves the task of governing. Leisler was appointed commandant of New York, and afterwards provisional governor. The councilors, who were friends of the deposed Nicholson, left the city and went to Albany. Here the party opposed to Leisler organized a second provisional government. Both factions began to rule in the name of William and Mary, the new sovereigns of England.

16. In 1689 Milborne, the son-in-law of Leisler, was sent to Albany to demand the surrender of the town. But the leaders of the northern faction opposed the demand and Milborne was obliged to retire. Such was the condition of affairs at the beginning of King William's War. In the spring of 1690 the authority of Leisler as governor of New York was recognized throughout the province. The summer was spent in preparations to conquer Canada. The general assembly was convened at the capital; but little was accomplished except a recognition of the government of Leisler.

17. In January of 1691, Captain Richard Ingoldsby arrived at New York. He brought intelligence that Colonel Sloughter had been appointed governor of the province. Leisler received Ingoldsby with courtesy, but the latter haughtily demanded the surrender of His Majesty's fort. Leisler refused to yield, but expressed his loyalty to King William and Colonel Sloughter. In March the governor himself arrived; and Leisler on the same day tendered his submission. He wrote a letter to Sloughter, expressing a desire to surrender the post to the governor. The letter was unanswered. Ingoldsby was sent with verbal orders to receive the fort. Leisler capitulated, and he and Milborne were seized and sent to prison.

18. As soon as the government was organized the prisoners were brought to trial. It was decided that Leisler had been a usurper. Sentence of death was passed on him and Milborne, but Sloughter hesitated to put the sentence into execution. In this state of affairs the governor was invited to a banquet by the royal councilors; and when heated with drink, the death-warrant was thrust before him for his signature. He succeeded in signing his name to the parchment; and before his drunken revel had passed away, his victims had met their fate. On the 16th of May, Leisler and Milborne were taken from prison and hanged.

19. In the same summer Governor Sloughter renewed the treaty with the chiefs of the Five Nations. In 1692 Major Schuyler, at the head of the New York militia, made a successful expedition against the French beyond Lake Champlain. Meanwhile, the assembly of the province met and passed a resolution against arbitrary taxation, and another which declared the people to be a part of the government.

20. Sloughter was succeeded in office by Benjamin Fletcher, a bad man of poor abilities. The new executive arrived in September of 1692. It was at this time the purpose of the English king to place under a common government all the territory between the Connecticut and the Delaware. Fletcher was accordingly commissioned as governor and commander-in-chief of New York, and also of the militia of Connecticut and New Jersey. In the latter province he met with little opposition; but the Puritans of Hart-

ford treated his pretensions with contempt. He made an effort to establish the English Church in New York, but was resisted and defeated.

21. In 1696 New York was invaded by the French. But they were soon driven back by the English and the Iroquois. Before a second invasion could be undertaken, King William's War was ended. In 1697 the Irish earl of Bellomont succeeded Fletcher as governor. His administration was the happiest in the history of the colony. His authority, like that of his predecessor, extended over a part of New England. Massachusetts and New Hampshire were under his jurisdiction, but Connecticut and Rhode Island remained independent.

22. To Bellomont's administration belongs the story of Captain William Kidd, the pirate. A vessel was fitted out by a company of distinguished Englishmen, to protect the commerce of Great Britain and to punish piracy. Governor Bellomont was one of the proprietors; and Kidd received a commission as captain. The ship sailed from England before Bellomont's departure for New York. Soon the news came that Kidd himself had turned pirate and become the terror of the seas. For two years he continued his career, then appeared publicly in the streets of Boston, was seized, sent to England, tried, convicted and hanged. What disposition was made of the treasures which the pirate-ship had gathered on the ocean has never been ascertained. It has been thought by some that the vast hoard of ill-gotten wealth was buried in the sands of Long Island.

23. In May of 1702, Bellomont was superseded by Lord Cornbury. A month previously the proprietors of New Jersey had surrendered their province to the English Crown. All obstacles being thus removed, the two colonies were formally united in one government under Cornbury. For thirty-six years the two provinces continued under the jurisdiction of a single governor.

24. Lord Cornbury was greatly disliked by the people. He attempted to establish the English Church; used the public money for his personal benefit; and persecuted those who had taken part in Leisler's insurrection. In 1708 the civil dissensions of the province reached a climax. The people petitioned for the gov-

ernor's removal. The councilors selected their own treasurer, and refused to vote appropriations. Then came Lord Lovelace with a commission from Queen Anne, and the wretched Cornbury was turned out of office. Left to the mercy of his subjects, they arrested him for debt and threw him into prison.

25. In the winter of 1709–10, eighteen hundred volunteers from the Hudson and the Delaware made an unsuccessful expedition against Montreal. The army marched northward as far as Lake George. Here information was received that the English fleet, which was to coöperate against Quebec, had been sent to Portugal; the armament of New England was insufficient of itself to attempt the conquest; and the troops of New York were obliged to retreat. Again, in 1711, the army which was to invade Canada by land was furnished by New York. A second time the provincial forces reached Lake George; but the news of the disaster to Walker's fleet destroyed all hope of success, and the discouraged soldiers returned to their homes. A heavy debt remained as the result of these campaigns.

26. In 1713 the Tuscaroras of Carolina, being defeated and driven from their homes by the Southern colonists, marched northward and joined their kinsmen on the St. Lawrence, making the sixth nation in the Iroquois confederacy. Nine years later the governors of New York, Pennsylvania, and Virginia made a commercial treaty with the Six Nations, by which the fur-trade of the Indians was secured by the English. In order to gain the full benefit of this arrangement, Governor Burnett of New York established a trading-post at Oswego, on Lake Ontario. The French, meanwhile, had built a strong fort at Niagara, and another at Crown Point, on the western shore of Lake Champlain.

27. The administration of Governor Cosby, who succeeded Burnett in 1732, was troubled with a dispute about the freedom of the press. The liberal party of the province held that a public journal might criticise the acts of the administration. The aristocratic party opposed such liberty as dangerous to good government. Zenger, an editor who published criticisms on the governor, was seized and put in prison. Great excitement ensued. The people praised their champion. Andrew Hamilton, a lawyer of

Philadelphia, went to New York to defend Zenger, who was brought to trial in July of 1735. The cause was heard, and the jury brought in a verdict of acquittal. The aldermen of New York, in order to testify their appreciation of Hamilton's services, made him a present of an elegant gold box, and the people were enthusiastic over their victory.

28. In the year 1741 occurred what is known as THE NEGRO PLOT. Negroes constituted a large fraction of the people. Several fires occurred, and the slaves were suspected of having kindled them; now they became feared and hated. Some degraded women started a rumor that the negroes had made a plot to burn the city, and set up one of their own number as governor. The terrified people were ready to believe anything. The reward of freedom was offered to any slave who would reveal the plot. Many witnesses rushed forward; the jails were filled with the accused; and more than thirty of the miserable creatures, with hardly the form of a trial, were convicted and then hanged or burned to death. Others were transported and sold as slaves in foreign lands. As soon as the excitement had subsided, it came to be doubted whether the whole affair had not been the result of terror and fanaticism. The verdict of after times has been *that there was no plot at all.*

29. During the progress of King George's War, New York was several times invaded by the French and Indians. But the invasions were easily repelled. Except the destruction of a few villages in the northern part of the State, little harm was done to the province. The alliance of the Mohawks with the English made the invasion of New York by the French an exploit of more danger than profit. The treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle, concluded in 1748, again brought peace and prosperity to the people of New York.

30. Such is the history of the little colony planted on Manhattan Island. A hundred and thirty years have passed since the first feeble settlements were made; now the valley of the Hudson is filled with farms and villages. The Walloons of Flanders and the Puritans of New England have blended into one people. Discord and contention have only resulted in colonial liberty. There

are other struggles through which the sons of New York must pass before they gain their freedom. But the oldest and greatest of the Middle Colonies has entered upon a glorious career, and the foundations of an EMPIRE STATE are laid.

RECAPITULATION.

Nicolls settles boundaries.—New Jersey is granted to Berkeley and Carteret.—Is claimed by Nicolls.—The Territories.—The Dutch claim liberty.—New land-titles are issued.—Lovelace succeeds Nicolls.—Is resisted by the people.—His tyranny.—Friendship of the English and the Dutch.—War with Holland.—New York is reconquered.—But is restored to England.—Andros begins his government.—Claims the country from Connecticut to Maryland.—Is baffled by Captain Bull at Saybrook.—Attempts to overawe New Jersey.—Delaware is separated from New York.—And joined to Pennsylvania.—Dongan becomes governor.—The right of representation is conceded.—Character of the constitution.—A treaty is made with the Iroquois.—The duke of York becomes king.—And overthrows colonial liberties.—Andros governor of New England.—Claims all the colonies north of the Delaware.—Leisler's insurrection.—The province yields to his authority.—Schenectady is burned.—Ingoldsby arrives.—Leisler and Milborne are arrested.—And hanged.—The Iroquois treaty is renewed.—The Indians make war on the French.—The assembly declares against arbitrary rule.—Fletcher governor.—Usurps the government of New Jersey.—Is defeated at Hartford.—Effort to establish the Episcopal Church.—The French invade New York.—Are repelled.—Bellomont becomes governor.—The career of Captain Kidd.—Cornbury succeeds Bellomont.—New Jersey is annexed to New York.—Cornbury's administration.—He is overthrown.—And succeeded by Lovelace.—An expedition is made against Montreal.—New York in debt.—The Tuscarora migration.—A fort is built at Oswego.—The French fortify Niagara and Crown Point.—Cosby governor.—Assails the freedom of the press.—The trial of Zenger.—The negro plot.—French invasions of New York.—Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle.—Prospects of the province.

MINOR EASTERN COLONIES.

CHAPTER XXI.

CONNECTICUT.

THE history of Connecticut begins with the year 1630. The first grant of the territory was made by the council of Plymouth to the earl of Warwick; and in March, 1631 the claim was transferred by him to Lord Say-and-Seal, Lord Brooke, and John Hampden. Before a colony could be planted, the Dutch of New Netherland reached the Connecticut and built a fort at Hartford. The people of Plymouth immediately sent out a force to counteract this movement of their rivals; for the territorial claim of the Puritans extended over Connecticut and over New Netherland itself.

2. When the English squadron sailing up the Connecticut came opposite the Dutch fort, the commander of the garrison ordered Captain Holmes to strike his colors, and threatened to fire in case the fleet should attempt to pass; but the English defiantly hoisted sails and proceeded up the river. At the mouth of the Farmington the Puritans landed and built the block-house of Windsor.

3. In October of 1635, a colony of sixty persons from Boston settled at Hartford, Windsor, and Wethersfield. Earlier in the same year the younger Winthrop, son of the governor of Massachusetts, arrived in New England. Under his direction a fort was built at the mouth of the Connecticut. The works were completed just in time to prevent the entrance of a Dutch trading-vessel which appeared at the mouth of the river. Such was the founding of Saybrook, named in honor of Lord Say-and-Seal and Lord Brooke.

4. To the early annals of Connecticut belongs the sad story of THE PEQUOD WAR. The country west of the Thames was more thickly peopled with savages than any other portion of New Eng-

land. The warlike Pequods were able to muster seven hundred warriors. The whole force of the English did not amount to two hundred men. But the superior numbers of the savages were more than balanced by the courage and weapons of the English.

5. In the year 1633, the crew of a trading-vessel were murdered on the banks of the Connecticut. An Indian embassy went to Boston to apologize; a treaty was made, and the Pequods acknowledged the king of England. The Narragansetts, enemies of the Pequods, had already made peace with Massachusetts. A reconciliation was thus effected between the two races of savages. But as soon as the Pequods were freed from their fear of the Narragansetts, they began to violate their treaty with the English. Outrages were committed, and soon the war began in earnest.

6. In this state of affairs the Pequods attempted to induce the Narragansetts and the Mohegans to join in a war against the English. But Roger Williams, now in Rhode Island, sent a letter to Sir Henry Vane, governor of Massachusetts, warned him of the danger, and volunteered to oppose the conspiracy. The governor replied, urging Williams to use his endeavors to thwart the alliance. Embarking alone in a canoe, the exile left Providence, and crossed the bay to the house of Canonicus, king of the Narragansetts. There he found the ambassadors of the Pequods. For three days and nights, at the peril of his life, he pleaded with Canonicus to reject the proposals of the hostile tribe. At last his efforts were successful, and the Narragansetts voted to remain at peace.

7. The Mohegans also rejected the proposed alliance. In the meantime, repeated acts of violence had roused the colony. During the winter of 1636–37 many murders were committed. In April a massacre occurred at Wethersfield, in which nine persons were killed. On the 1st of May the towns of Connecticut declared war. Sixty volunteers were put under command of Captain John Mason, of Hartford. Seventy Mohegans joined the expedition; and Sir Henry Vane sent Captain Underhill with twenty soldiers from Boston.

8. The descent from Hartford to Saybrook occupied one day. On the 20th of the month, the expedition passed the mouth of the Thames; here was the principal seat of the Pequod nation. When

the savages saw the squadron go by they set up shouts of exultation, and persuaded themselves that the English were afraid to hazard battle. The fleet proceeded quietly into Narragansett Bay. Here the troops landed and began their march into the country of the Pequods. At the cabin of Canonicus, Mason met the chiefs of the Narragansetts, and tried to persuade them to join him against the enemy; but they, fearing that the English might be defeated, decided to remain neutral.



SCENE OF THE PEQUOD WAR.

9. On the 25th of May the troops came within hearing of the Pequod fort. The warriors spent the night in uproar and jubilee. At two o'clock in the morning the English soldiers rose from their places of concealment and rushed forward to the fort. A dog ran howling among the wigwams, and the warriors sprang to arms. The English leaped over the puny palisades and began the work of death. "Burn them!" shouted Mason, seizing a flaming mat and running among the cabins; and in a few minutes the wigwams were a sheet of flame. The English and Mohegans hastily withdrew. The savages ran round and round like wild beasts in a burning circus. If one of the wretched creatures burst through the flames, it was only to meet certain death. The destruction was complete. Only seven warriors escaped; seven others were made prisoners. Six hundred men, women, and children perished, nearly all of them being burned to death in a heap. Before the rising of the sun the pride and glory of the Pequods had passed away forever. Sassacus, the chief of the tribe, escaped to the Mohawks and was murdered. Two of the English were killed and twenty others wounded in the battle.

10. In the morning three hundred Pequods, the remnant of the nation, approached from a second fort and found their town in ashes. The warriors stamped the earth in rage, and ran yelling through the woods. Mason's men returned to Saybrook, and thence

to Hartford. The remnants of the Pequods were pursued into the swamps west of Saybrook. Every wigwam was burned and every field laid waste. Two hundred fugitives were hunted to death or captivity. The prisoners were distributed as servants among the Narragansetts, or sold as slaves.

11. In the pursuit of the Pequods the English became acquainted with the coast west of the mouth of the Connecticut. Here some men of Boston tarried over winter, built cabins, and founded NEW HAVEN. Thither, in April, came a Puritan colony from England, led by Theophilus Eaton and John Davenport. On the first Sabbath after their arrival they assembled for worship under an oak; and Davenport preached a touching sermon on THE TEMPTATION IN THE WILDERNESS. The next care was to purchase land from the Indians. For the first year there was no government except a covenant that all would be obedient to the Scriptures.

12. In June of 1639, the men of New Haven held a convention *in a barn*, and adopted the Bible for a constitution. The government was called the House of Wisdom, of which Eaton, Davenport, and five others were the seven Pillars. None but church members were admitted to citizenship. All officers were to be chosen at an annual election. Other settlers came, and villages sprang up on both shores of the Sound.

13. Until 1639 the Western colonies had been subject to Massachusetts. Now the people began to think of a separate commonwealth. Delegates from the three towns came together at Hartford, and on the 14th of January a constitution was framed for the colony. The new instrument was one of the most simple and liberal ever adopted. But neither Saybrook nor New Haven would accept the frame of government by which the other colonies in the valley of the Connecticut were united.

14. In 1643 Connecticut became a member of the Union of New England. New Haven was also admitted; and in the next year Saybrook was annexed to Connecticut. In 1650, Governor Stuyvesant met the commissioners of the province at Hartford, and established the western boundary of the province. This measure promised peace; but in 1651 Stuyvesant was suspected of inciting the Indians against the English. Connecticut and

New Haven sought aid from Cromwell, who sent out a fleet to coöperate with the colonists in the reduction of New Netherland. But the news of peace arrived, and hostilities were averted.

15. On the restoration of monarchy in England, Connecticut recognized King Charles as rightful sovereign. The younger Winthrop was sent as ambassador to London to procure a royal patent for the colony. He bore with him a charter which had been prepared by the authorities of Hartford. Lord Say-and-Seal and the earl of Manchester lent their influence to induce the king to sign it. Winthrop showed him a ring which Charles I. had given to Winthrop's grandfather; and the token so moved the monarch's feelings that in a careless moment he signed the colonial charter—the most liberal and ample ever granted by an English king.



THE YOUNGER WINTHROP.

16. When Winthrop returned to Connecticut he was chosen governor of the colony, and continued in office for fourteen years. The civil institutions of the province were the best in New England. Peace reigned. During King Philip's War, Connecticut was saved from invasion. Not a hamlet was burned, not a life lost within her borders.

17. In July of 1675, Sir Edmund Andros, governor of New York, came to Saybrook to read his commission as governor of Connecticut; but Captain Bull who commanded the fort ordered him to

stop. In vain did Andros insist that his dominions extended from the Connecticut to the Delaware. "Connecticut has her own charter, signed by King Charles II.," said Captain Bull; "leave off your reading, or take the consequences!" And the red-coated governor, trembling with rage, was sent to his boat by the Saybrook militia.

18. In October of 1687, Andros, now governor of all New England, made his famous visit to Hartford. On the day of his arrival he invaded the assembly while in session, seized the book of minutes, and wrote FINIS at the bottom of the page. He then demanded the surrender of the colonial charter. Governor Treat pleaded earnestly for the preservation of the document. Andros was inexorable. The shades of evening fell. How Joseph Wadsworth carried away and concealed the precious parchment has been told in the history of Massachusetts. When the government of Andros was overthrown, Connecticut, with the other New England colonies, regained her liberty.

19. In 1693 Governor Fletcher of New York went to Hartford to take command of the militia. He bore a commission from King William; but by the terms of the charter the right of commanding the troops was vested in the colony. Fletcher, however, ordered the soldiers under arms and proceeded to read his commission. "Beat the drums!" shouted Captain Wadsworth, who stood at the head of the company. "Silence!" said Fletcher; the drums ceased, and the reading began again. "Drum! drum!" cried Wadsworth; and a second time the voice of the reader was drowned. "Silence!" shouted the governor. Wadsworth stepped before the ranks and said, "Colonel Fletcher, if I am interrupted again, I will let the sunshine through your body." That ended the controversy. Fletcher, thinking it better to be a living governor than a dead colonel, returned to New York.

20. "I give these books for the founding of a college in this colony." Such were the words of ten ministers who, in 1700, assembled at Branford, near New Haven. Each of them, as he uttered the words, deposited a few volumes on the table where they were sitting; such was the founding of YALE COLLEGE. In 1702 the school was opened at Saybrook, where it continued for

fifteen years, and was then removed to New Haven. One of the most liberal patrons of the college was Elihu Yale, from whom the institution took its name. Common schools already existed in almost every village of Connecticut.

21. The half century preceding the French and Indian war was a time of prosperity in the western parts of New England. Connecticut was especially favored. Peace reigned throughout her borders. The farmer reaped his fields in cheerfulness and hope. The mechanic made glad his dusty shop with anecdote and song. The merchant feared no tariff, the villager no taxes. Want was unknown, and pauperism unheard of. With fewer dark pages in her history, Connecticut had all the lofty purposes and noble virtues of Massachusetts.

RECAPITULATION

Connecticut is granted to Warwick.—And transferred to Say-and-Seal.—The Dutch fortify Hartford.—The Puritans claim the country.—Found Windsor.—A colony leaves Boston.—Settles on the Connecticut.—Winthrop founds Saybrook.—The English control the river.—The Pequod War.—The Narragansetts make a treaty with the English.—The Pequods do likewise.—Violate the compact.—Attempt an alliance with the Narragansetts.—Williams defeats the project.—The Mohegans join the English.—A massacre at Wethersfield.—Mason is chosen to command.—A force is organized.—Proceeds against the Pequods.—And destroys the nation.—New Haven is founded.—The Bible for a constitution.—Civil government begins.—Character of the laws.—Connecticut joins the Union.—Saybrook is annexed.—A treaty is made with Stuyvesant.—War with New Netherland is threatened.—King Charles is recognized.—Winthrop is sent to England.—Obtains a charter.—Returns.—Is chosen governor.—Growth of the colony.—Andros attempts to assume the government.—Is thwarted.—Returns.—Invades the assembly at Hartford.—The charter is saved.—Fletcher enters the colony.—Is baffled by Wadsworth.—Yale College is founded.—Development of the province.

CHAPTER XXII.

RHODE ISLAND.

IN June of 1636, the exiled Roger Williams left the country of the Wampanoags and passed down the Seekonk to Narragansett River. With his five companions he landed on the western bank, purchased the soil of the Narragansetts, and laid the foundations of Providence. Other exiles joined the company. New farms were laid out and new houses built. Here, at last, was found at PROVIDENCE PLANTATION a refuge for all the persecuted.

2. The leader of the new colony was a native of Wales; born in 1606; liberally educated at Cambridge. He had been the friend of Milton, and was a great hater of ceremonies. He had been exiled *to* Massachusetts, and was now exiled *by* Massachusetts. He brought to the banks of the Narragansett the great doctrines of religious liberty and the equal rights of men.

3. Soon after arriving in Rhode Island, Williams conceived it to be his duty to receive a second baptism. But who should perform the ceremony in that wilderness? Ezekiel Holliman, a layman, was selected for the sacred duty. Williams meekly received the rite at the hands of his friend, and then in turn baptized him and ten other exiles of the colony. Such was the organization of the first Baptist Church in America.

4. The beginning of civil government in Rhode Island was equally simple. Mr. Williams was the natural ruler of the little province, but he reserved for himself no wealth, no privilege. The lands, purchased from Canonicus, were freely distributed among the colonists. Only two small fields were kept by the founder for himself. All the powers of the government were entrusted to the people. A simple agreement was made by the settlers that in matters not affecting the conscience they would yield

obedience to such rules as the majority might make for the public good. In questions of religion the conscience should be to every man a guide.

5. The new government stood the test of experience. Instead of turmoil and dissension, Providence Plantation had peace and quiet. It was found that all religious sects could live together in harmony. Miantonomoh, chief of the Narragansetts, loved Roger Williams as a brother. It was his friendship that enabled Williams to notify Massachusetts of the Pequod conspiracy, and to defeat the plans of the hostile nation. This good deed induced his friends at Salem to make an effort to recall him from banishment; but his enemies prevented his return.



THE OLD STONE TOWER AT NEWPORT.

6. During the Pequod war Rhode Island was protected by the Narragansetts. In the year 1638, Mrs. Hutchinson and her friends arrived in Rhode Island. The leaders of the company were John Clarke and William Coddington. Roger Williams made haste to welcome them to his province. Governor Vane of Massachusetts prevailed upon Miantonomoh to make them a gift of Rhode Island. The first settlement was made at Portsmouth, in the northern part of the island. The Jewish nation furnished the model for the government of the colony. William Coddington was chosen judge, and three elders were appointed to assist him. In the following year he took the title of governor, and the administration became

more modern. At the same time a party of colonists removed to the south-western part of the island, and laid the foundations of NEWPORT. In sight of this settlement, stood the old stone tower, a monument built by the Norsemen.

7. In March of 1641, a public meeting was convened; the citizens came together on terms of equality, and the task of framing a constitution was undertaken. In three days the instrument was completed. The government was declared to be a "DEMOCRACIE." The supreme authority was lodged with the freemen of the island. The vote of the majority should always rule. No one should be distressed on account of religious doctrine. The little republic was named THE PLANTATION OF RHODE ISLAND.

8. In 1643 Providence and Rhode Island were refused admission into the Union of New England. Soon afterward Roger Williams was sent to London to procure a charter for the new colonies. On the 14th of March in the following year the patent was granted, and Rhode Island became an independent commonwealth.

9. The new government was organized at Portsmouth, in 1647. A code of laws was framed, and a president and subordinate officers were chosen. Four years afterward, William Coddington succeeded in obtaining from the English council a decree by which the island of Rhode Island was separated from the common government. But John Clarke and Roger Williams went to London and prevented the disunion. Williams was offered the governorship of the province; but he refused the commission.

10. Clarke remained in England to guard the interests of the colony. In 1660 Charles II. came home from his long exile. Rhode Island had accepted a charter from the Long Parliament, and it was doubtful whether the new king would renew it. The people had hardly the courage to plead for so great a favor. But the king and his minister assented; and on the 8th of July, 1663, the charter was reïssued. All the provisions of the old patent were renewed. On the 24th of November, the new charter was brought to Rhode Island and read aloud to the people.

11. For nearly a quarter of a century Rhode Island prospered. The distresses of King Philip's War were forgotten. Roger Williams grew old and died. At last came Sir Edmund Andros, and

demanded the surrender of the constitution of Rhode Island. The demand was evaded by Governor Clarke and the colonial assembly. But Andros repaired to Newport, dissolved the government, and broke the seal of the colony. Five councilors were appointed to control the affairs of the province, and the commonwealth seemed ruined.

12. But the usurpation was as brief as it was shameful. In the spring of 1689, the news came to Rhode Island that Andros and his officers were prisoners at Boston. On May-day the people rushed to Newport and made a proclamation of their gratitude for the deliverance. An old Quaker, named Henry Bull, more than eighty years of age, was chosen governor. The aged veteran accepted the trust, and spent his last days in restoring the liberties of Rhode Island.

13. Again the little State around the Bay of Narragansett was prosperous. For more than fifty years the peace of the colony was undisturbed. The principles of the illustrious founder became the principles of the commonwealth. The renown of Rhode Island has not been in vastness of territory, in mighty cities or victorious armies, but in devotion to truth, justice, and freedom.

RECAPITULATION.

Williams founds Rhode Island.—Sketch of his life.—The Baptist Church is organized.—Civil government begins.—Character of the institutions.—Massachusetts refuses to recall Williams.—A colony at Portsmouth.—The Jewish commonwealth.—Newport is founded.—The Norse tower.—A democracy is established.—Rhode Island is rejected by the Union.—Williams procures a charter.—The Island of Rhode Island secedes.—Is reännexed.—Patriotism of Williams.—Charles II. reïssues the charter.—Prosperity of Rhode Island.—Andros overturns the government.—Is overthrown.—Henry Bull is governor.

CHAPTER XXIII.

NEW HAMPSHIRE.

IN 1622 the territory between the Merrimac and the Kennebec was granted by the council of Plymouth to Sir Ferdinand Gorges and John Mason. The proprietors made haste to secure their new domain by actual settlements. In the spring of 1623, two small companies of colonists were sent out by Mason and Gorges to people their province. One party of immigrants landed at Little Harbor, near Portsmouth, and began to build a village. The other company proceeded up stream and laid the foundations of Dover. With the exception of Plymouth and Weymouth, Portsmouth and Dover are the oldest towns in New England. But the progress of the settlements was slow; for many years the two villages were only fishing stations.

2. In 1629 the proprietors divided their dominions, Gorges retaining the part north of the Piscataqua, and Mason taking the district between the Piscataqua and the Merrimac. In May of this year, Rev. John Wheelwright visited the Abenaki chieftains, and purchased their claims to the territory held by Mason; but in the following November, Mason's title was confirmed by a second patent; and the name of NEW HAMPSHIRE was given to the province. Very soon Massachusetts began to urge her rights to the district north of the Merrimac.

3. In November of 1635, Mason died, and his widow undertook the government of the province. But after a few years the territory was given up to the servants and dependents of the late proprietor. In this condition of affairs, John Wheelwright, with a small party of friends, repaired to the banks of the Piscataqua and founded the village of Exeter. The little colony was declared a republic, established on the principle of equal rights.

4. On the 14th of April, 1642, New Hampshire was united with Massachusetts. The law restricting the rights of citizenship to church members was not extended over the new province; for the people of Portsmouth and Dover belonged to the Church of England. New Hampshire was the only colony east of the Hudson not originally̆ founded by the Puritans.

5. The union continued in force until 1679. In the mean time, the heirs of Mason had revived the claim of the old proprietor. In 1677 a decision was given by the courts of England that the Masonian claims were invalid as to the *civil jurisdiction* of New Hampshire, but valid as to the *soil*. On the 24th of July, 1679, New Hampshire was separated from the jurisdiction of Massachusetts and organized as a distinct royal province. Edward Cranfield was chosen governor.

6. Before his arrival the sawyers and lumbermen of the Piscataqua convened a general assembly at Portsmouth. A resolution was passed by the representatives that no act, law, or ordinance, should be valid unless made by the assembly and approved by the people. When the king heard of this resolution, he declared it to be both wicked and absurd.

7. In November of 1682, Cranfield dismissed the popular assembly. The excitement ran high. At Exeter the sheriff was beaten with clubs. The farmers' wives met the tax-gatherers with pailfulls of hot water. At the village of Hampton, Cranfield's deputy was led out of town with a rope around his neck. Cranfield, unable to collect his rents and vexed out of his wits, wrote to England begging for the privilege of going home.

8. An effort was now made to restore New Hampshire to Massachusetts; but before this could be done the charter of the latter province had been taken away and Edmund Andros appointed governor of New England. The colonies north of the Merrimac quietly yielded to his authority. But when he was imprisoned by the citizens of Boston, the people of the northern towns also rose in rebellion. In 1690 New Hampshire was again annexed to Massachusetts. In August of 1692, this action was annulled, and the two provinces were a second time separated, against the protests of the people. In 1698 New

Hampshire was attached to the government of the earl of Bellomont. Afterward, for a period of forty-two years, the province was under the authority of Massachusetts. Not until 1741 was a final separation effected between the colonies north and south of the Merrimac.

9. Meanwhile, the heirs of Mason had sold to Samuel Allen, of London, their title to New Hampshire. His son-in-law, named Usher, was appointed deputy governor. The new proprietor made an effort to enforce his claim, but was everywhere resisted. For many years the history of New Hampshire contains little else than a record of strifes and lawsuits. Finally, in 1715, the heirs of Allen abandoned their claim in despair. A few years afterward one of the Masons discovered that the deed which his ancestor had made to Allen was defective. The original Masonian patent was accordingly revived. In the final adjustment of this long-standing difficulty, the colonial authorities allowed the validity of the old patent as to *the unoccupied portions* of the territory, and the Masons surrendered their claims to all the rest.

10. Of all the colonies, New Hampshire suffered most from the Indian wars. Her settlements were constantly exposed to savage invasion. During King Philip's War the suffering along the frontier was very great. In the wars of William, Anne, and George, the province was visited with devastation and ruin. But in the intervals of peace the spirits of the people revived, and the hardy settlers returned to their wasted farms. Out of these conflicts and trials came that sturdy race of pioneers who bore such a heroic part in the contests of after years.

RECAPITULATION.

New Hampshire is colonized by Gorges and Mason.—The province is divided.—Wheelwright purchases the Indian title.—Mason's patent is confirmed.—He dies.—Difficulties ensue.—Exeter is founded.—New Hampshire is united with Massachusetts.—The Masonian claim is decided.—The two provinces are separated.—Cranfield appointed governor.—A general assembly is convened.—The royal officers are resisted.—Andros assumes the government.—New Hampshire and Massachusetts are united.—Governed by Bellomont.—Finally separated.—The Masonian claim again.—How decided.—Suffering of the colony in the Indian wars.—Character of the people.

MINOR MIDDLE COLONIES.

CHAPTER XXIV.

NEW JERSEY.

THE history of New Jersey begins with the founding of Elizabethtown, in 1664. As early as 1618, a trading-station had been established at Bergen; but forty years passed before permanent dwellings were built in that neighborhood. In 1623 Fort Nassau was erected on the Delaware; but after a few months, May and his companions abandoned the place and returned to New Amsterdam.

2. The territory of New Jersey was included in the grant made to the duke of York. In 1664 that portion of the province lying between the Hudson and the Delaware, extending as far north as forty-one degrees and forty minutes, was assigned to Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret. These noblemen adhered to the king's cause during the civil war in England, and were now rewarded with the gift of New Jersey. Just after the conquest, a company of Puritans made application to Governor Nicolls, and received a grant of land on Newark Bay. The Indian titles were purchased; in the following October a village was begun and named Elizabethtown.

3. In August of 1665, Philip Carteret arrived as governor. He was violently opposed by Nicolls, but could not be prevented from taking possession of the new settlements. Elizabethtown was made the capital of the colony; Newark was founded; flourishing hamlets appeared on the shores of the bay as far south as Sandy Hook. In honor of Sir George Carteret, who had been governor of the Isle of Jersey, his American domain was named NEW JERSEY.

4. Berkeley and Carteret, though royalists, provided for their new State an excellent constitution. The government was made to consist of a governor, a council, and a popular legislative assembly. There should be no taxation unless levied by the representatives of the people. Difference of opinion should be respected, and freedom of conscience guaranteed to every citizen. The lands of the province were distributed to the settlers for a quit-rent of a half-penny per acre, not to be paid until 1670.

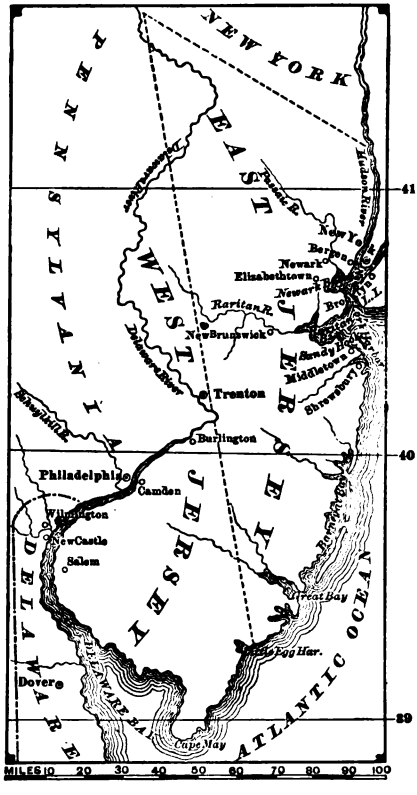
5. In 1668 the first assembly convened at Elizabethtown. The representatives were Puritans, and the laws of New England were impressed on the legislation of the colony. Affairs went well until 1670, when the quit-rents fell due. The colonists, in the mean time, had purchased their lands of the Indians, and the collection of the rents was resisted. The colony became a scene of strife and revolution. In May of 1672, the colonial assembly deposed the governor, and chose James Carteret in his place.

6. After the conquest of New York by the Dutch and the restoration of the province to England, the duke of York received from the king a second patent for the country between the Connecticut and the Delaware. At the same time he confirmed his former grant of New Jersey to Berkeley and Carteret. But soon afterward Sir Edmund Andros was appointed royal governor of the whole country. Carteret defended his claim against Andros; but Berkeley sold his interest in New Jersey to John Fenwick, to be held in trust for Edward Byllinge.

7. In 1675 Philip Carteret resumed the government of the province. Andros opposed him in every act, and kept the colony in an uproar. Finally he arrested Carteret and brought him to New York for trial. Meanwhile, Byllinge made an assignment of his property to Gawen Laurie, Nicholas Lucas, and William Penn.

8. These men were Quakers. Here, then, was an opportunity to establish an asylum for the persecuted Friends. Penn and his associates applied to Sir George Carteret for a division of the province. It was accordingly agreed to divide New Jersey so that Carteret's district should be separated from that of the Quakers. The line of division was drawn from the southern

point of land on the east side of Little Egg Harbor to a point on the Delaware in the latitude of forty-one degrees and forty minutes. The territory lying east of this line remained to Sir George as sole proprietor, and was named EAST JERSEY; while that portion lying between the line and the Delaware was called WEST JERSEY, and passed under the control of Penn.



EAST AND WEST JERSEY, 1677.

9. Early in the following March, the Quaker proprietors published a code of laws called THE CONCESSIONS. For every thing was *conceded* to the people. The constitution rivaled the charter of Connecticut in the liberality of its principles. The authors of the instrument then addressed the Quakers of England, recommending the province and inviting immigration.

10. The invitation was not in vain. Before the end of the year a colony of more than four hundred Friends found homes in West Jersey. When the emigrant ships arrived in the Delaware, the agent of Andros at New Castle obliged them to pay duties before proceeding. But Sir William Jones decided that the duke of York had no right to collect taxes in the country of the Delaware. All claims to West Jersey were accordingly withdrawn; and the Quaker colonists were left in the enjoyment of independence. An effort was now made by the

proprietors of East Jersey to secure a deed of release from the duke of York. The petition was granted, and the whole territory was freed from foreign authority.

11. In November of 1681, Jennings, the deputy-governor of West Jersey, convened the first general assembly. The Quakers now met together to make their own laws. The CONCESSIONS were reaffirmed. Men of all races and religions were declared to be equal. Imprisonment for debt was forbidden. The sale of ardent spirits to the Red men was prohibited. Taxes should be voted by the representatives of the people. The lands of the Indians should be acquired by purchase. Finally, a criminal might be pardoned by the person against whom the offense was committed.

12. In 1682 William Penn and eleven other Friends purchased the province of East Jersey. Robert Barclay, of Scotland, author of the book called Barclay's *Apology*, was appointed governor for life. The whole of New Jersey was now held by the Friends. The administration of Barclay was noted for a large immigration of Scotch Quakers who came to find freedom in East Jersey.

13. In 1685 James II. appointed Edmund Andros royal governor of the colonies from Maine to Delaware. In 1688 the Jerseys were brought under his jurisdiction. When the news came of the abdication of the English monarch, Andros could do nothing but surrender to the indignant people. His imprisonment at Boston has already been narrated.

14. But the condition of New Jersey was deplorable. It was almost impossible to tell to whom the territory rightfully belonged. From 1689 to 1692 there was no settled government in the territory; and for ten years thereafter the people were vexed with more rulers than any one colony could accommodate. Finally, in April of 1702, all proprietary claims being waived in favor of the king, the territory between the Hudson and the Delaware became a royal province.

15. New Jersey was now attached to the government of Lord Cornbury of New York. But each province retained its own legislative assembly and a distinct organization. This method of government continued for thirty-six years, and was then ended by

the action of the people. In 1728 the representatives of New Jersey sent a petition to George II., praying for a separation of the two colonies. Ten years later the effort was renewed and brought to a successful issue. New Jersey was made independent, and Lewis Morris received a commission as royal governor of the province.

16. The people of New Jersey were but little disturbed by the successive Indian wars. The native tribes on this part of the American coast were weak and timid. The province is specially interesting as being the point where the civilization of New England blended with the civilization of the South. Here the institutions and laws of the Pilgrims were modified by contact with the habits and opinions of the people who came with Gosnold and Smith. The line between East and West Jersey is also the line between the Puritans of Massachusetts and the cavaliers of Virginia. Along this dividing line came the followers of Penn to subdue ill-will and make a UNION possible.

RECAPITULATION.

Early settlements in New Jersey.—At Bergen.—And Fort Nassau.—The province is given to Berkeley and Carteret.—Nicolls makes a grant to Puritans.—Elizabethtown is founded.—Nicolls contends with the Carterets.—The proprietors frame a constitution.—Character of the laws.—The quit-rents.—The colonists resist payment.—Philip Carteret is deposed.—James Carteret becomes governor.—New Jersey is retaken by Holland.—And again ceded to England.—The Duke of York renews his charter.—Andros governor.—Carteret resists.—Berkeley sells West Jersey to Fenwick.—Disputes of Carteret and Andros.—Laurie, Lucas and Penn buy West Jersey.—New Jersey is divided.—The proprietors issue the Concessions.—The Quakers colonize West Jersey.—The Duke of York claims the country.—Sir William Jones decides against him.—Andros's claim is annulled.—The Quakers frame a constitution.—East Jersey is purchased by the Friends.—Barclay is governor.—The two Jerseys submit to Andros.—Regain their liberties.—Conflicting claims.—The proprietors surrender their rights to the Crown.—New Jersey becomes a royal province.—Is attached to New York under Cornbury.—The people petition for a separation.—Morris becomes governor.—New Jersey not injured by Indian wars.

CHAPTER XXV.

PENNSYLVANIA.

THE Quakers were greatly encouraged with the success of their colonies in New Jersey. For more than a quarter of a century they had been buffeted with persecutions. But imprisonment and exile had not abated their zeal. The benevolent spirit of Penn urged him to find for his people an asylum in the New World. In June of 1680, he appealed to King Charles for the privilege of founding a Quaker commonwealth in America.

2. The petition was heard with favor. On the 5th of March, 1681, a charter was granted by Charles II., and William Penn became the proprietor of PENNSYLVANIA. The vast domain embraced under the new patent was bounded on the east by the Delaware, extended north and south over three degrees of latitude, and westward through five degrees of longitude. The three counties of Delaware were reserved for the duke of York.

3. In consideration of this grant, Penn relinquished a claim of sixteen thousand pounds against the British government. He declared that his object was to found a free commonwealth, without respect to the color, race or religion of the inhabitants. One of his first acts was to address a letter to the Swedes in his province, telling them to keep their homes, and fear no oppression.

4. Within a month from the date of his charter, Penn published a glowing account of his new country, promising freedom of conscience, and inviting emigration. During the summer three shiploads of Quakers left England for the land of promise. William Markham, the deputy-governor of the province, was instructed by Penn to deal justly with all men, and to make friends of the Indians. In October the proprietor sent a letter to the natives, assuring them of his brotherly affection.

5. During the winter of 1681–82, Penn drew up a constitution for his people. In the meantime, the duke of York had surrendered his claim to the three counties on the Delaware. The whole country on the west bank of the river, from Cape Henlopen to the forty-third degree of latitude, was now transferred to Penn. The summer of 1682 was spent in further preparation. The proprietor wrote a letter of farewell to the Friends in England; embarked with a large company of emigrants; and on the 27th of October, landed at New Castle, where the people were waiting to receive him.



WILLIAM PENN.

6. WILLIAM PENN was born on the 14th of October, 1644. He was the oldest son of Sir William Penn of the British navy. At the age of twelve he was sent to the University of Oxford, where he distinguished himself as a student until he was expelled on account of his religion. Afterward he traveled on the Continent, and then became a student of law at London. For a while he was a soldier, and was then converted to the Quaker faith. His father drove him out of doors, but he was not to be turned

from his course. He proclaimed the doctrines of the Friends; was arrested and imprisoned, first in the Tower of London, and afterward at Newgate. Despairing of toleration in England, he cast his gaze across the Atlantic. West Jersey was purchased; Pennsylvania was granted by King Charles; and now Penn himself arrived in America to found a government on the basis of peace.

7. The Quaker governor delivered an affectionate address to the crowd of Swedes, Dutch, and English who came to greet him. His pledges of a liberal government were renewed, and the people were exhorted to sobriety and honesty. Penn then ascended the Delaware to Chester; visited West Jersey; and spent some time at New York. In a few weeks he returned to his own province and began his duties as chief magistrate.

8. Friendly relations were established between the Friends and Red men. A great conference, appointed with the sachems of the neighboring tribes, was held on the banks of the Delaware. Penn declared his brotherly affection for the Indians. Standing before them, clad in the simple garb of the Quakers, he said: "My Friends: We have met on the broad pathway of good faith. We are all one flesh and blood. Being brethren, no advantage shall be taken on either side. When disputes arise, we will settle them in council. Between us there shall be nothing but openness and love." The chiefs replied: "While the rivers run and the sun shines we will live in peace with the children of William Penn." And the treaty was sacredly kept. The Quaker hat and coat proved to be a better defence than coat-of-mail and musket.

9. In December, 1682, a general convention was held at Chester. The object was to complete the territorial legislation. After the session, Penn repaired to the Chesapeake to confer with Lord Baltimore about the boundaries of their provinces. After a month's absence he returned to Chester and drew a map of his proposed capital. The neck of land between the Schuylkill and the Delaware was purchased of the Swedes. In February of 1683, the native chestnuts, walnuts and ashes were blazed to indicate the lines of the streets, and Philadelphia was founded. Within a month a general assembly was in session at the new capital. A democratic form of government was adopted. The officers were the

governor, a council consisting of members chosen for three years, and a popular assembly, to be annually elected. The right of vetoing objectionable acts of the council was left in the hands of Penn.

10. The growth of Philadelphia was astonishing. In 1683 there were only three or four houses. The ground-squirrels still lived in their burrows, and the wild deer ran through the town. In 1685 the city contained six hundred houses; the schoolmaster had come and the printing-press had begun its work. In another year Philadelphia had outgrown New York. In August of 1684, Penn took leave of his colony, and sailed for England.



PHILADELPHIA AND VICINITY.

11. Nothing occurred to disturb the peace of Pennsylvania until the secession of Delaware in 1691. The three lower counties, which had been united on terms of equality with the six counties of Pennsylvania, became dissatisfied with some acts of the assembly and insisted on a separation. The proprietor gave consent; Delaware withdrew from the union and received a separate deputy-governor.

12. For his adherence to the cause of King James II., Penn was several times imprisoned. In 1692 his proprietary rights were taken away, and the government of Pennsylvania was transferred to Fletcher of New York. In the following year, Delaware shared the same fate; all the provinces between Connecticut and Maryland were consolidated under Fletcher's authority. But the suspicions against Penn's loyalty were found to be groundless, and he was restored to his rights.

13. In December of 1699, Penn visited his American commonwealth. He found the lower counties in a state of hostility to the assembly. In order to restore peace, the proprietor drew up another constitution, more liberal than the first. But

Delaware would not accept the new frame of government. In 1702 the assemblies of the two provinces sat apart; and in the following year Delaware and Pennsylvania were finally separated.

14. In the winter of 1701, Penn returned to England. The ministers had now formed the design of establishing royal governments in all the colonies. The presence of Penn was required in England in order to prevent the success of the scheme. After much controversy his rights were fully recognized. In July of 1718, the founder of Pennsylvania sank to rest. His estates, vast and valuable, were bequeathed to his three sons, John, Thomas and Richard. By them, or their deputies, Pennsylvania was governed until the American Revolution. In the year 1779, the claims of the Penn family were purchased by the legislature of Pennsylvania for a hundred and thirty thousand pounds.

15. The colonial history of the State founded by Penn is one of special interest and pleasure. It is a narrative of the victories of peace, and of the triumph of peaceful principles over violence and wrong. It is doubtful whether the history of any other colony in the world is touched with so many traits of innocence and truth. "I will found a free colony for all mankind," were the words of William Penn. How well his work was done shall be told when the bells of his capital city shall ring out the glad notes of AMERICAN INDEPENDENCE.

RECAPITULATION.

The Friends are persecuted in Europe.—Penn designs to plant a Quaker State in America.—Charles II. grants the charter of Pennsylvania.—Penn relinquishes his claims on the British government.—Declares his purposes.—Invites emigration.—A colony departs under Markham.—The Indians are assured of friendship.—Penn frames a constitution.—The Duke of York surrenders Delaware.—Extent of Penn's dominion.—He leaves England with a colony.—Sketch of his life.—He addresses the people at New Castle.—Visits New York.—Makes the great treaty with the Indians.—A convention is held at Chester.—A constitution is adopted.—Penn visits Lord Baltimore.—Philadelphia is founded.—Growth of the city.—Penn sails for England.—Delaware secedes.—Penn adheres to James II.—Is imprisoned.—His province is taken away.—But restored.—Penn revisits America.—The constitution is modified.—Delaware is separated.—Penn returns to England.—Dies.—His sons become proprietors of Pennsylvania.—The province is purchased by the legislature.

MINOR SOUTHERN COLONIES.

CHAPTER XXVI.

MARYLAND.

CAPTAIN JOHN SMITH was the first white man to explore the Chesapeake. In 1621, William Clayborne, an English surveyor, was sent out by the London Company to make a map of the country around the bay. By the second charter of Virginia that province included all of the present State of Maryland. To explore and occupy the country was an enterprise of the highest importance to the Virginians.

2. In May of 1631, Clayborne was authorized to survey the country as far north as the forty-first degree of latitude, and to establish a trade with the Indians. This commission was confirmed by Governor Harvey of Virginia, and in the spring of 1632 Clayborne began his important work.

3. The enterprise was attended with success. A trading-post was established on Kent Island, and another near Havre de Grace. The Chesapeake was explored and a trade opened with the natives. The limits of Virginia were about to be extended to the borders of New Netherland. But in the mean time, religious persecutions were preparing the way for the foundation of a new State in the wilderness. Sir George Calvert, a Catholic nobleman of Yorkshire, better known by his title of LORD BALTIMORE, was destined to become the founder.

4. King James, who was not unfriendly to the Catholics, first granted to Sir George a patent for the southern part of Newfoundland, and here, in 1623, a colony was established. But it soon became evident that the settlement must be removed, and Lord Baltimore turned his attention to the Chesapeake.

5. In 1629 he made a visit to Virginia. The general assembly offered him citizenship, but required such an oath of allegiance as no honest Catholic could take. Lord Baltimore thereupon left the narrow-minded legislators; returned to London; drew up a charter for a new State on the Chesapeake; and induced King Charles to sign it.



LORD BALTIMORE.

6. The boundaries of Sir George's province may be learned by an examination of Map II. The provisions of the charter were ample. No preference was given to any particular religion. The lives and property of the colonists were carefully guarded. Arbitrary taxation was forbidden. The power of making the laws was conceded to the freemen of the colony.

7. Before the patent could receive the seal of state, Sir George Calvert died. His title descended to his son Cecil; and to him, on the 20th of June, 1632, the charter was issued. In honor of Henrietta Maria, wife of Charles I., the name of MARYLAND was conferred on the new province. It only remained for the younger Lord Baltimore to raise a company of emigrants and carry out his father's designs. In the fall of 1633, a colony numbering two hundred persons was collected. Leonard Calvert, a brother of Cecil, was appointed to accompany the colonists to America.

8. In March of 1634, the immigrants arrived at Old Point Comfort. They proceeded up the bay and ascended the Potomac to the mouth of Piscataway Creek. A conference was held

with the chiefs of an Indian village, who told Calvert that he and his colony *might stay or go just as they pleased.* Considering this answer as a threat, Calvert again embarked, and dropped down stream to the mouth of the St. Mary's. Finding a half deserted Indian village, the English moved into the vacant huts. The rest of the town was purchased; and the name of ST. MARY'S was given to the colony.

9. Friendly relations were established with the natives. The Indian women taught the wives of the English how to make corn-bread, and the warriors instructed the colonists in the art of hunting. There was neither anxiety nor want in the colony. Within six months the settlement had grown into greater prosperity than Jamestown had reached in as many years.

10. In February of 1635, a general assembly was convened and the work of legislation begun. Soon the province was involved in difficulty. For Clayborne, with his companions on Kent Island, resisted Lord Baltimore's authority. In 1637, a bloody skirmish occurred on the eastern shore of the bay. Several lives were lost, but Clayborne's followers were defeated. Calvert's forces overpowered the settlement on Kent Island and executed one or two of the rebels. Clayborne escaped into Virginia, and the governor sent him to England for trial. There he appealed to the king. The cause was heard by Parliament, and it was decided that his commission was null and void.

11. In 1639 a representative government was established in Maryland. Hitherto a system of democracy had prevailed; each freeman had been allowed a vote in determining the laws. When the new delegates came together, a declaration of rights was adopted. All the liberal principles of the colonial patent were reaffirmed. The rights of citizenship were declared to be the same with those of the people of England.

12. In 1642 Indian hostilities were begun on the Potomac. But the settlements of Maryland were compact, and no great suffering was occasioned. In 1644 the savages agreed to bury the hatchet and to renew the pledges of friendship. Hardly, however, had the echo of war died away, when the colony was troubled by the return of its old enemy—Clayborne.

13. Arriving in the province in 1644, he began to tell the lawless spirits of the colony that they were wronged and oppressed by the government. An insurrection broke out. The government of Calvert was overthrown, and the governor obliged to fly to Virginia. Clayborne seized the records of Maryland, and destroyed them. For more than a year the colony was controlled by the insurgents. Soon, however, Calvert collected troops, defeated the rebels, and in 1646 restored his authority.

14. In 1650 the legislature of Maryland was divided into two branches. The rights of Lord Baltimore were defined by law. An act was passed declaring that no taxes should be levied without the consent of the assembly. Such was the condition of affairs in the colony when the commonwealth was established in England.

15. In 1651 parliamentary commissioners came to America to assume control of Maryland. Stone, the deputy of Baltimore, was deposed from office; but in the following year he was permitted to resume the government. In April of 1653 he published a proclamation declaring that the recent interference had been a rebellion. Clayborne thereupon collected a force in Virginia, drove Stone out of office, and directed the government himself.

16. In 1654 a Protestant assembly was convened at Patuxent. The supremacy of Cromwell was acknowledged, and the Catholics were deprived of the protection of the laws. Civil war ensued. Governor Stone armed the militia, and seized the records of the colony. A battle was fought near Annapolis, and the Catholics were defeated, with a loss of fifty men. Stone was taken prisoner, but was saved from death by the friendship of some of the insurgents. Three of the Catholics were tried and executed.

17. In 1656 Josias Fendall was sent out as governor of the province. For two years the government was divided, the Catholics exercising authority at St. Mary's, and the Protestants at Leonardstown. In 1658 a compromise was effected; Fendall was acknowledged as governor, and the acts of the Protestant assembly were recognized as valid.

18. After the death of Cromwell, Maryland was declared independent. On the 12th of March, 1660, the rights of Lord Baltimore were set aside, and the whole power of government was assumed

by the House of Burgesses. On the restoration of monarchy the Baltimores were again recognized, and Philip Calvert was sent out as governor. Fendall had resigned his trust and accepted an election by the people. He was now condemned on a charge of treason. Lord Baltimore, however, proclaimed a general pardon.

19. From 1675 to 1691, Charles Calvert was governor of Maryland. Only once during this period was the happiness of the colony disturbed. After the abdication of James II., the deputy of Lord Baltimore hesitated to acknowledge William and Mary. A rumor was spread abroad that the Catholics had leagued with the Indians to destroy the Protestants. In 1689 the Catholic party was compelled to surrender the government. For two years the Protestants held the province, and exercised civil authority.

20. On the 1st of June, 1691, the charter of Lord Baltimore was taken away, and a royal governor appointed. Sir Lionel Copley received a commission, and assumed the government in 1692. The Episcopal Church was established by law. Religious toleration was abolished and the government administered on despotic principles. This condition of affairs continued until 1715, when Queen Anne restored the heir of Lord Baltimore to the rights of his ancestor. Maryland remained under the authority of the Calverts until the Revolution.

RECAPITULATION.

Clayborne explores the Chesapeake.—Establishes trading-posts.—Sir George Calvert plans a colony.—Sends a company to Newfoundland.—Goes to Virginia.—Returns to England.—Obtains a charter.—Character of the patent.—Calvert dies.—Sir Cecil succeeds him.—The name of Maryland.—A colony is sent out under Leonard Calvert.—Founds St. Mary's.—Friendly relations with the Indians.—Growth of the colony.—An assembly is convened.—Clayborne's insurrection.—He escapes into Virginia.—Is sent to England.—Representative government established.—An Indian war breaks out.—Clayborne leads a second insurrection.—Overthrows the government.—The rebellion is suppressed.—Division of the legislature.—Commissioners are appointed by Parliament.—Dissensions of Stone and Clayborne.—The civil war.—Fendall's rebellion.—Maryland declares independence.—Fendall is condemned.—Charles Calvert is governor.—The Protestants gain control of the State.—Maryland a royal province.—The heir of Baltimore regains his rights.—The Calverts rule the colony.

CHAPTER XXVII.

NORTH CAROLINA.

THE first effort to colonize North Carolina was made by Sir Walter Raleigh. In 1630 the country was granted to Sir Robert Heath. But after thirty-three years, the patent was revoked by the English king. The name of CAROLINA had been given to the country by John Ribault in 1562.

2. In the year 1622, the country was explored by Pory. Twenty years later a company of Virginians on the lower Roanoke established a trade with the natives. The first actual settlement was made on the Chowan about the year 1651. In 1661 a company of Puritans settled on Oldtown Creek. In 1663 Lord Clarendon, and seven other noblemen, received a grant of all the country between the thirty-sixth parallel and the river St. John's.

3. In the same year William Drummond was chosen governor by the settlers on the Chowan, and the name of ALBEMARLE COUNTY COLONY was given to the district. In 1665 the Puritan colony on Cape Fear River was broken up by the Indians; but soon afterward the territory was purchased by a company of planters from Barbadoes. A new county named CLARENDON was laid out, and Sir John Yeamans elected governor.

4. The work of preparing a frame of government for the new province was assigned to Sir Ashley Cooper. The philosopher John Locke was employed by him and his associates to prepare the constitution. From March until July of 1669, Locke worked away in drawing up a plan which he called THE GRAND MODEL. *It contained a hundred and twenty articles;* and this was but the beginning! The empire of Carolina was divided into districts of four hundred and eighty thousand acres each. The offices were divided between two grand orders of nobility.

5. All attempts to establish the new government ended in failure. But the settlers of Albemarle and Clarendon had meanwhile learned to govern themselves. They grew prosperous by trading in staves and furs; and when this traffic was exhausted, began to remove to other settlements. In 1671 Governor Yeamans was transferred to the new colony on Ashley River, and the whole county of Clarendon was surrendered to the natives.

6. The people of the colony were greatly oppressed with taxes. The trade with New England alone was weighed down with an annual duty of twelve thousand dollars. A gloomy opposition to the government prevailed; and when, in 1676, large numbers of refugees from Virginia arrived in Carolina, the discontent was kindled into an insurrection. The people seized Governor Miller and his council, and established a new government of their own. John Culpepper, the leader of the insurgents, was chosen governor. In 1679 Miller and his associates escaped from confinement and went to London. Governor Culpepper, who followed to defend himself, was seized, indicted for treason, tried and acquitted.

7. In 1680 Seth Sothel was sent out by the proprietors as governor of the province. In crossing the ocean he was captured by pirates, and did not arrive in Carolina until 1683. After five years of tyranny, the base, bad man was overthrown in an insurrection. Finding himself a prisoner, he begged to be tried by the assembly of the province. The request was granted, and the culprit escaped with less punishment than he deserved.

8. Sothel was succeeded by Ludwell, who arrived in 1689. His administration was a period of peace. In 1695 came Sir John Archdale. Then followed the administration of Governor Walker; then, in 1704, the attempt of Robert Daniel to establish the Church of England. In the mean time new settlers came from Virginia and Maryland—Quakers came from New England, Huguenots from France, and peasants from Switzerland.

9. The Indians of North Carolina gradually wasted away. Some of the nations were already extinct. The lands of the savages had passed to the whites, sometimes by purchase, sometimes by fraud. Of all the tribes of the Carolinas only the

Corees and the Tuscaroras were still formidable. These grew jealous and went to war with the whites.

10. On the night of the 22d of September, 1711, the savages rose upon the scattered settlements, and murdered a hundred and thirty persons. Civil dissensions prevented the authorities from adopting vigorous measures of defence. But Colonel Barnwell came from South Carolina with a company of militia and friendly Indians; and the savages were driven into their fort. A treaty of peace was made; but Barnwell's men, on their way homeward, sacked an Indian village, and the war was at once renewed.

11. In the next year, Colonel Moore of South Carolina arrived with a regiment of whites and Indians, and the Tuscaroras were pursued to their fort on Cotentnea Creek. This place was carried by assault. Eight hundred warriors were taken prisoners. The power of the hostile nation was broken; and the Tuscaroras, abandoning their hunting-grounds, marched across Virginia, Maryland and Pennsylvania, joined their kinsmen, of New York, and became the sixth nation of the Iroquois.

12. In 1729 a separation was effected between the two Carolinas, and a royal governor was appointed over each. In spite of [illegible] the northern colony had greatly prospered. Intellectual development had not been as rapid as the growth in numbers and wealth. Little attention had been given to questions of religion. There was no minister in the province until 1703. Two years later the first church was built. The printing-press did not begin its work until 1754. But the people were brave and patriotic. They loved their country, and called it the LAND OF SUMMER.

RECAPITULATION.

The name of Carolina.—Early explorations.—The country is granted to Clarendon and others.—Albemarle and Clarendon colonies are founded.—Cooper and Locke frame the Grand Model.—Clarendon county is abandoned.—The proprietors oppress the colonists.—A rebellion ensues.—Governor Culpepper goes to England.—Sothel is sent out as governor.—He is overthrown.—Ludwell succeeds.—And then Walker.—The colony prospers.—Decline of the Indian tribes.—A war breaks out.—Barnwell's expedition.—Peace.—And war again.—Moore invades the country of the Tuscaroras.—The savages are beaten.—The nation is divided.—The Tuscarora migration.—Division of the Carolinas.—Character of the people.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

SOUTH CAROLINA.

IN January of 1670, the proprietors of Carolina sent out a colony under command of Joseph West and William Sayle. The new emigrants reached the mainland in the country of the Savannah. The vessels first anchored near the site of Beaufort. But the colonists, dissatisfied with the appearance of the country, sailed northward along the coast, and entered the mouth of Ashley River. On the first high land upon the southern bank were laid the foundations of Old Charleston, named in honor of Charles II.

2. Sayle had been commissioned as governor of the colony. The settlers soon organized a little government on the principles of common sense. Five councilors were elected by the people, and five others appointed by the proprietors. Twenty delegates, composing a house of representatives, were chosen by the colonists. Within two years the government was firmly established.

3. In 1671 Governor Sayle died, and West assumed the duties of the vacant office. In a few months Sir John Yeamans, who had been governor of the northern province, was commissioned as chief magistrate of the southern colony. He brought with him to Ashley River a cargo of African slaves. Thus the labor of the black man was substituted for the labor of the white man, and in less than two years slavery was firmly established. The importation of negroes went on so rapidly that they soon outnumbered the whites as two to one.

4. During the year 1671, the country was rapidly filled with people. Fertile lands were abundant. Wars and pestilence had almost destroyed the native tribes. The proprietors of Carolina sent several ships to New York, loaded them with the discontented people of that province, and brought them to Charleston.

Charles II. collected a company of Protestant refugees in Europe, and sent them to Carolina to introduce the silk-worm and to cultivate the grape.

5. In 1680 the present city of Charleston was founded. Thirty dwellings were erected during the first summer. The village immediately became the capital of the colony. The unhealthy climate retarded the progress of the new town, but the people were full of life and enterprise.

6. Soon a war broke out with the Nestoes, who lived in the neighborhood of Charleston. Scenes of violence occurred on the border, and a bounty was offered for every captured Indian. When the warriors were taken they were sold as slaves for the West Indies. The strife continued for a year, and was then concluded with a treaty of peace.

7. England, France, Scotland and Ireland all sent colonies to South Carolina. Especially did the French Huguenots come in great numbers; for they were now persecuted in their own country. They were met by the proprietors with a promise of citizenship; but the promise was not well kept; for the general assembly claimed the right of fixing the conditions of naturalization. Not until 1697 were all discriminations against the French immigrants removed.

8. In 1686 came James Colleton as governor. He began his administration with an attempt to establish the constitution prepared by Locke. Soon the colony was in a state of rebellion. The militia was called out and the province declared under martial law. But the people were only the more exasperated. In 1689 William and Mary were proclaimed as sovereigns, and Colleton was banished from the province.

9. Seth Sothel now repaired to Charleston and assumed the government. For a while he induced the people to sustain his authority. But after a turbulent rule of two years, he too was driven away. One bright page redeems the record of his administration. In May of 1691 equal rights were granted to the Huguenots. Philip Ludwell spent a year in a well-meant effort to administer the government; but the people were fixed in their dislike of the constitution, and Ludwell returned to Virginia.

10. In April of 1693, the proprietors of Carolina annulled the Grand Model, and Thomas Smith was appointed governor. He was soon superseded by John Archdale, a distinguished Quaker, under whose administration the colony entered upon a new career of prosperity. The quit-rents on lands were remitted for four years. The Indians were conciliated with kindness, and the Huguenots protected in their rights. It was a real misfortune when, in 1698, the good governor was recalled to England.

11. James Moore was next commissioned as chief magistrate. The first important act of his administration was a declaration of war against the Spaniards of St. Augustine. It was voted to raise and equip a force of twelve hundred men, and to invade Florida by land and water. In September of 1702, two expeditions departed, the land-forces led by Colonel Daniel and the fleet commanded by the governor.

12. The English vessels sailed to the St. John's. Daniel marched overland and captured St. Augustine. But the Spaniards withdrew without serious loss into the castle. Without artillery the place could not be taken. Two Spanish men-of-war appeared at the mouth of the St. John's, and the English ships were blockaded. Governor Moore, collecting his forces, hastily retreated into Carolina. The only results of the unfortunate expedition were debt and paper money.

13. In December of 1705, the governor led an expedition against the Indians. On the 14th of the month the invaders reached a fortified town near St. Mark's. The place was carried by assault, and more than two hundred prisoners were taken. On the next day Moore's forces defeated a large body of Indians and Spaniards. Five towns were carried in succession, and the English flag was borne to the Gulf of Mexico.

14. In the first year of Governor Johnson's administration, an act was passed disfranchising all dissenters from the English Church, but Parliament voted that the act was contrary to the laws of England. In November of the same year the colonial legislature revoked the law; but Episcopalianism continued to be the established faith of the province.

15. In the year 1706, Charleston was besieged by a French

and Spanish fleet. The people of the capital, led by Governor Johnson and Colonel Rhett, prepared for a stubborn defence. One of the French vessels succeeded in getting to shore with eight hundred troops, but they were driven back with a loss of three hundred in killed and prisoners. The siege was at once abandoned.

16. In the spring of 1715, the Yamassees rose upon the frontier settlements and committed an atrocious massacre. The desperate savages came within a short distance of the capital; and the whole colony was threatened with destruction. But Governor Craven rallied the militia, and the savages were pursued to the banks of the Salkehatchie. Here a decisive battle was fought, and the Indians were completely routed. The Yamassees collected their tribe and retired into Florida.

17. At the close of the war the assembly petitioned the proprietors to bear a portion of the expense. But they refused, and would take no measures for the protection of the colony. The people, greatly burdened with rents and taxes, grew dissatisfied with the proprietary government. In the new election every delegate was chosen by the popular party. When James Moore, the new chief magistrate elected by the people, was to be inaugurated, Governor Johnson tried to prevent the ceremony. But the militia collected in the public square, and before nightfall the government of Carolina was overthrown. Governor Moore was duly inaugurated in the name of King George I.

18. Francis Nicholson was soon afterward commissioned as governor. He began his duties by concluding treaties of peace with the Cherokees and the Creeks. But another change in colonial affairs was now at hand. In 1729 seven of the proprietors of Carolina sold their claims in the province to the king. The sum paid by George II. for the two colonies was twenty-two thousand five hundred pounds. Royal governors were appointed, and the affairs of the province were settled on a permanent basis.

19. The people who colonized South Carolina were brave and chivalrous. The Huguenot, the Scotch Presbyterian, the English dissenter, the Irish adventurer, and the Dutch mechanic, composed the material of the PALMETTO STATE. Equally with the Puritans of the North, the South Carolinians were lovers of

liberty. The people who were once governed by the peaceful Archdale, and once led to war by the gallant Craven, became the leaders in politeness and honor between man and man.

RECAPITULATION.

A colony is sent out under West and Sayle.—Settles on Ashley River.—Locke's constitution is rejected.—And a simple government adopted.—West becomes governor.—And then Yeamans.—Slavery is introduced.—Rapid immigration.—Charleston is founded.—An Indian war arises.—Immigrants arrive from England, Scotland, and Ireland.—The Huguenots come to South Carolina.—Colleton becomes governor.—Is overthrown.—Sothel takes the office.—Is banished.—Ludwell next.—The proprietors abrogate the Grand Model.—Administration of Archdale.—Moore succeeds.—The war with Florida.—Moore and Daniel attempt to take St. Augustine.—Moore's campaign against the Indians.—The dissenters are disfranchised.—The act is revoked by Parliament.—The Spaniards besiege Charleston.—And are repelled.—The Yamassees are conquered.—Revolution in South Carolina.—Nicholson is governor.—The proprietors sell Carolina to the king.—A royal government is established.—Character of the people.

CHAPTER XXIX.

GEORGIA.

GEORGIA, the thirteenth American colony, was founded by James Oglethorpe, an English philanthropist. The laws of England permitted imprisonment for debt. Thousands of English laborers were annually arrested and thrown into jail. In order to provide a refuge for the poor and the distressed, Oglethorpe appealed to George II. for the privilege of planting a colony in America. The petition was favorably heard, and on the 9th of June, 1732, a charter was issued by which the territory between the Savannah and Altamaha Rivers, and westward to the Pacific, was granted to a corporation, *to be held in trust for the poor.* In honor of the king, the new province was named GEORGIA.

2. Oglethorpe, who was a brave soldier and a member of Parliament, was the principal member of the corporation. To him the leadership of the first colony to be planted on the Savannah was entrusted. By the middle of November a hundred and twenty emigrants were ready to sail for the New World. In January of 1733 the company was welcomed at Charleston. Further south the colonists entered the river, and, on the 1st of February, laid the foundations of Savannah. Broad streets were laid out, and a beautiful village of tents and board houses appeared among the pine trees.



JAMES OGLETHORPE.

3. Tomochichi, chief of the Yamacraws, came from his cabin to see the new-comers. "Here is a present for you," said he to Oglethorpe. The present was a buffalo robe painted with the head and feathers of an eagle. "The feathers are soft, and signify love; the buffalo skin is the emblem of protection. Therefore love us and protect us," said the old chieftain. Seeing the advantages of peace, Oglethorpe invited the Muskhogees to a council at his capital. The conference was held on the 29th of May. Long King, the sachem, spoke for all the

tribes. The English were welcomed to the country. Gifts were made, and the governor responded with words of friendship.

4. The councilors in England encouraged emigration. Swiss peasants, Scotch Highlanders, and German Protestants all found a home on the Savannah. In April of 1734, Oglethorpe, accompanied by Tomo-chichi, made a visit to England. It was said in London that no colony was ever before founded so wisely as Georgia. The councilors prohibited the importation of rum. Traffic with the Indians was regulated by a license. Slavery was positively forbidden. While the governor was still abroad, a company of Moravians arrived at Savannah.

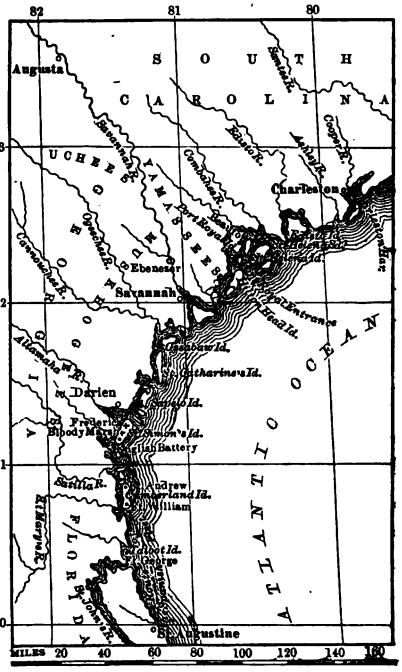
5. In February of 1736, Oglethorpe came back with a colony of three hundred. These were also Moravians, people of deep piety and fervent spirit. First among them was John Wesley, the founder of Methodism. He came to Georgia to spread the gospel and convert the Indians. But he was doomed to much disappointment in his work; and after a residence of less than two years he left the colony. His brother, Charles Wesley, came also as a secretary to Governor Oglethorpe. In 1738 the famous George Whitefield came and preached with fiery eloquence through all the colonies.

6. Meanwhile, Oglethorpe, anticipating war with Florida, began to fortify. All of Georgia was embraced in the Spanish claim. But Oglethorpe had a charter for the territory as far south as the Altamaha. In 1736 he ascended the Savannah and built a fort at Augusta. On the north bank of the Altamaha, Fort Darien was built. On St. Simon's Island a fortress was erected and named Frederica. The St. John's was claimed from this time forth as the southern boundary of Georgia. The governor again visited England, and returned with a regiment of troops.

7. In October, 1739, England published a declaration of war against Spain. In the first week of the following January, Oglethorpe invaded Florida, and captured two fortified towns. Returning to Charleston, he induced the assembly to support his measures; and with a force of more than a thousand men he marched against St. Augustine. The place was besieged for five weeks. But sickness prevailed in the English camp. The troops

of Carolina, despairing of success, marched homeward. The English vessels abandoned the siege and returned to Frederica. Oglethorpe, yielding to necessity, collected his men and withdrew into Georgia.

8. The Spaniards now determined to carry the war into Georgia. Preparations began on a vast scale. In June of 1742, a fleet of thirty-six vessels, carrying more than three thousand troops, sailed from St. Augustine for the reduction of Fort William on Cumberland Island. But Oglethorpe reïnforced the garrison, and then fell back to Frederica. The Spanish vessels followed. From the southern point of the island to Frederica, Oglethorpe had cut a road which lay between a morass and a forest. Along this path the Spaniards must pass to attack the town.



COUNTRY OF THE SAVANNAH, 1740.

9. In order to cope with superior numbers, the English general resorted to stratagem. He wrote a letter to a French deserter in the Spanish camp, telling him that two British fleets were coming to America to aid Oglethorpe; and that if the Spaniards did not make an immediate attack on Frederica, they would be captured. The letter was delivered, and the Frenchman was arrested as a spy; but the Spaniards were perplexed, and it was finally decided to make the attack on Frederica.

10. The English general posted his men between the swamp and the forest. On the 7th of July the enemy reached the pass, were fired on from the thicket and driven back in confusion. The main

body of the Spanish forces pressed on into the same position, stood firm for a while, but were presently routed with a loss of two hundred men. The name of Bloody Marsh was given to this battle-field. Within a week the whole Spanish force reëmbarked and sailed for Florida.

11. The colony of Georgia was now firmly established. In 1743 Oglethorpe bade adieu to the people to whose welfare he had given ten years of his life. He had never owned a house nor possessed an acre of ground in the province. He now departed for England where he lived to be nearly a hundred years of age.

12. The regulations which the councilors for Georgia had adopted were poorly suited to the wants of the colony. The settlers had no titles for their lands. Estates could descend only to the oldest sons of families. The colonists charged their poverty to the fact that slave-labor was forbidden in the province. The proprietary laws became unpopular. The statute excluding slavery was not enforced. Slaves began to be hired, first for short terms of service, then for longer periods, then *for a hundred years.* Finally, slaves were brought directly from Africa and sold to the planters below the Savannah. The new order of things was acknowledged by the councilors; and, in June of 1752, they surrendered their patent to the king. A royal government was established over the country, and the people were granted the freedom of Englishmen. For some time the progress of the colony was not equal to the expectations of its founder, but before the Revolution Georgia had become a growing State.

RECAPITULATION.

Georgia is founded by Oglethorpe.—He leads forth a colony.—Founds Savannah.—The friendly natives.—A treaty is made with the Muskhogees.—Immigrants arrive from Europe.—Oglethorpe goes to England.—Returns.—The Moravians.—The Wesleys.—And Whitefield.—Conflicting claims of Georgia and Florida.—Oglethorpe builds forts.—War breaks out.—The governor besieges St. Augustine.—And fails.—The Spaniards invade Georgia.—Oglethorpe's stratagem.—The battle of Bloody Marsh.—The Spaniards are defeated.—The governor returns to England.—Slavery is introduced.—The prohibitory law is repealed.—Growth of the colony.

FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.

CHAPTER XXX.

CAUSES.

THE time came when the American colonies began to act together. The final struggle between France and England for colonial supremacy in America was at hand. Necessity compelled the English colonies to join in a common cause against the foe. This is the conflict known as THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR. Causes of war had existed for many years.

2. The first of these causes was *the conflicting territorial claims* of the two nations. England had colonized the sea-coast; France had colonized the interior of the continent. The English kings claimed the country from one ocean to the other. The French, however, began to push their way westward and southward along the great lakes to the head-waters of the Wabash, the Illinois, and the St. Croix, then down these streams to the Mississippi and the Gulf of Mexico. The purpose of the French was to divide the American continent and to take the larger portion.

3. The first colonies and trading-posts of France in the Mississippi valley were established by the Jesuit missionaries. As early as 1641, Charles Raymbault explored Lake Huron and Lake Superior. In the following thirty years, missions were established in Michigan, Wisconsin, and Illinois. In 1673 the explorers, Joliet and Marquette, reached the Wisconsin, and passed down that river and the Mississippi to the mouth of the Arkansas.

4. ROBERT DE LA SALLE carried the flag of France still farther. Sailing westward through the great lakes, he reached the mouth

of the St. Joseph, and then crossed the country to the Illinois. From this place he was obliged to return on foot to Fort Frontenac. Father Hennepin, one of La Salle's companions, explored the Mississippi as far as the falls of St. Anthony.

5. In 1682 La Salle explored Illinois and descended the Mississippi to the Gulf of Mexico. The up-river voyage was successfully accomplished, and La Salle sailed for France. In January of 1685, he returned in command of four emigrant ships, and reached the coast of Texas, where a colony was established. Marching northward in the hope of reaching Canada, La Salle was murdered by one of his own men on the 20th of March, 1687.

6. The French soon established military posts at Frontenac, at Niagara, at the Straits of Mackinaw, and on the Illinois. Before 1750, settlements had been made on the Maumee, at Detroit, at Green Bay, at Vincennes, at Kaskaskia, at Natchez, and on the Bay of Biloxi. At this time the only outposts of the English were a fort at Oswego, and a few cabins in West Virginia.

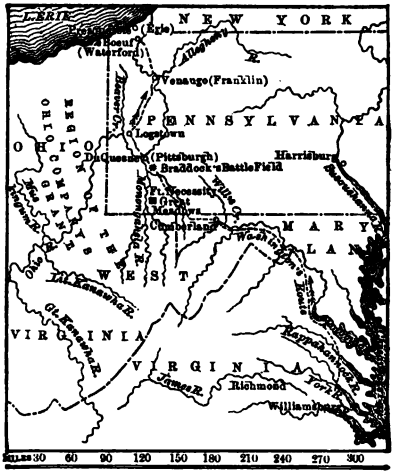
7. The immediate cause of hostilities was *a conflict between the frontiersmen of the two nations* in the Ohio valley. In order to prevent the intrusion of the French fur-traders into this country, a number of Virginians joined themselves together in a body called THE OHIO COMPANY. In March of 1749, they received from George II. a land-grant of five hundred thousand acres, located between the Kanawha and the Monongahela. But before the company could send out a colony, the governor of Canada despatched three hundred men to occupy the valley of the Ohio. In the next year, however, the Ohio Company sent out an exploring party under Christopher Gist, who traversed the country and returned to Virginia in 1751.

8. This expedition was followed by vigorous movements of the French. They built a fort called Le Bœuf, on French Creek, and another named Venango, on the Alleghany. About the same time the country south of the Ohio was again explored by Gist and a party of armed surveyors. In 1753 the English opened a road from Will's Creek through the mountains, and a small colony was planted on the Youghiogheny.

9. The Indians were greatly alarmed at the prospect. They

rather favored the English cause, but their allegiance was uncertain. In the spring of 1753, the Miami tribes, under the leadership of the Half-King, met Benjamin Franklin at Carlisle, Pennsylvania, and made a treaty with the English.

10. Before proceeding to actual war, Governor Dinwiddie determined to try a final remonstrance with the French. A paper was drawn up setting forth the nature of the English claim to the valley of the Ohio, and warning the authorities of France against further intrusion. A young surveyor named GEORGE WASHINGTON was called upon to carry this paper from Williamsburg to General St. Pierre at Presque Isle, on Lake Erie.



FIRST SCENE OF THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR, 1750.

11. On the last day of October, 1753, Washington set out on his journey. He was attended by four comrades besides an interpreter and Christopher Gist, the guide. The party reached the Youghiogheny, and passed down that stream to the site of Pittsburg. At Logstown, Washington held a council with the Indians, and then pressed on to Venango. From this place he traversed the forest to Fort le Bœuf. Here the conference was held with St. Pierre. Washington was received with courtesy, but the general of the French refused to enter into any discussion. He was acting, he said, under military instructions, and would eject every Englishman from the valley of the Ohio.

12. Washington soon took leave of the French, and returned to Venango. Then, with Gist as his sole companion, he left the river and struck into the woods. Clad in the robe of an Indian; sleeping with frozen clothes on a bed of pine-brush; guided at night by the North Star; fired at by a prowling savage from his covert; lodging on an island in the Alleghany until the

river was frozen over; plunging again into the forest, the young ambassador came back without wound or scar to the capital of Virginia. The answer of St. Pierre was laid before the governor, and the first public service of Washington was ended.

13. In the mean time, the Ohio Company had sent thirty-three men, under command of Trent, to erect a fort at the source of the Ohio. In March, 1754, they reached the confluence of the Alleghany and the Monongahela, and built the first rude block-house on the site of Pittsburg. After all the threats of the French, the English had beaten them and seized the key to the Ohio valley.

14. Soon, however, French boats came down the river; and Trent was obliged to surrender. Washington was now stationed at Alexandria to enlist recruits. But it was too late to save Trent's men from capture. The French immediately occupied the post, built barracks and laid the foundations of FORT DU QUESNE. To retake this place Colonel Washington set out from Will's Creek in May of 1754. The possession of the disputed territory was now to be determined by war.

RECAPITULATION

The colonies begin to act together.—A sense of danger unites them.—The French and Indian war arises.—Causes considered.—Conflicting territorial claims.—English colonies on the sea-board.—French colonies in the interior.—France proposes to confine the English to the Atlantic slope.—French settlements result from the efforts of the Jesuits.—Missions are established on the lakes.—Joliet and Marquette discover the Mississippi.—La Salle reaches the Illinois.—Explores the Mississippi to the Gulf.—Sails for France.—Returns with a colony.—Reaches Texas.—Is murdered.—French posts are established.—The Ohio valley to be occupied.—The frontiersmen of France and England come in conflict.—The Ohio Company is organized.—Obtains a grant of land.—France claims the Ohio valley.—Gist traverses the country.—The French fortify Le Bœuf and Venango.—Gist makes a second exploration.—An English colony on the Youghiogheny.—The Indians favor the English.—The Half-King confers with Franklin.—Dinwiddie sends a despatch to St. Pierre.—Washington is chosen for the mission.—Sets out to the site of Pittsburg.—And thence to Le Bœuf.—Confers with St. Pierre.—And returns to Virginia.—Trent begins a fort at the fork of the Ohio.—The French capture the place.—And build Du Quesne.—Washington is sent to retake the post.

CHAPTER XXXI.

CAMPAIGNS OF WASHINGTON AND BRADDOCK.

WASHINGTON, with his little army of Virginians, was commissioned to build a fort at the source of the Ohio, and to repel all who interrupted the English settlements in that country. In April the young commander left Will's Creek, but the march was toilsome. The men were obliged to drag their cannons. The roads were miserable; rivers were bridgeless; provisions insufficient.

2. On the 26th of May, the English reached the Great Meadows. Here Washington was informed that the French were on the march to attack him. A stockade was immediately erected, and named Fort Necessity. Washington, after conference with the Mingo chiefs, determined to strike the first blow. Two Indians followed the trail of the enemy, and discovered their hiding place. The French were on the alert, and flew to arms. "Fire!" was the command of Washington; and the first volley of a great war went flying through the forest. The engagement was brief and decisive. Jumonville, the leader of the French, and ten of his party were killed, and twenty-one were made prisoners.

3. Washington returned to Fort Necessity and waited for reïnforcements. Only one company of volunteers arrived. Washington spent the time in cutting a road for twenty miles in the direction of Fort du Quesne. The Indians who had been expected to join him from the Muskingum and the Miami did not arrive. His whole force scarcely numbered four hundred. Learning that the French general De Villiers was approaching, Washington deemed it prudent to fall back to Fort Necessity.

4. Scarcely were Washington's forces safe within the stockade, when, on the 3d of July, the regiment of De Villiers came in sight, and surrounded the fort. The French stationed themselves

on the eminence, and fired down upon the English with fatal effect. The Indians climbed into the tree-tops. For nine hours the assailants poured a shower of balls upon Washington's men. At length, seeing that it would be impossible to hold out, he accepted the terms which were offered by the French general. On the 4th of July, the English garrison marched out of the fort, and withdrew from the country.

5. Meanwhile, a congress of the American colonies had assembled at Albany. The first object had in view was to renew the treaty with the Iroquois. The convention next took up the work of uniting the colonies in a common government. On the 10th of July, Benjamin Franklin presented the draft of a constitution, which was finally adopted. Philadelphia was to be the capital. The chief executive was to be a governor appointed by the king. Each colony should be represented in congress by not less than two or more than seven representatives.

6. Copies of this constitution were transmitted to the several colonies; but the new scheme of government was everywhere received with disfavor. The English ministers also rejected it, saying that the Americans *were trying to make a government of their own.* Meanwhile, the French were constantly preparing for war.

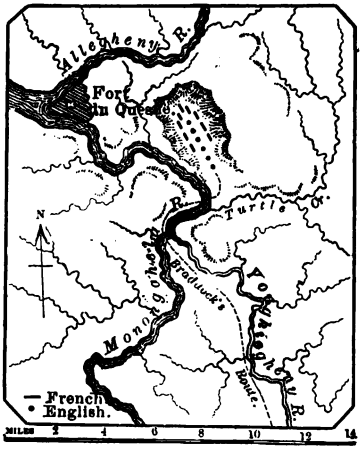
7. Early in 1755, General Braddock arrived in America, and on the 14th of April, met the governors of the colonies at Alexandria. The plans of four campaigns were agreed on. Lawrence, the governor of Nova Scotia, was to complete the conquest of that province. Governor Johnson, of New York, was to capture Crown Point. Shirley, of Massachusetts, was to take Fort Niagara. Braddock himself was to lead the main army against Fort du Quesne.

8. In the latter part of April, the British general set out with two thousand veterans, from Alexandria to Fort Cumberland. A few provincial troops joined the expedition. Washington became an aid-de-camp of Braddock, and frequently gave him honest counsel, which the British general rejected.

9. Braddock marched with the main body. On the 19th of June, he put himself at the head of twelve hundred chosen troops and pressed forward towards Fort du Quesne. Colonel Dunbar was left behind with the rest of the army. On the 9th of July, when the

English were only twelve miles from Fort du Quesne, they were suddenly attacked by the French and Indians hidden among the rocks and ravines.

10. The battle began with a panic. The men fired constantly, but could see no enemy. Braddock rushed to the front and rallied his men; but it was all in vain. They stood huddled together like sheep. The forest was strewn with the dead. Out of eighty-two officers, twenty-six were killed. Only Washington remained to distribute orders. Of the privates seven hundred and fourteen had fallen. A retreat began at once, and Washington, with the Virginians, covered the flight of the army.



SCENE OF BRADDOCK'S DEFEAT, 1755.

11. On the next day the Indians returned to Fort du Quesne, clad in the laced coats of the British officers. The dying Braddock was borne in the train of the fugitives. On the evening of the fourth day he died. When the fugitives reached Dunbar's camp, the confusion was greater than ever. The artillery, baggage, and public stores were destroyed. Then followed a hasty retreat to Fort Cumberland, and finally to Philadelphia.

RECAPITULATION.

Washington marches to Great Meadows.—Builds Fort Necessity.—Attacks the French.—Extends the road toward Du Quesne.—De Villiers approaches.—Attacks Fort Necessity.—And compels a surrender.—An American congress assembles at Albany.—Franklin plans a union.—The colonies reject the constitution.—France sends soldiers to America.—Braddock is sent by England.—He confers with the governors.—Plans four campaigns.—Marches his army to Fort Cumberland.—Proceeds against Du Quesne.—Approaches the fort.—Meets the French and Indians.—And is defeated.—Washington saves the remnant of the army.—Death of Braddock.—Dunbar retires to Philadelphia.

CHAPTER XXXII.

RUIN OF ACADIA.

BY the treaty of Utrecht, made in 1713, Acadia, or Nova Scotia, was ceded by France to England. The great majority of the people in that province were French, and the English government was only a military occupation. At the outbreak of the French and Indian War the population amounted to more than sixteen thousand. The enterprise of reducing these people to submission was entrusted to Governor Lawrence, who was to be aided by a British fleet. On the 20th of May, 1755, the squadron, with three thousand troops, sailed from Boston for the Bay of Fundy.

2. The French had one fortress, named Beau-Sejour, situated near the head of Chignecto Bay, and another fort called Gaspereau, on the north side of the isthmus, at Bay Verte. But there was no preparation for defence at either place. On the 16th of June, Beau-Sejour was taken, and Fort Gaspereau a few days afterward. In a campaign of a month, the English had made themselves masters of the whole country east of the St. Croix.



THE ACADIAN ISTHMUS, 1755.

3. The French inhabitants still outnumbered the English, and Governor Lawrence determined to drive them into banishment. The English officers first demanded an oath of allegiance and the surrender of all firearms and boats. The British vessels were then made ready to carry the people into exile.

4. The country about the isthmus was now laid waste, and the peasants driven into the larger towns. Wherever a sufficient number could be gotten together they were compelled to go on shipboard. At the village of Grand Pré more than nineteen hun-



THE EXILE OF THE ACADIANS.*

dred people were driven into the boats at the point of the bayonet. Wives and children, old men and mothers, the sick and the infirm, all shared the common fate. More than three thousand of the Acadians were carried away by the British squadron, and scattered, helpless and half starved, among the English colonies.

RECAPITULATION.

Nova Scotia under English rule.—Lawrence is authorized to subdue the French inhabitants.—The English fleet leaves Boston.—The French forts on the Bay of Fundy.—The fleet arrives at Beau-Sejour.—The place surrenders.—The other forts capitulate.—The British officers determine to exile the inhabitants.—The country is laid waste.—And the people carried into banishment.

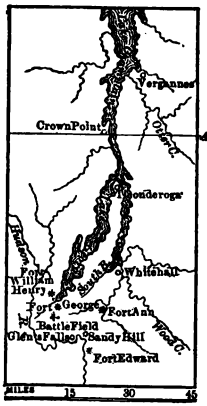
*Longfellow's *Evangeline* is founded on this incident.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

CAMPAIGNS OF SHIRLEY AND JOHNSON.

THE third campaign planned by Braddock was to be conducted by Governor Shirley against Fort Niagara. Early in August, he set out from Albany with two thousand men. Four weeks were spent at Oswego in preparing boats. Then tempests prevailed, and sickness broke out in the camp. The Indians deserted the standard of the English, and on the 24th of October the provincial forces, led by Shirley, marched homeward.

2. The fourth expedition was entrusted to General William Johnson. The object was to capture Crown Point, and to drive the French from Lake Champlain. Early in August the army proceeded to the Hudson above Albany, and built Fort Edward. Thence Johnson proceeded to Lake George and laid out a camp. A week was spent in bringing forward the artillery and stores.



VICINITY OF LAKE GEORGE, 1755.

3. In the meantime, Dieskau, the French commandant at Crown Point, advanced with fourteen hundred French, Canadians, and Indians to capture Fort Edward. General Johnson sent Colonel Williams, and Hendrick, the chief of the Mohawks, with twelve hundred men, to relieve the fort. On the morning of the 8th of September, Colonel Williams's regiment and the Mohawks were ambushed by Dieskau's forces and driven back to Johnson's camp.

4. The Canadians and French regulars, unsupported by the Indians, then attacked the English position. For five hours the battle was incessant. Nearly all of Dieskau's men were killed. At last the English troops charged across the field, and completed the

rout. Dieskau was mortally wounded. Two hundred and sixteen of the English were killed. General Johnson now constructed on the site of his camp Fort William Henry. Meanwhile, the French had fortified Ticonderoga. Such was the condition of affairs at the close of 1755.

5. In the beginning of the next year, the command of the English forces was given to Governor Shirley. Washington at the head of the Virginia provincials repelled the French and Indians in the valley of the Shenandoah. The Pennsylvania volunteers, choosing Franklin for their colonel, built a fort on the Lehigh, and made a successful campaign. The expeditions, which were planned for the year, embraced the conquest of Quebec and the capture of Forts Frontenac, Toronto, Niagara, and Du Quesne.

6. The earl of Loudoun now received the appointment of commander-in-chief of the British forces. General Abercrombie was second in rank. In the last of April, the latter, with two battalions of regulars, sailed for New York. On the 17th of May, Great Britain, after nearly two years of actual hostilities, made a declaration of war against France.

7. In July Lord Loudoun assumed the command of the colonial army. The French, meanwhile, led by the marquis of Montcalm, who had succeeded Dieskau, besieged and captured Oswego. Six vessels of war, three hundred boats, a hundred and twenty cannon, and three chests of money were the fruits of the victory.

8. During this summer the Delawares in Western Pennsylvania rose in war, and killed or captured more than a thousand people. In August Colonel Armstrong, with three hundred volunteers, marched against the Indian town of Kittanning, and on the 8th of September, defeated the savages with great losses. The village was burned and the spirit of the Indians completely broken.

9. On the 20th of June, 1757, Lord Loudoun sailed from New York with an army of six thousand regulars to capture Louisburg. At Halifax he was joined by Admiral Holbourn with a fleet of sixteen men-of-war. There were on board five thousand troops fresh from the armies of England. But Loudoun, instead of proceeding to Cape Breton, tarried a while at Halifax, and then sailed back to New York without striking a blow.

10. Meanwhile, the daring Montcalm, with more than seven thousand French, Canadians, and Indians advanced against Fort William Henry. The place was defended by five hundred men under Colonel Monro. For six days the French pressed the siege with vigor. The ammunition of the garrison was exhausted, and nothing remained but to surrender. Honorable terms were granted by the French. On the 9th of August the French took possession of the fortress. Unfortunately, the Indians procured a quantity of spirits from the English camp. In spite of the utmost exertions of Montcalm, the savages fell upon the prisoners and massacred thirty of them in cold blood.

11. Such had been the successes of France during the year that the English had not a single hamlet left in the whole basin of the St. Lawrence. Every cabin where English was spoken had been swept out of the Ohio valley. At the close of the year 1757, France possessed twenty times as much American territory as England; and five times as much as England and Spain together.

RECAPITULATION.

A campaign is planned against Niagara.—Shirley commands.—Proceeds to Oswego.—Marches home.—Oswego is rebuilt.—Johnson goes against the French on Lake Champlain.—Builds Fort Edward.—Forms a camp on Lake George.—Dieskau approaches.—Meets the English.—And drives them to the camp.—The battle.—Dieskau is killed.—The English lose heavily.—Johnson builds Fort William Henry.—The French reïnforce their forts.—Shirley becomes commander-in chief.—Washington repels the Indians.—Franklin defends Pennsylvania.—Loudoun is commander-in-chief of the forces in America.—He and Abercrombie arrive with soldiers and supplies.—England declares war.—Abercrombie goes to Albany.—Montcalm captures Oswego.—The Delawares revolt.—And are punished.—Loudoun attempts the conquest of Louisburg.—Proceeds to Halifax.—Holbourn joins him.—They do nothing.—Loudoun returns to New York.—Montcalm and the Iroquois capture Fort William Henry.—The Indians massacre the prisoners.—Review of the situation.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

TWO YEARS OF SUCCESSES.

WILLIAM PITT was now placed at the head of the English ministry. Loudoun was deposed from the American army. General Abercrombie was appointed to succeed him; but the main reliance was placed on an efficient corps of subordinate officers. Admiral Boscawen was put in command of the fleet. General Amherst was to lead a division. Young Lord Howe was next in rank to Abercrombie. James Wolfe led a brigade; and Colonel Richard Montgomery was at the head of a regiment.

2. Three expeditions were planned for 1758; one to capture Louisburg; a second, to reduce Crown Point and Ticonderoga; and the third to retake Fort du Quesne from the French. On the 28th of May, Amherst, with ten thousand men, reached Halifax. In six days more the fleet was anchored before Louisburg. On the 21st of July, three French vessels were burned in the harbor. The town was reduced to a heap of ruins. On the 28th of the month Louisburg capitulated. Cape Breton and Prince Edward's Island were surrendered to Great Britain. The garrison, numbering nearly six thousand men, became prisoners of war.

3. On the 5th of July, General Abercrombie, with an army of fifteen thousand men, moved against Ticonderoga. The country about the French fortress was unfavorable for military operations. On the morning of the 6th, the English fell in with the picket line of the French. A severe skirmish ensued; the French were overwhelmed, but Lord Howe was killed in the onset.

4. On the morning of the 8th, the English divisions were arranged to carry Ticonderoga by assault. A desperate battle of more than four hours followed, until, at six o'clock in the evening, the English were finally repulsed. The loss on the side of

the assailants amounted in killed and wounded to nineteen hundred and sixteen. In no battle of the Revolution did the British have so large a force engaged or meet so terrible a loss.

5. The English now retreated to Fort George. Soon afterward three thousand men, under Colonel Bradstreet, were sent against Fort Frontenac, on Lake Ontario. The place was feebly defended, and after a siege of two days compelled to capitulate. The fortress was demolished. Bradstreet's success more than counterbalanced the failure of the English at Ticonderoga.



VICINITY OF QUEBEC, 1759.

6. Late in the summer, General Forbes, with nine thousand men, advanced against Fort du Quesne. Washington led the Virginia provincials. The main body moved slowly, but Major Grant, with the advance, pressed on to within a few miles of Du Quesne. Advancing carelessly, he was ambuscaded, and lost a third of his forces. On the 24th of November, Washington was within ten miles of Du Quesne. During that night the garrison took the alarm, burned the fortress and floated down the Ohio. On the 25th the victorious army marched in, raised the English flag, and named the place PITTSBURGH.

7. General Amherst was now promoted to the chief command of the American forces. By the beginning of summer, 1759, the British and colonial armies numbered nearly fifty thousand men. The entire French army scarcely exceeded seven thousand. Three campaigns were planned for the year. General Prideaux was to conduct an expedition against Niagara. Amherst was to lead the main division against Ticonderoga and Crown Point. General Wolfe was to proceed up the St. Lawrence and capture Quebec.

8. On the 10th of July, Niagara was invested by Prideaux.

The French general D'Aubry, with twelve hundred men, marched to the relief of the fort. On the 15th, General Prideaux was killed by the bursting of a mortar. Sir William Johnson succeeded to the command, and disposed his forces so as to intercept the approaching French. On the morning of the 24th, D'Aubry's army came in sight. A bloody engagement ensued, in which the French were completely routed. On the next day, Niagara capitulated, and the French forces, to the number of six hundred, became prisoners of war.



GENERAL JAMES WOLFE.

9. At the same time Amherst was marching with an army of eleven thousand men against Ticonderoga. On the 22d of July, the English forces were disembarked where Abercrombie had formerly landed. The French did not dare to stand against them. On the 26th, the garrison, having partly destroyed the fortifications, abandoned Ticonderoga and retreated to Crown Point. Five days afterward, they deserted this place also, and entrenched themselves on Isle-aux-Noix, in the river Sorel.

10. It remained for General Wolfe to achieve the final victory. Early in the spring, he began the ascent of the St. Lawrence. His force consisted of nearly eight thousand men, assisted by a

fleet of forty-four vessels. On the 27th of June, the armament arrived at the Isle of Orleans, four miles below Quebec. The English camp was pitched at the upper end of the Island. Wolfe's vessels gave him command of the river, and the southern bank was undefended. On the night of the 29th, General Monckton was sent to seize Point Levi. From this position the Lower Town was soon reduced to ruins, and the Upper Town much injured; but the fortress held out.

11. On the 9th of July, General Wolfe crossed the north channel and encamped on the east bank of the Montmorenci. This stream was fordable at low water. On the 31st of the month, a severe battle was fought at the fords of the river, and the English were repulsed with heavy losses. Wolfe, after losing nearly five hundred men, withdrew to his camp.

12. Exposure and fatigue threw the English general into a fever, and for many days he was confined to his tent. A council of officers was called, and the indomitable leader proposed a second assault. But the proposition was overruled. It was decided to ascend the St. Lawrence, and gain the Plains of Abraham, in the rear of the city. The lower camp was broken up, and on the 6th of September, the troops were conveyed to Point Levi. Wolfe then transferred his army to a point several miles up the river. He then busied himself with an examination of the northern bank, in the hope of finding some pathway up the steep cliffs to the plains in the rear of Quebec.

13. On the night of the 12th of September, the English entered their boats and dropped down the river to a place called Wolfe's Cove. With great difficulty the soldiers clambered up the precipice; the Canadian guard on the summit was dispersed; and in the dawn of morning Wolfe marshaled his army for battle. Montcalm was in amazement when he heard the news. With great haste the French were brought from the trenches on the Montmorenci, and thrown between Quebec and the English.

14. The battle began with an hour's cannonade; then Montcalm attempted to turn the English flank, but was beaten back. The Canadians and Indians were routed. The French regulars wavered and were thrown into confusion. Wolfe, leading the charge, was

wounded in the wrist. Again he was struck, but pressed on. At the moment of victory a third ball pierced his breast, and he sank to the earth. "They run, they run!" said the attendant who bent over him. "Who run?" was the response. "The French are flying everywhere," replied the officer. "Do they run already? Then I die happy," said the expiring hero.

15. Montcalm, attempting to rally his regiments, was struck with a ball and mortally wounded. "Shall I survive?" said he to his surgeon. "But a few hours at most," answered the attendant. "So much the better," replied the heroic Frenchman, "I shall not live to witness the surrender of Quebec."

16. Five days after the battle, Quebec was surrendered, and an English garrison took possession of the citadel. In the following spring, France made an effort to recover her losses. A severe battle was fought a few miles west of Quebec, and the English were driven into the city. But reïnforcements came and the French were beaten back. On the 8th of September, in the same year, Montreal, the last important post of France in the valley of the St. Lawrence, was surrendered to General Amherst. Canada had passed under the dominion of England.

17. In the spring of 1760, the Cherokees of Tennessee rose against the English. Fort Loudoun, in the north-eastern extremity of the State, was besieged by the Red men and forced to capitulate. Honorable terms were promised; but as soon as the surrender was made, the savages massacred the garrison. Colonels Montgomery and Grant were despatched by General Amherst to chastise the Indians. After a vigorous campaign the savages were driven into the mountains and compelled to sue for peace.

18. For three years the war between France and England continued on the ocean. The English fleets were everywhere victorious. On the 10th of February, 1763, a treaty of peace was made at Paris. All the French possessions in North America eastward of the Mississippi from its source to the river Iberville, and thence through Lakes Maurepas and Pontchartrain to the Gulf of Mexico, were surrendered to Great Britain. At the same time, Spain, with whom England had been at war, ceded East and West Florida to the English Crown. Thus closed the

French and Indian War. By this conflict it was decided that the decaying institutions of the Middle Ages should not prevail in America, and that the powerful language, just laws, and priceless liberties of the English race should be planted forever in the vast domains of the New World.

RECAPITULATION.

Pitt becomes prime minister.—Loudoun is deposed.—Abercrombie succeeds.—Able generals sent to America.—Three campaigns are planned.—Amherst and Wolfe capture Louisburg.—Abercrombie is repulsed at Ticonderoga.—Bradstreet takes Frontenac.—Forbes marches against Du Quesne.—Grant is defeated.—Washington leads the advance.—The French abandon Du Quesne.—Amherst commander-in-chief.—Pitt plans the conquest of Canada.—Prideaux defeats the French at Niagara.—Captures the fortress.—Amherst takes Ticonderoga.—Wolfe proceeds against Quebec.—Besieges the city.—The Lower Town is destroyed.—The battle of Montmorenci.—Wolfe ascends the river.—Gains the Plains of Abraham.—Fights a decisive battle.—Defeats the French.—Is slain.—Quebec capitulates.—And then Montreal.—The Cherokee revolt is quelled.—The war continues on the ocean.—England is victorious.—A treaty of peace.—The terms.

PART IV.

REVOLUTION AND CONFEDERATION.

A. D. 1775—1789.

CHAPTER XXXV.

CAUSES.

THE American Revolution was an event of vast importance. The question decided by it was whether the English colonies in America should govern themselves or be ruled by Great Britain. The decision was rendered in favor of independence. The result has been the grandest republican government in the world.

2. The most general cause of the Revolution was THE RIGHT OF ARBITRARY GOVERNMENT, claimed by Great Britain and denied by the colonies. The question began to be discussed about the time of the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle, in 1748; and from that period until 1775, each year witnessed a renewal of the agitation. But there were also many minor causes tending to bring on a conflict with the mother-country.

3. First of these was *the influence of France,* inciting the colonies to rebel. The French had ceded Canada to Great Britain with the hope of securing American independence. England feared such a result. It was even proposed in Parliament to re-cede Canada to France in order to check the growth of the American States.

4. Another cause was *the natural disposition of the colonists.* They were republicans in politics. The people of England were monarchists. The colonists had never seen a king. Their dealings with the royal officers had created a dislike for foreign institutions. For a long time the colonists had managed their own affairs in their own way.

5. *The growth of public opinion in the colonies* tended to independence. The better class of men came to believe that a separation from England was very desirable. As early as 1755, John Adams, then a young school-teacher in Connecticut, wrote in his diary: "In another century all Europe will not be able to subdue us. The only way to keep us from setting up for ourselves is to disunite us."

6. Another cause of the Revolution was *the personal character of the king.* George III. was one of the worst rulers of modern times. He was a stubborn, thick-headed man, who had no true notion of human rights. His ministers were, for the most part, men of like sort with himself.

7. The more immediate cause of the war with the mother-country was the passage by Parliament of a number of laws destructive of colonial liberty. The first of these was THE IMPORTATION ACT of 1733. By the terms of this statute, exorbitant duties were laid on sugar, molasses and rum. In 1750 it was enacted that iron-works should not be erected in America. The manufacture of steel was forbidden; and the felling of pines, outside of enclosures, was interdicted. All of these laws were disregarded by the people of the colonies as being unjust and tyrannical. In 1761 the colonial courts were authorized to issue to the king's officers a kind of search-warrants, called Writs of Assistance. Armed with this authority, petty constables might enter every place, searching for goods which were suspected of having evaded the duty. At Salem and Boston the writs were resisted. James Otis publicly denounced the parliamentary acts as unconstitutional.

8. In 1763, and again in the following year, the English officers were authorized to seize all vessels engaged in unlawful trade. Before the passage of this act was known at Boston, a great town-meeting was held. Samuel Adams was the orator. A powerful argument was produced showing that under the British constitution *taxation and representation were inseparable.*

9. On the 10th of March, 1764, Mr. Grenville, the prime minister, brought before the House of Commons a resolution that it would be proper to charge certain stamp-duties on the American colonies. The news of the proposed measure was borne to America,

1775	76	77	78	79	80	81
41-90. Joseph II. of Austria. 12-86. Frederick the Great of Prussia. 54-93. Louis XVI. of France. 38-1820. George III. of England.	Seventeen thousand Hessians hired for the American War. Armed Neutrality decla *Montreal and Quebec.*		The British Ministry offer terms to the Americans. **Alliance with France.**		**War between Great Britain and S** Revolt of the Hungarians. *Paul Jones' victory.*	**War between Gr** Admiral Byron in command of the British fleet. *Captu*
SOUTH CAROLINA.	Fort Moultrie built. Arrival of the British Squadron. *Siege of Charleston.*				*Charleston.* *Monk's Corner.* *Rocky Mount.* *Hanging Rock.*	Restor *The Corp* *Hobkirk's*
GEORGIA.		Arrival of La Fayette and De Kalb.	*Fall of Savannah.*	*Ft. Sunbury.* *Augusta.* *Siege of Savannah.*	34-1832. Thomas Sumter. 32-95. Francis Marion.	*N* *E* Restora
NEW YORK.	American army arrives at New York. *Long Island.* *White Plains.* Congress at New York city.			*Verplanck's and Stony*		
39-89. Ethan Allen. *Ticonderoga.* *Crown Point.*	*Fort Washington.* Peekskill taken by the British. *Sag Harbor.* Burgoyne's invasion begins. *Bennington.* *Saratoga, and surrender of Burgoyne.*		*The Cherry Valley Massacre.*	*Stony Point re-taken.*	Arnold's Exe	an. of Andr
NEW JERSEY. Lee captured at Basking Ridge. Washington's retreat across New Jersey.	*Trenton and Princeton.* Winter-quarters at The British leave the State. *Forts Mifflin and Mercer.*		*Monmouth.*	Middlebrook.		iny of the iny of the
NEW HAMPSHIRE. John Stark rallies the militia.			*Hubbardton.*		*Destruction of the Am*	
MASSACHUSETTS. The patriot authority restored in Massachusetts. *Lexington.* Howe, Clinton, and *Bunker Hill.* Gage's proclamation issued. *Siege of Boston.* The British evacuate Boston.	Burgoyne arrive.			*Destruction of the A*	John Ha D'E fleet at B	governor. squadron
PENNSYLVANIA. Washington appointed commander-in-chief. Silas Deane sent to France.	Winter-quarters at Valley Forge. Clinton supersedes Howe. *The Wyoming Massacre.* *Germantown.*					Robert Morris Bank
Declaration of Independence. Dr. Franklin commissioner to France. The Confederation proposed.		The British evacuate Philadelphia. Invasion of the Indian country.				**Arti**
DELAWARE. Patriot government	*Brandywine.* Philadelphia taken by the British. The British fleet in the Delaware. Patriot government organized. Restoration of the patriot authority in Delawa Delaware overrun by the British.					

CHART III.

REVOLUTION & CONFEDERATION.

A. D. 1775—1789.

82	83	84	85	86	87	88	89
Defeat of	*of De Grasse at*	*Martinique.*					
Siege of	*Gibraltar.*						
ain.							
Retireme	nt of the Lord	North Ministry.					
Prel	iminary treaty.		Treaty of				
	Supplemental	treaty.	Fontainebleau.				
ed by Russia.	**Definit**	**ive Treaty.**					
at Britain	**and Holland.**						
of Minorca	*by the Spaniard*	*s.*					
				Frederick	**William II.**	The Triple	
				Invasion of Holland.		Alliance.	
rn Virginia.	Wa	shington retire	s to Mount Ver	non.			
Legislature d	ispersed.	Virginia	cedes the Nort	hwestern Territory.		Virginia rat-	
ver of Yorktown and sur-			Washington r	ecommends a Constitu-		ifies the	
render of Cornwallis.			tional Conv	ention.		**Constitution.**	
British evacua	te Wilmington.					The	
						Convention	
						rejects the	
						Constitution.	
The	British evacua	te Charleston.					
tion of the p	atriot authorit	y.				South Carolina ratifies the Constitution.	
ns.							
Hill.							
iety-Six.							
aw Springs.							
on of the pat	riot authority.						
The Bri	tish evacuate S	avannah.				Georgia ratifies the Constitution.	
				Decimal	currency adop	ted.	
					Northwestern	Territory	
					organized.		
Clinton s	uperseded by Si	r Guy Carleton.			St. Clair appoi	nted	
	The Bri	tish evacuate	New York.		governor.		
New	York cedes the	Northwestern	Territory.				
	Was	ington bids adi	eu to the army.			New York ratifies the Constitution.	
ennsylvania	line.						
ew Jersey li	ne.					New Jersey ratifies the Constitution.	
ican squadron	*in the Penobscot.*						
[redacted]							
						Constitution.	
			Massachusetts	cedes the Nor	th-		
			western Terr	itory.		Massachusetts ratifies the Constitution.	
the Penobscot.							
ton.				Shay's Re	bellion.		
				Connecticut	**cedes the North-**		
	old; Arnold's depredations.			western Terr	itory.	Connecticut ratifies the Constitution.	
Norwalk.							
ppointed Secr	etary of Finan	ce.					
North Amer	ica organized.				Constitutional	Convention.	
						Pen	nsylvania ratifies the Constitution.
es of Conf	**ederation ra**	**tified.**					
	Treaty of	Peace ratified	by Congress.				
	Wa	shington make	s his report of	the war.			
[redacted]							
			s his commission.				
						Dellaware ratifies	

producing universal excitement. Resolutions against the acts of the ministers were passed by the people of almost every town. Remonstrances were addressed to the king and the two houses of Parliament.

10. Nevertheless, in March of 1765, the English Parliament passed the STAMP ACT. In the House of Commons the measure received a majority of five to one. In the House of Lords the vote was unanimous. On the 22d of the month, the royal assent was given to the measure. Benjamin Franklin, who was then in London, wrote to a friend at home, that the sun of American liberty had set.

11. The provisions of the Stamp Act were these: Every legal document, required in the colonies, should, after the 1st day of the following November, be executed on stamped paper to be furnished by the British government. For each sheet the colonists were required to pay a sum varying from three pence to six pounds sterling. Every pamphlet, almanac and newspaper was required to be printed on paper of the same sort, the value of the stamps ranging from a half-penny to four pence. No contract should be binding unless written on paper bearing the stamp.

12. The news of the hateful act created great wrath in America. The bells of Philadelphia and Boston rung a funeral peal. In New York a copy of the Stamp Act was carried through the streets with a death's-head nailed to it, and a placard bearing this inscription: THE FOLLY OF ENGLAND AND THE RUIN OF AMERICA. The general assemblies were at first slow to move; there were many old loyalists among the members. But the younger representatives did not hesitate to express their sentiments. In the Virginia House of Burgesses there was a memorable scene.

13. Patrick Henry, the youngest member of the House, waited for some older delegate to lead in opposition to Parliament. But the older members hesitated or went home. Offended at this lukewarmness, Henry snatched a blank leaf out of an old law book and drew up a series of resolutions, declaring that the Virginians were Englishmen with English rights; that the colonists were not bound to yield obedience to any law imposing taxation on them; and that whoever said the contrary was an enemy to the country.

14. A violent debate ensued. Two future Presidents of the United States were in the audience; Washington occupied his seat as a delegate, and Thomas Jefferson, a young collegian, stood outside of the railing. The eloquent Henry bore down all opposition. "Cæsar had his Brutus," said the orator; "Charles I. had his Cromwell, and George III.—" "Treason!" shouted the speaker. "Treason! treason!" exclaimed the loyalists, springing to their feet. "—And George III. may profit by their example," continued Henry; and then added, "If that be treason, make the most of it!" The resolutions were put to the house and carried; but on the next day, when Henry was absent, the most violent paragraph was repealed.



PATRICK HENRY.

15. Similar resolutions were adopted by the assemblies of New York and Massachusetts. James Otis proposed an American Congress. The proposition was favorably received by nine of the colonies; and, on the 7th of October THE FIRST COLONIAL CONGRESS assembled at New York. Timothy Ruggles of Massachusetts was chosen president. A DECLARATION OF RIGHTS was adopted setting forth that the American colonists, as Englishmen, could not consent to be taxed but by their own representatives. Memorials were sent to Parliament, and a petition to the king.

16. On the 1st of November, the Stamp Act was to take effect. During the summer great quantities of the stamped paper had been sent to America. But everywhere it was rejected or destroyed. The 1st of November was kept as a day of mourning.

17. At first, legal business was suspended. The court-houses were shut up. Not even a marriage license could be legally issued. By and by, the offices were opened, and business went on as before; but was *not* transacted with stamped paper. It was at this time that the patriotic society known as THE SONS OF LIBERTY was organized. The merchants of New York, Boston, and Philadelphia entered into a compact to purchase no more goods of Great Britain until the Stamp Act should be repealed.

18. The colonists had their friends in England. Eminent statesmen espoused the cause of America. In the House of Commons Mr. Pitt delivered a powerful address. "You have," said he, "no right to tax America. I rejoice that America has resisted." On the 18th of March, 1766, the Stamp Act was formally repealed. But at the same time a resolution was added declaring that Parliament had the right *to bind the colonies in all cases whatsoever.*

19. The repeal of the Stamp Act produced great joy, both in England and America. A few months afterward, a new British cabinet was formed under the leadership of Pitt. While he was confined by sickness to his home in the country, Mr. Townshend brought forward a new scheme for taxing America. On the 29th of June, 1767, an act was passed imposing a duty on all the glass, paper, painters' colors, and tea which should thereafter be imported into the colonies.

20. The resentment of the Americans burst out anew. Another agreement not to purchase British goods was entered into by the American merchants. The newspapers were filled with denunciations of Parliament. Early in 1768, the assembly of Massachusetts adopted a circular calling upon the other colonies for assistance in the effort to obtain redress of grievances. The ministers were enraged and required the assembly to rescind their action, and to express regret for that "rash and hasty proceeding."

21. In the month of June, a sloop, charged with evading the payment of duty, was seized by the custom-house officers of Boston.

But the people attacked the houses of the officers, and obliged the occupants to fly to Castle William. General Gage was now ordered to bring from Halifax a regiment of regulars and overawe the people. On the 1st of October the troops, seven hundred strong, marched with fixed bayonets into the capital of Massachusetts.

22. In February of 1769, the people of Massachusetts were declared rebels, and the governor was directed to arrest those deemed guilty and send them to England for trial. The general assembly met this outrage with defiant resolutions. Similar scenes were enacted in Virginia and North Carolina. In the latter State an insurrection was suppressed by Governor Tryon; the insurgents, escaping across the mountains, became the founders of Tennessee.

23. Early in 1770, the soldiers in New York cut down a liberty pole which stood in the park. A conflict ensued, in which the people won the day. On the 5th of March, a more serious difficulty occurred in Boston. A crowd of people surrounded Captain Preston's company of the city guard, hooted at them, and dared them to fire. At length the soldiers discharged a volley, killing three of the citizens and wounding several others. This outrage, known as the Boston Massacre, created a profound sensation. Captain Preston and his company were arrested and tried for murder. Two of the offenders were convicted of manslaughter.

24. Parliament now passed an act repealing all duties on American imports except that on tea. The people, in answer, pledged themselves to use no more tea until the duty should be *unconditionally repealed.* In 1772 an act was passed that the salaries of the officers of Massachusetts should be paid without consent of the assembly. About the same time, the *Gaspee,* a royal schooner anchored at Providence, was boarded by the patriots and burned.

25. In 1773, Parliament removed the export duty which had hitherto been charged on tea shipped from England. The price was by so much lowered; and the ministers thought that, when the cheaper tea was offered in America, the colonists would pay the import duty without suspicion. Ships were loaded with tea for the American market. Some of the vessels reached Charleston; but the chests were stored in cellars, and the contents ruined. At New York and Philadelphia the ships were forbidden to enter. At

Boston the authorities would not permit the tea to be landed. On the 16th of December, there was a great town-meeting at which seven thousand people were present. Adams and Quincy spoke to the multitudes. Evening came on, and the meeting was about to adjourn, when a war-whoop was heard, and fifty men disguised as Indians marched to the wharf, where the tea-ships were at anchor. The disguised men quickly boarded the vessels and emptied three hundred and forty chests of tea into the bay. Such was THE BOSTON TEA-PARTY.



SAMUEL ADAMS.

26. Parliament made haste to find revenge. On the last day of March, 1774, THE BOSTON PORT BILL was passed. It was enacted that no kind of merchandise should any longer be landed or shipped at the wharves of Boston. The custom-house was removed to Salem, but the people of that town refused to accept it. The inhabitants of Marblehead gave the free use of their warehouses to the merchants of Boston. When the news of the passage of the Port Bill reached Virginia, the burgesses entered a protest on their journal. Governor Dunmore ordered the members to their homes; but they met and continued their work in another place. On the 20th of May, the charter of Massachusetts was annulled. The

people were declared rebels; and the governor was ordered to send abroad for trial all persons who should resist the officers.

27. In September THE SECOND COLONIAL CONGRESS assembled at Philadelphia. Eleven colonies were represented. One address was sent to the king; another to the English nation; and another to the people of Canada. A resolution was adopted to suspend all commercial intercourse with Great Britain. Parliament retaliated by ordering General Gage to reduce the colonists by force. A fleet and ten thousand soldiers were sent to aid him.

28. Boston Neck was seized and fortified by the British. The stores at Cambridge and Charlestown were conveyed to Boston; and the general assembly was ordered to disband. Instead of doing so, the members voted to equip an army of twelve thousand men for defence. There was no longer any hope of a peaceable adjustment. The colonists were few and feeble; but they were men of iron wills who had made up their minds to die for liberty.

RECAPITULATION.

Importance of the Revolution.—The question decided by it.—The causes.—Great Britain claims the right of arbitrary government.—France incites the rebellion.—The disposition of the Americans encourages independence.—Public opinion.—The king provokes a conflict.—Parliament passes oppressive acts.—The question of taxation.—The Importation Act.—Its provisions.—Writs of Assistance are issued.—The sugar and wine duties.—A Stamp Act is proposed.—Indignation in the colonies.—The Stamp Act is passed.—Its provisions.—The news is received in America.—Scene in the House of Burgesses.—Passage of Henry's resolutions.—Other assemblies pursue a similar course.—The first Colonial Congress.—A Declaration of Rights is adopted.—Memorials to the king and Parliament.—The Stamp Act is resisted.—And the stamps destroyed.—Suspension of business.—The Sons of Liberty.—The non-importation agreement.—Pitt defends the colonists.—Repeal of the Stamp Act.—Townshend secures the passage of a glass and tea-tax.—The Americans resist.—Circular of Massachusetts.—Seizure of a sloop at Boston.—Insurrection of the people.—Gates takes possession of Boston.—Is ordered to arrest the patriots.—Rebellion of Virginia and North Carolina.—Conflict at New York.—The Boston massacre.—Repeal of the duties.—Passage of the Salary Act.—Burning of the *Gaspee*.—Tea is shipped to America.—Is spoiled at Charleston.—Refused at New York and Philadelphia.—And poured overboard at Boston.—Passage of the Port Bill.—Opposition of the Burgesses.—The charter of Massachusetts is annulled.—The people declared rebels.—The second Congress assembles.—A British army is ordered to America.—Boston Neck fortified.—Military stores removed.—The assembly refuses to disband.—War inevitable.

CHAPTER XXXVI.

THE BEGINNING.

AS soon as the intentions of General Gage were known, the people of Boston, concealing their ammunition in carts, conveyed it to Concord. On the night of the 18th of April, Gage despatched eight hundred men to destroy the stores. The plan of the British was made with great secrecy; but the patriots discovered the movement. When the regiment, under command of Colonel Smith and Major Pitcairn, set out for Concord, the people of Boston were roused by the ringing of bells and the firing of cannons. William Dawes and Paul Revere rode with all speed to Lexington and spread the alarm through the country.

2. At two o'clock in the morning a company of a hundred and thirty minute-men assembled on the common at Lexington. No enemy appeared until five o'clock, when the British, under command of Pitcairn, came in sight. The provincials were led by Captain Parker. Pitcairn rode up and exclaimed: "Disperse, ye villains! Throw down your arms!" The minute-men stood still, and Pitcairn cried, "Fire!" The first volley of the Revolution whistled through the air, and sixteen of the patriots fell dead or wounded. The rest fired a few shots, and dispersed.

3. The British pressed on to Concord; but the inhabitants had removed the stores to a place of safety, and there was but little destruction. While the British were ransacking the town, the minute-men encountered a company of soldiers who were guarding the North Bridge. Here the Americans fired under orders of their officers, and two British soldiers were killed. The rest began a retreat through the town towards Lexington. For six miles the battle was kept up along the road. Hidden behind trees, fences, and barns, the patriots poured a constant fire upon the

ranks of the enemy. At one time it seemed that the whole British force would be obliged to surrender. The American loss was forty-nine killed, thirty-four wounded, and five missing; that of the enemy was two hundred and seventy-three.

4. The battle of Lexington fired the country. Within a few days an army of twenty thousand men gathered about Boston. A line of entrenchments was drawn from Roxbury to Chelsea. To drive Gage into the sea was the common talk. John Stark came down with the New Hampshire militia. Israel Putnam, with a leather waistcoat on, hurried to the nearest town, mounted a horse and rode to Cambridge, a distance of a hundred miles, in eighteen hours. Rhode Island sent her men under Nathaniel Greene. Benedict Arnold came with the provincials of New Haven.

5. Ethan Allen, with a company of two hundred and seventy patriots, advanced against Ticonderoga. Benedict Arnold joined the expedition as a private. On the evening of the 9th of May, the force reached the shore of Lake George, opposite Ticonderoga.

6. On the following morning, eighty-three men succeeded in crossing. With this mere handful, Allen made a dash and gained the gateway of the fort. The sentinel was driven in, closely followed by the patriot mountaineers. Allen rushed to the quarters of the commandant, and cried out: "Surrender this fort instantly!" "By what authority?" inquired the officer. "In the name of the great Jehovah and the Continental Congress," said Allen, flourishing his sword. There was no alternative. The garrison were made prisoners and sent to Connecticut. By this daring exploit vast quantities of military stores fell into the hands of the Americans. Two days afterward Crown Point was also taken.

7. On the 25th of May, Generals Howe, Clinton, and Burgoyne arrived at Boston. The British army was augmented to more than ten thousand men. It was now rumored that Gage was about to sally out of Boston to burn the neighboring towns and devastate the country. The Americans determined to anticipate this movement by fortifying Bunker Hill, which commanded the peninsula of Charlestown.

8. On the night of the 16th of June, Colonel Prescott was sent with a thousand men to entrench the hill. The provincials reached

the eminence; but Prescott and his engineer, not liking the position, proceeded down the peninsula to Breed's Hill, within cannon range of Boston. On this summit a redoubt was thrown up during the night. The British ships in the harbor were so near that the Americans could hear the sentinels repeating the night-call, "All is well."



SCENE OF THE BATTLE OF BUNKER HILL, 1775.

9. As soon as it was light, General Gage ordered the ships in the harbor to cannonade the American position. The British batteries on Copp's Hill also opened fire. Just after noon, three thousand British veterans, commanded by Generals Howe and Pigot, landed at Morton's Point. The Americans numbered about fifteen hundred. Generals Putnam and Warren served as privates in the trenches. Charlestown was burned by the British as they advanced. Thousands of spectators climbed to the house-tops in Boston to watch the battle. On came the British in a stately and imposing column.

10. The Americans reserved their fire until the advancing line was within a hundred and fifty feet. Then instantly from the breastworks every gun was discharged. The front rank of the British melted away, and the rest hastily retreated. Howe rallied his men and led them to the second charge. Again the American fire was withheld until the enemy was but a few rods distant. Then with steady aim volley after volley was poured upon the column until it was broken and driven into flight.

11. The vessels of the British fleet now changed position until the guns were brought to bear upon the American works. For the third time, the British soldiers charged with fixed bayonets up the hillside. The Americans had but three or four rounds of ammunition remaining. These were expended on the advancing enemy. Then there was a lull. The British clambered over the ramparts. The provincials hurled stones at the assailants. It

was in vain; the defenders of liberty were driven out of their trenches at the point of the bayonet. The brave Warren gave his life for freedom. The loss of the British in the engagement was a thousand and fifty-four in killed and wounded. The Americans lost a hundred and fifteen killed, three hundred and five wounded, and thirty-two prisoners. Prescott and Putnam conducted the retreat to Prospect Hill.

12. The battle of Bunker Hill rather inspired than discouraged the colonists. The news was borne to the South, and a spirit of determined opposition was everywhere aroused. The people began to speak of THE UNITED COLONIES OF AMERICA. At Charlotte, North Carolina, the citizens ran together in a convention, and made *a declaration of independence.*

13. On the day of the capture of Ticonderoga, the colonial Congress assembled at Philadelphia. Washington was there, and John Adams and Samuel Adams, Franklin and Patrick Henry; Jefferson came soon afterward, A last appeal was addressed to the king; and he was told that the colonists had chosen war in preference to slavery. Early in the session John Adams made an address, in the course of which he noticed the necessity of appointing a commander-in-chief and the qualities requisite in that high officer. The speaker concluded by putting in nomination George Washington of Virginia. On the 15th of June, the nomination was confirmed by Congress; and the man who had saved the wreck of Braddock's army was called to build a nation.

14. GEORGE WASHINGTON was born in Westmoreland county, Virginia, on the 11th of February (Old Style), 1732. At the age of eleven he was left to the sole care of his mother. His education was limited to the common branches of learning. Surveying was his favorite study. At the age of sixteen he was sent by his uncle to survey a tract of land on the South Potomac. The important duties which he performed in the service of the Ohio Company and his campaign with Braddock have already been narrated. With great dignity he accepted the appointment of commander-in-chief, and set out to join the army at Cambridge.

15. Congress had voted to equip twenty thousand men, but the means of doing so were not furnished. Washington had a force

of fourteen thousand five hundred volunteers, but they were undisciplined and insubordinate. The supplies of war were almost wholly wanting. The army was soon organized and arranged in three divisions. The right wing, under General Ward, held Roxbury; the left, commanded by General Charles Lee, rested at Prospect Hill; the centre, under the commander-in-chief, lay at Cambridge. The siege of Boston was pressed with vigor.

16. Meanwhile the king's authority was overthrown in all the colonies. Lord Dunmore, governor of Virginia, who was driven from office, proclaimed freedom to the slaves and raised a force of loyalists, but was defeated by the patriots near Norfolk.

17. The Americans looked to Canada for aid. In order to encourage the people of that province to take up arms, Generals Schuyler and Montgomery were ordered to proceed against St. John and Montreal. The former fort was reached on the 10th of September, but could not at first be taken. Afterward General Montgomery succeeded in capturing the fortress. Montreal was next invested, and on the 13th of November obliged to capitulate.

18. Montgomery next proceeded, with three hundred men, against Quebec. In the mean time, Colonel Arnold had set out with a thousand men from Cambridge, and after a march of untold hardship and suffering, had reached the St. Lawrence and climbed to the Plains of Abraham. At Point aux Trembles he was joined by Montgomery, who assumed command. The whole force did not exceed nine hundred men. Quebec was defended by greatly superior numbers. For three weeks, with his handful of troops, Montgomery besieged the town, and then staked everything on an assault.

19. Before daybreak on the 31st of December, 1775, the first division, under Montgomery, attacked the Lower Town. The second column, led by Arnold, attempted to storm the Prescott Gate. As Montgomery's men were rushing forward, a battery before them burst forth with a storm of grape-shot. At the first discharge Montgomery fell dead. The men, heartbroken at their loss, retreated to Wolfe's Cove, above the city.

20. Arnold had meanwhile fought his way into the Lower Town. While leading the charge he was severely wounded and

borne to the rear. Captain Morgan led his brave band along the narrow streets until he was overwhelmed and compelled to surrender. Arnold retired to a point three miles above the city. The small-pox broke out in the camp; Quebec was strengthened; and in the following June the Americans evacuated Canada.

RECAPITULATION.

The patriots remove their stores.—Pitcairn is sent to destroy them.—Dawes and Revere arouse the people.—The British reach Lexington.—Fire on the patriots.—Proceed to Concord.—Are attacked.—And driven back to Boston.—The country is fired.—The patriots gather at Cambridge.—Allen and Arnold capture Ticonderoga.—The British are reinforced.—Gage's plans.—The Americans fortify Breed's Hill.—The battle.—Excitement of the people.—The North Carolinians declare independence.—The Colonial Congress assembles.—Washington commander-in-chief.—Sketch of his life.—Organization of the army.—Royal rule is overthrown.—Struggle with Dunmore.—Expedition against Quebec.—Led by Schuyler, Montgomery, and Arnold.—Montgomery takes Montreal.—Arnold's march.—He and Montgomery unite against Quebec.—The town is invested.—The assault and defeat.—Fall of Montgomery.—Canada evacuated.

CHAPTER XXXVII.

THE WORK OF '76.

AT last came the king's answer to the appeal of Congress. The petition of the colonies was rejected with contempt. By this tyrannical answer the day of independence was brought nearer. Meanwhile, General Howe had succeeded Gage in command of the British troops in Boston.

2. All winter long, the city was besieged by Washington. By the first of spring, 1776, he felt himself strong enough to risk an assault; the officers of his staff thought otherwise, and a different plan was adopted. It was resolved to seize Dorchester Heights and drive Howe out of Boston.

3. For two days the attention of the British was drawn by a fire from the American batteries. On the night of the 4th of March, a detachment set out under cover of the darkness and reached the Heights unperceived. The British noticed nothing unusual; but, when morning dawned, Howe saw at a glance that he must carry the American position or abandon the city. He accordingly ordered two thousand four hundred men to storm the Heights before nightfall.



SIEGE OF BOSTON, 1776.

4. Washington visited the trenches and exhorted his men. It was the anniversary of the Boston Massacre. A battle was momentarily expected; but while the British delayed, a storm arose and rendered the harbor impassable. It continued to blow for a whole day, and the attack could not be made. Before the following morning the Americans had so strengthened their fortifications that all thoughts of an assault were abandoned. Howe found himself reduced to the extremity of giving up the capital of New England.

5. After some days there was an agreement between Washington and the British general that the latter should retire from Boston unmolested on condition that the city should not be burned. On the 17th of March, the whole British army went on board the fleet and sailed away. The American advance at once entered the city. On the 20th, Washington made a formal entry at the head of the triumphant army. The country was wild with delight. Congress ordered a gold medal to be struck in honor of Washington, victorious over the enemy.

6. In a short time, the commander-in-chief repaired with the army to New York. General Lee pressed forward with the Connecticut militia, and reached that city just in time to baffle an

attempt of Sir Henry Clinton, whose fleet arrived off Sandy Hook. Clinton next sailed southward, and was joined by Sir Peter Parker and Lord Cornwallis with two thousand five hundred men. The force of the British was deemed sufficient to capture Charleston.

7. The Carolinians, led by General Lee, rose in arms and flocked to Charleston. The city was fortified; and a fort, which commanded the entrance to the harbor, was built on Sullivan's Island. On the 4th of June, the British squadron came in sight. On the 28th, the British fleet began a bombardment of the fortress, which was commanded by Colonel Moultrie. The vessels of the fleet poured a tempest of balls upon the fort; but the walls, built of palmetto, were little injured. The flag-staff was shot away, but Sergeant Jasper leaped down from the wall, recovered the flag, and set it in its place again. As evening drew on, the British were obliged to retire with a loss of two hundred men. The loss of the garrison amounted to thirty-two. As soon as the British could repair their fleet, they set sail for New York.

8. During the summer, Washington's forces were increased to twenty-seven thousand men; but the effective force was little more than half that number. Great Britain was making the vastest preparations. By a treaty with some of the German States, seventeen thousand Hessians were hired to fight against America. Twenty-five thousand English troops were levied; and a million dollars were voted for the expenses of the war.

9. Thus far the colonists had claimed to be loyal subjects of Great Britain. Now the case seemed hopeless. The people urged the general assemblies, and the general assemblies urged Congress, to a declaration of independence. Congress responded by recommending the colonies to adopt such governments as might best conduce to the safety of the people.

10. On the 7th of June, 1776, Richard Henry Lee of Virginia offered a resolution in Congress declaring that the United Colonies are, and of right ought to be, *free and independent States*. A long and exciting debate ensued. The final consideration of Lee's resolution was postponed until the 1st of July. On the 11th of June, Thomas Jefferson, John Adams, Benjamin Frank-

lin, Roger Sherman, and Robert R. Livingston, were appointed a committee to prepare a formal declaration.

11. On the 1st of July, the committee's report was laid before Congress. On the next day Lee's resolution was adopted. During the 3d, the formal declaration was debated with great spirit. The discussion was resumed on the 4th, and at two o'clock in the afternoon, the DECLARATION OF AMERICAN INDEPENDENCE was adopted by a unanimous vote.

12. The old bellman of the State House rang out the note of freedom to the nation. The multitudes caught the signal and answered with shouts. Everywhere the declaration was received with enthusiastic applause. At Philadelphia the king's arms were torn down and burned in the street. At Williamsburg, Charleston, and Savannah there were bonfires. At Boston the declaration was read in Faneuil Hall. At New York the populace pulled down the statue of George III. *and cast it into bullets.* Washington ordered the declaration to be read at the head of each brigade.

13. The leading principles of the Declaration of Independence are these: That all men are created equal; that governments are instituted for the welfare of the people; that the people have a right to alter their government; that the government of George III. had become destructive of liberty; that the king's tyranny over his American subjects was no longer endurable; and that, therefore, the United Colonies of America are, and of right ought to be, free and independent States.

14. Early in July, General Howe landed a force of nine thousand men on Staten Island. Thither Clinton came from the siege of Charleston, and Admiral Howe from England. The whole British force in the vicinity of New York amounted to thirty thousand men. Nearly half of them were Hessians. Washington's army was greatly inferior in numbers and discipline.

15. Lord Howe had been instructed to try conciliatory measures with the Americans. First, he sent to the American camp a despatch directed to George Washington, *Esquire.* Washington refused to receive a communication which did not recognize his official position. Howe then sent another message, addressed to George Washington, etc., etc., etc.; and the bearer insisted that

and-so-forth might mean *General of the American Army.* But Washington sent the officer away. It was known that Howe's authority extended only to granting pardons, and to this Washington replied that since no offence had been committed no pardon was required.

16. Lord Howe and his brother at once began hostilities. On the 22d of August, the British, to the number of ten thousand, landed on Long Island. The Americans, about eight thousand strong, were posted in the vicinity of Brooklyn. On the morning of the 27th of August, Grant's division of the British army proceeded as far as Greenwood Cemetery, where he was met by General Stirling with fifteen hundred men; and the battle at once began. In this part of the field there was no decisive result. General Heister, in command of the British centre, advanced beyond Flatbush, and engaged the main body of the Americans, under General Sullivan. Here the Hessians gained little or no ground until Sullivan was suddenly alarmed by the noise of battle on his left and rear.



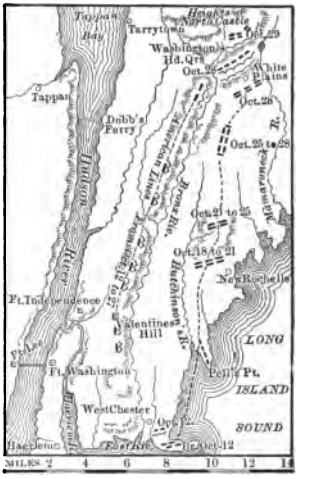
BATTLE OF LONG ISLAND, 1776.

17. General Putnam had neglected to guard the passes on the left of the American army. During the night General Clinton had occupied the heights above the Jamaica road, and now his division came down by way of Bedford. Sullivan found himself surrounded and cut off. The men fought bravely, and many broke through the lines of the British. The rest were scattered, killed, or taken prisoners.

18. Cornwallis, attempting to cut off Stirling's retreat, was repulsed. Most of Stirling's men reached the American lines at Brooklyn. Generals Stirling, Sullivan, and Woodhull were taken prisoners. Nearly a thousand patriots were killed or missing. It seemed an easy thing for Clinton and Howe to capture all the rest.

19. Washington, perceiving that he could not hold his position, resolved to withdraw to New York. The enterprise was extremely hazardous. At eight o'clock on the evening of the 29th, the embarkation of the army began. All night with muffled oars the boatmen rowed silently back and forth. At daylight on the following morning, the movement was discovered by the British. They rushed into the American entrenchments, and found nothing but a few worthless guns.

20. The defeat on Long Island was very disastrous to the American cause. Many of the troops returned to their homes. Only by constant exertion did Washington keep his army from disbanding. The British fleet anchored within cannon-shot of New York. Washington retired to the Heights of Harlem. On the 15th of September, the British landed three miles above New York. Thence they extended their lines across the island and took possession of the city.



SCENE OF OPERATIONS ABOUT NEW YORK, 1776.

21. On the following day, there was a skirmish between the advance parties of the two armies. The British were driven back with a loss of a hundred men. On the 16th of October, Howe embarked his forces, passed into Long Island Sound, and landed in the vicinity of Westchester. The object was to get upon the American flank and cut off communications with the Eastern States. Washington detected the movement, and faced the British east of Harlem River. On the 28th a battle was brought on at White Plains. Howe began the engagement with a cannonade, which was answered with spirit. The Americans were driven from one position, but entrenched themselves in another. Night came on; and Washington withdrew to the heights of North Castle. Howe remained for a few days at White Plains, and then returned to New York.

22. Washington now crossed to the west bank of the Hudson

and took post at Fort Lee. Four thousand men were left at North Castle under General Lee. Fort Washington, on Manhattan Island, was defended by three thousand men under Colonel Magaw. The skillful construction of this fort had attracted the attention of Washington, and led to an acquaintance with the engineer, ALEXANDER HAMILTON, then a stripling but twenty years of age.

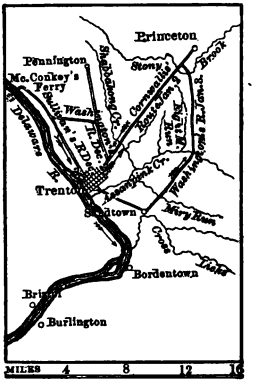
23. On the 16th of November, Fort Washington was captured by the British. The garrison were made prisoners of war and crowded into the jails of New York. Two days after the surrender, Fort Lee was taken by Lord Cornwallis. Washington with his army, now reduced to three thousand men, retreated to Newark; but Cornwallis and Knyphausen came hard after the fugitives. The patriots continued their flight to Princeton, and finally to Trenton on the Delaware. Nothing but the skill of Washington saved the remnant of his forces from destruction.

24. On the 8th of December, Washington crossed the Delaware. Cornwallis, having no boats, was obliged to wait for the freezing of the river. The British army was stationed in the towns and villages east of the Delaware. Trenton was held by two thousand Hessians under Colonel Rahl. It was seen that as soon as the river should be frozen the British would march into Philadelphia. Congress accordingly adjourned to Baltimore.

25. On the same day that Washington crossed the Delaware, the islands of Rhode Island and Conanicut were taken by Admiral Parker's fleet; and the American squadron under Commander Hopkins was blockaded in Blackstone River. During his retreat across New Jersey, Washington sent despatches to General Lee, at North Castle, to join the main army as soon as possible. That officer marched with his command as far as Morristown, and then took up his quarters at Basking Ridge. On the 13th of December, a squad of British cavalry captured Lee and hurried him off to New York. General Sullivan took command of Lee's division, and hastened to join Washington. The entire American force now amounted to a little more than six thousand.

26. The tide of misfortune turned at last. Washington saw in the disposition of the British forces an opportunity to strike a blow

for his country. The leaders of the enemy were off their guard. The Hessians on the east side of the river were spread out from Trenton to Burlington. Washington conceived the design of crossing the Delaware and striking the detachment at Trenton before a concentration of the enemy's forces could be effected. The American army was arranged in three divisions. The first, under General Cadwallader, was to cross the river at Bristol. General Ewing was to pass over a little below Trenton. Washington himself, with twenty-four hundred men, was to cross nine miles above Trenton, march down the river and assault the town. Christmas night was selected as the time for the movement.



BATTLES OF TRENTON AND PRINCETON, 1776-7.

27. The Delaware was filled with floating ice. Ewing and Cadwallader were both baffled in their efforts to cross the river. Washington, having succeeded in getting over, divided his army into two columns and pressed forward. At eight o'clock in the morning the Americans came rushing into the village from both directions. The Hessians sprang from their quarters and attempted to form in line. Colonel Rahl was mortally wounded. Nearly a thousand of the Hessians threw down their arms and begged for quarter. Before nightfall Washington, with his army and the whole body of captives, was safe on the other side of the Delaware.

28. The battle of Trenton roused the nation from despondency. The militia flocked to the general's standard; and fourteen hundred soldiers, whose term of enlistment now expired, reëntered the service. Robert Morris, the great financier of the Revolution, came forward with his fortune to the support of his country.

29. Three days after his victory, Washington again crossed the Delaware. Here all the American detachments in the vicinity were ordered to assemble. To General Heath, stationed at Peekskill, Washington sent orders to move into New Jersey. The British fell back from their outposts and concentrated at Princeton. Cornwallis resumed command in person. So closed the year. Ten

days previously, Howe only waited for the freezing of the Delaware before taking up his quarters in Philadelphia. Now it was a question whether he would be able to hold a single town in New Jersey.

RECAPITULATION.

The king answers the colonies.—Howe succeeds Gage.—Siege of Boston.—The British evacuate the city.—The Americans enter.—Public rejoicings.—Washington goes to New York.—Clinton threatens the city.—Cornwallis and Parker proceed against Charleston.—Rising of the Carolinians.—The attack on Moultrie.—Distresses of the army.—Great Britain hires the Hessians.—And makes new levies.—The question of independence.—Lee's resolutions.—A committee is appointed.—The Declaration of Independence adopted.—Its leading principles.—Howe returns.—Attempts to open negotiations.—The British advance on Long Island.—The battle.—Washington saves the army.—Discouragement of the people.—The British take New York.—Movements of the two armies.—Battle of White Plains.—Notice of Hamilton.—The capture of Fort Washington.—Fort Lee is taken.—The Americans retreat across New Jersey.—British successes in Rhode Island.—Lee's capture.—Washington recruits his army.—Recrosses the Delaware.—Defeats the British at Trenton.—Effect of the battle.—Alarm of the British.—Robert Morris to the rescue.—The situation.

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

OPERATIONS OF '77.

ON the 1st of January, 1777, Washington's army at Trenton numbered about five thousand men. On the next day, Cornwallis approached with greatly superior forces. During the afternoon, there was severe skirmishing along the roads east of Trenton. Washington took up a new position south of Assanpink Creek. The British, attempting to force a passage, were driven back; and Cornwallis deferred the main attack till the morrow.

2. During the night, Washington called a council of war, and it was determined to leave the camp, pass the British left flank, and

strike the enemy at Princeton. The baggage was removed to Burlington. The camp-fires were brightly kindled and kept burning through the night. Then the army was put in motion towards Princeton. Everything was done in silence. The morning light showed the British sentries a deserted camp.

3. At sunrise Washington was entering Princeton. At the same time the British were marching out to reïnforce Cornwallis. The Americans met them in the edge of the village, and the battle at once began. The British charged bayonets, and the militia gave way in confusion. General Mercer received a mortal wound. But the Pennsylvania regulars, led by the commander-in-chief, stood their ground. Washington rallied his men with the greatest bravery; and the British were routed, with a loss of four hundred and thirty men in killed, wounded and missing.

4. Washington, fearing the approach of Cornwallis, hastily withdrew to the north, and on the 5th of January, took a position at Morristown. Cornwallis retired to New Brunswick. In a short time the greater part of New Jersey was recovered by the patriots. Cornwallis gradually contracted his lines until his whole force was cooped up in New Brunswick and Amboy.

5. In the early spring, the American stores at Peekskill were destroyed by the British. On the 13th of April, Cornwallis surprised General Lincoln, on the Raritan; but the latter made good his retreat. On the 25th of the month, General Tryon, with a detachment of two thousand men, proceeded against Danbury, Connecticut. After burning the town, the British were attacked by the patriots under Wooster and Arnold, and lost two hundred men. The veteran Wooster fell in this engagement.

6. On the night of the 22d of May, Colonel Meigs, of Connecticut, embarked two hundred men in whale-boats, crossed the sound, and attacked Sag Harbor. The British were overpowered; only four of them escaped; five or six were killed, and the remaining ninety were made prisoners. The stores were destroyed by the patriots, who, without the loss of a man, returned to Guilford. Colonel Meigs was rewarded with an elegant sword from Congress.

7. The patriot forces of the North were now concentrated on the Hudson; and a camp, under Arnold, was laid out on the Delaware.

In the latter part of May, Washington broke up his winter-quarters and took an advantageous position only ten miles from the British camp. Howe crossed over from New York and threatened an attack upon the American lines. For a month, the two armies countermarched and skirmished. Finally, the British retired to Amboy, and on the 30th of June crossed over to Staten Island.

8. On the 10th of July, General Prescott of the British army was captured at a farm-house near Newport, by Colonel William Barton and forty volunteers. This lucky exploit gave the Americans an officer of equal rank to exchange for General Lee. Colonel Barton was rewarded with an elegant sword by Congress. That body had, in the mean time, returned to Philadelphia.

9. From the beginning of the war, the people of France had been friendly to the American cause. By and by, their sympathy became more outspoken. The French ministers would do nothing openly to provoke a war with Great Britain; but secretly they rejoiced at every British misfortune. The Americans came to understand that if money was required, France would lend it; if arms were to be purchased, France had arms to sell. During the year 1777, the French managed to supply the colonies with twenty thousand muskets and a thousand barrels of powder.

10. At last the republicans of France began to embark for America. Foremost of all came the young MARQUIS OF LA FAYETTE. Fitting a vessel at his own expense, he eluded the officers, and with the brave De Kalb and a small company of followers reached South Carolina, in April of 1777. He entered the army as a volunteer, and in the following July, was commissioned a major-general.

11. One of the most important events of the war was the campaign of General Burgoyne. Superseding Sir Guy Carleton in command of the English forces in Canada, he spent the spring of 1777 in organizing an army of ten thousand men for the invasion of New York. The force consisted of British, Hessians, Canadians, and Indians. The plan of the campaign embraced a descent upon Albany and New York, and the cutting off of New England from the Middle and Southern colonies.

12. On the 1st of June, Burgoyne reached Lake Champlain, and on the 16th proceeded to Crown Point. This place was occupied

by the British; and on the 5th of July, Ticonderoga, which was defended by three thousand men under General St. Clair, was captured. The garrison retreated to Hubbardton, Vermont. Here an engagement ensued, in which the Americans fought so obstinately as to check the pursuit. On the following day, the British reached Whitehall and captured a large quantity of stores.

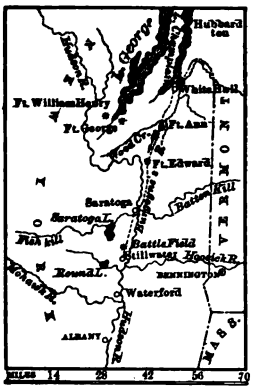


GENERAL JOHN BURGOYNE.

13. At this time the American army of the North was commanded by General Schuyler. His forces, numbering between four and five thousand, were at Fort Edward. This place was captured by Burgoyne on the 30th of July, the Americans retreating down the Hudson. The British general now despatched Colonels Baum and Breymann, with a strong detachment, to seize the stores at Bennington, Vermont. Colonel John Stark rallied the New Hampshire militia, and on the 15th of August, met the British near the village. On the following morning, there was a furious battle, in which Baum's force was completely routed. The British lost in killed, wounded, and prisoners more than eight hundred men. The country was thrilled by the victory.

14. A few days after the battle of Bennington, Burgoyne received intelligence of a still greater reverse. At the beginning of the invasion a large force of Canadians and Indians, commanded by General St. Leger, had been sent against Fort Schuyler, on the Mohawk. On the 3d of August, St. Leger invested the fort. General Herkimer rallied the militia of the country, but was defeated with a loss of a hundred and sixty men. Meanwhile, however, General Arnold had led a detachment from the Hudson for

the relief of the fort. At his approach the savages fled. St. Leger, dismayed at their treachery, raised the siege and retreated. Such was the news that was borne to Burgoyne at Fort Edward.



SCENE OF BURGOYNE'S INVASION, 1777.

15. The British general lost a month in procuring supplies from Canada. He now found himself hemmed in by nine thousand patriot soldiers. General Lincoln arrived with the militia of New England. Washington sent several detachments from the regular army. Morgan came with his riflemen. General Gates superseded Schuyler in command of the northern army. On the 8th of September, the American headquarters were advanced to Stillwater. On the 14th of the month, Burgoyne crossed the Hudson and took post at Saratoga. The two armies now came face to face. On the 19th, a general battle ensued, continuing until nightfall. The conflict, though severe, was indecisive; the Americans retired within their lines, and the British slept on the field. To the patriots the result of the battle was equivalent to a victory.

16. The condition of Burgoyne grew critical. His supplies failed; his Canadian and Indian allies deserted his standard. Meanwhile, General Clinton, who commanded the British army in New York, sailed up the river and captured Forts Clinton and Montgomery. But nothing further was accomplished, and Burgoyne became desperate. On the 7th of October, he hazarded another battle, in which he lost his bravest officers and nearly seven hundred privates. The brave General Fraser, who commanded the British right, was killed. His disheartened men turned and fled from the field. On the American side, Arnold was the inspiring genius of the battle. The Americans were completely victorious.

17. Burgoyne now began a retreat, and on the 9th of October, reached Saratoga. Here he was intercepted by Gates and Lincoln, and driven to surrender. On the 17th of October, terms of capitulation were agreed on, and the whole army, numbering five thou-

sand seven hundred and ninety-one, became prisoners of war. Among the captives were six members of the British Parliament. Forty-two pieces of brass artillery, five thousand muskets, and an immense quantity of stores were the fruits of the victory.

18. As soon as the invasion was at an end, a large portion of the army was despatched to aid Washington. For, in the mean time, a great campaign had been in progress in the South; and the patriots were sorely pressed. On the 23d of July, Howe had sailed from New York, with eighteen thousand men, to attack Philadelphia. Learning that the Americans had obstructed the Delaware, he determined to change his plan, enter the Chesapeake, and make the attack by land. Washington advanced his headquarters from Philadelphia to Wilmington. The American army, numbering between eleven and twelve thousand men, was concentrated at that place. The forces of Howe were vastly superior, but Washington hoped to beat back the invaders and save the capital.

19. On the 25th of August, the British landed at Elk River, in Maryland, and began their march toward Philadelphia. Washington selected the Brandywine as his line of defence. The left wing was stationed at Chad's Ford, while the right, under General Sullivan, was extended up the river. On the 11th of September, the British reached the opposite bank and began battle. The Hessians under Knyphausen attacked at the ford; but the British, led by Cornwallis and Howe, marched up the Brandywine and crossed above the American right. Sullivan allowed himself to be outflanked. Washington was misled by false information; the right wing was crushed in by Cornwallis; and the day was lost.

20. During the night the patriots retreated to Westchester. The loss of the Americans amounted to a thousand men; that of the British to five hundred and eighty-four. La Fayette was severely wounded. Count Pulaski so distinguished himself in this engagement that Congress honored him with the rank of brigadier. Washington continued his retreat as far as Germantown. On the 15th of the month, he recrossed the Schuylkill and met Howe at Warren's Tavern. A spirited skirmish ensued, and a great battle was imminent. But just as the conflict was beginning, a violent tempest swept over the field. The combatants were deluged, their

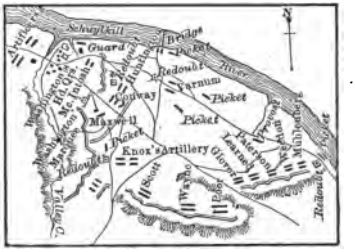
cartridges soaked, and fighting made impossible. Washington still attempted to keep between the British and the city. But Howe succeeded in crossing the Schuylkill, and hastened to Philadelphia. On the 26th of September, the city was taken, and the main division of the British army encamped at Germantown.

21. Congress adjourned, first to Lancaster, and afterward to York, where they held their sessions until the next summer. Washington now made his camp on Skippack Creek, twenty miles from the city. On the night of the 3d of October, he attempted to surprise the British at Germantown. But the roads were rough, and the different columns reached the British outposts at irregular intervals. There was much severe fighting, and at one time it seemed that the British would be overwhelmed; but they gained possession of a large stone house and could not be dislodged. The tide turned against the patriots, and the day was lost. Of the Americans about a thousand were killed, wounded, and missing. The British loss was five hundred and thirty-five.

22. On the 22d of October, Fort Mercer, on the Delaware, was assaulted by twelve hundred Hessians. Count Donop, the commander, and nearly four hundred of his men, fell before the American entrenchments. At the same time the British fleet attacked Fort Mifflin on Mud Island. A siege ensued, lasting till the 15th of November. Then at midnight the fortress was set on fire, and the garrison escaped to Fort Mercer. On the 20th of November this fort was also abandoned to the British. General Howe thus obtained control of the Delaware.

23. After the battle of Germantown, Washington took up his headquarters at Whitemarsh. The patriots began to suffer for food and clothing. On the evening of the 2d of December, Howe held a council of war at the house of Lydia Darrah in Philadelphia. It was decided to surprise Washington in his camp. But Lydia, who overheard the plans of Howe, left the city on pretence of *going to mill*, rode to the American lines, and gave the alarm. When, on the morning of the 4th, the British approached Whitemarsh, they found the cannons mounted and the patriots in order of battle. The British general manœuvred for four days, and then marched back to Philadelphia.

24. On the 11th of December, Washington went into winter-quarters at Valley Forge, on the right bank of the Schuylkill. Thousands of the soldiers were without shoes, and the frozen ground was marked with bloody footprints. Log cabins were built, and everything was done that *could* be done to secure the comfort of the suffering patriots. But it was a long and dreary winter. These were the darkest days of Washington's life. Congress in a measure abandoned him. The success of the army of the North was unjustly compared with the reverses of the army of the South. Many men high in military and civil station left the great leader unsupported. But the allegiance of the army remained unshaken, and the nation's confidence in the chieftain became stronger than ever. At the close of 1777, the patriot cause was obscured with clouds and misfortune.



ENCAMPMENT AT VALLEY FORGE, 1777-8.

RECAPITULATION.

The British advance against Trenton.—Washington withdraws his forces.—Wins a victory.—Takes post at Morristown.—The British at New Brunswick.—Destruction of stores at Peekskill.—Lincoln attacked at Boundbrook.—Tryon burns Danbury.—Meigs takes Sag Harbor.—Washington advances into New Jersey.—The British threaten Philadelphia.—Leave New Jersey.—Barton captures Prescott.—Congress returns to Philadelphia.—Help from France.—Coming of La Fayette and De Kalb.—Burgoyne's campaign.—Fall of Crown Point and Ticonderoga.—The battle of Hubbardton.—Capture of Whitehall.—Fort Edward is taken.—Schuyler retreats.—The battle of Bennington.—St. Leger besieges Fort Schuyler.—Herkimer is defeated.—Arnold advances.—St. Leger retreats.—Discouragement of Burgoyne.—The battle of Saratoga.—A diversion is attempted by Clinton.—The second battle.—Burgoyne is driven to surrender.—The army of the North relieves Washington.—The movement of Howe against Philadelphia.—He enters the Chesapeake.—The battle of Brandywine.—Retreat of the Americans.—Washington advances to Warren's Tavern.—A storm prevents the battle.—The British capture Philadelphia.—Congress at Lancaster.—Washington on Skippack Creek.—The battle of Germantown.—Capture of Forts Mercer and Mifflin.—The Americans at Whitemarsh.—Adventure of Lydia Darrah.—The British winter at Philadelphia.—The Americans at Valley Forge.—Sorrows of Washington.

CHAPTER XXXIX.

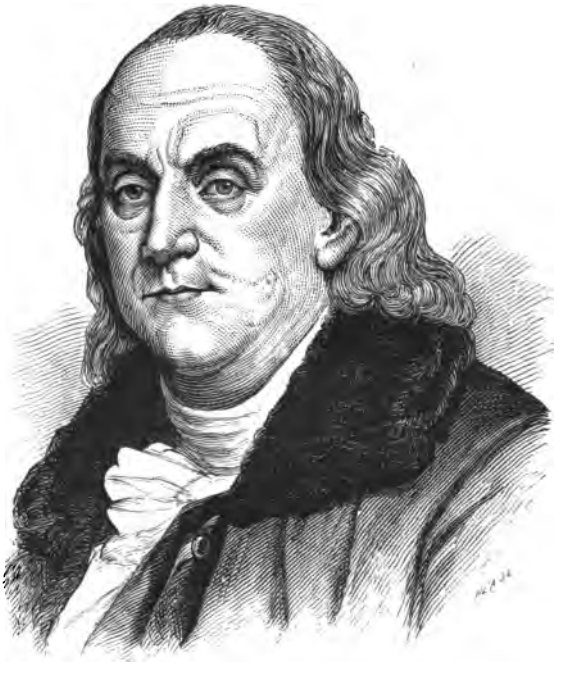
FRANCE TO THE RESCUE.

IN November of 1776, Silas Deane of Connecticut was appointed commissioner to France. His first service was to make a secret arrangement to supply the Americans with materials for carrying on the war. In the autumn of 1777, a ship, laden with two hundred thousand dollars' worth of arms, ammunition and specie, was sent to America. In that ship came Baron Steuben, who was commissioned by Congress as inspector-general of the army.

2. Arthur Lee and Benjamin Franklin were also appointed by Congress to negotiate a treaty with the French king. In December of 1776, they reached Paris and began their duties. For a long time King Louis and his minister stood aloof from the proposed alliance. They hated Great Britain, and gave secret encouragement to the colonies; but an open treaty with the Americans was equivalent to a war with England, and that the French court dreaded.

3. Now it was that the genius of Dr. Franklin shone with a peculiar lustre. At the gay court of Louis XVI. he stood as the representative of his country. His wit and genial humor made him admired; his talents and courtesy commanded respect; his patience and perseverance gave him final success. During the whole of 1777, he remained at Paris and Versailles. At last came the news of Burgoyne's surrender. A powerful British army had been subdued by the colonists without aid from abroad. The success of the American arms induced the king to accept the proposed alliance with the colonies. On the 6th of February, 1778, a treaty was concluded; France acknowledged the independence of the United States, and entered into relations of friendship with the new nation.

4. BENJAMIN FRANKLIN, the author of the first treaty between the United States and a foreign nation, was born in Boston on the 17th of January, 1706. His father was a manufacturer of soap and candles. At the age of twelve, Benjamin was apprenticed to his brother to learn the art of printing. In 1723 he went to Philadelphia, entered a printing-office, and rose to distinction. He visited England; returned; founded the first circulating library in America; edited *Poor Richard's Almanac;* discovered the identity of electricity and lightning; espoused the patriot cause; and devoted his old age to perfecting the American Union. The name of Franklin is one of the brightest in history.



BENJAMIN FRANKLIN.

5. In May of 1778, Congress ratified the treaty with France. A month previously, a French fleet, under Count d'Estaing, had been sent to America. Both France and Great Britain immediately prepared for war. George III. now became willing to treat with his American subjects. Lord North brought forward two bills in which everything that the colonists had claimed was conceded. The bills were passed by Parliament, and the king assented. Commissioners were sent to America; but Congress in-

formed them that nothing but an acknowledgment of the independence of the United States would now be accepted.

6. The British army remained at Philadelphia until June of 1778. The fleet of Admiral Howe lay in the Delaware. When the rumor came that the fleet of D'Estaing was approaching, the English admiral set sail for New York. On the 18th of June, the British army evacuated Philadelphia and retreated across New Jersey. Washington occupied the city, and followed the retreating foe. At Monmouth the British were overtaken. On the morning of the 28th, General Lee was ordered to attack the enemy. The American cavalry under La Fayette was driven back by Cornwallis. Lee ordered his line to retire to a stronger position; but the troops mistook the order and began a retreat. Washington met the fugitives and administered a severe rebuke to Lee. The fight continued till nightfall, and Washington anxiously waited for the morning. During the night, however, Clinton withdrew his forces and escaped.

7. The loss of the Americans was two hundred and twenty-seven. The British left nearly three hundred dead on the field. On the day after the battle, Washington received an insulting letter from Lee demanding an apology. Washington replied that his language had been warranted by the circumstances. Lee answered in a still more offensive manner, and was thereupon arrested, tried by a court-martial, and dismissed from his command for twelve months. He never reëntered the service, and did not live to see his country's independence.

8. The British forces were now concentrated at New York. Washington took up his headquarters at White Plains. On the 11th of July, Count d'Estaing's fleet attempted to attack the British squadron in the bay; but the bar at the entrance prevented the passage of the French vessels. D'Estaing next sailed for Rhode Island, and General Sullivan proceeded to Providence to coöperate with him in an attack on Newport. On the 9th of August, Sullivan secured a favorable position on the island. A joint attack by land and sea was planned for the following day. On that morning the fleet of Lord Howe came in sight; and D'Estaing sailed out to give battle. Just as the two squadrons

were about to begin an engagement, a storm arose by which the fleets were parted and greatly damaged. D'Estaing repaired to Boston, and Howe returned to New York.

9. Sullivan laid siege to Newport, but soon found it necessary to retreat. The British pursued, and a battle was fought in which the enemy was repulsed with a loss of two hundred and sixty men. On the following night, Sullivan succeeded in escaping from the island. General Clinton returned to New York.



JOSEPH BRANDT.

10. The command of the British naval forces was now transferred to Admiral Byron. Early in October, a band of incendiaries, led by Colonel Ferguson, burned the American ships at Little Egg Harbor. In the preceding July, Major John Butler, in command of sixteen hundred loyalists, Canadians, and Indians, marched into the valley of Wyoming, Pennsylvania. The settlement was defenceless. On the approach of the tories and savages, a few militia, old men, and boys, rallied to protect their homes. A battle was fought, and the patriots were routed. The fugitives fled to a fort, which was crowded with women and children. Honorable terms were promised by Butler, and the garrison capitulated. On the 5th of July, the gates were opened and the barbarians entered. Immediately they began to plunder and butcher. Nearly all the prisoners fell under the hatchet and the scalping-knife.

11. In November there was a similar massacre at Cherry Valley, New York. The invaders were led by Joseph Brandt, chief of the Mohawks, and Walter Butler, a son of Major John But-

ler. The people of Cherry Valley were driven from their homes; women and children were tomahawked and scalped; and forty prisoners dragged into captivity. To avenge these outrages, an expedition was sent against the savages on the Susquehanna; and they in turn were made to feel the terrors of war. In the spring of 1778, Major Clarke marched against the Indians west of the Alleghanies. The expedition descended to the mouth of the Ohio; and, on the 4th of the following July, captured Kaskaskia. Other important posts were taken; and, on the 26th of February, 1779, Vincennes was forced to capitulate.

12. On the 3d of November, Count d'Estaing's fleet sailed for the West Indies. In December Admiral Byron left New York to try the fortunes of war on the ocean. Colonel Campbell, with two thousand men, was sent by General Clinton for the conquest of Georgia. On the 29th of December, the expedition reached Savannah. The place was defended by General Robert Howe with eight hundred men. A battle was fought, and the Americans were driven out of the city. The patriots crossed into South Carolina and found refuge at Charleston. Such was the only real conquest made by the British during the year 1778.

RECAPITULATION.

Silas Deane is sent to France.—The French favor the Americans.—Supplies are sent to the patriots.—Steuben arrives.—Lee and Franklin are appointed to negotiate a treaty.—Franklin's influence.—A treaty is concluded.—Sketch of Franklin.—Arrival of D'Estaing's fleet.—War threatened between France and England.—Efforts of Great Britain for peace.—The British fleet at Philadelphia.—The city evacuated.—Washington pursues.—The battle of Monmouth.—Lee disobeys orders.—Is court-martialed and dismissed.—British concentrate at New York.—The city is threatened by D'Estaing.—He sails against Rhode Island.—Sullivan coöperates against Newport.—Howe follows D'Estaing.—Both squadrons shattered by a storm.—The siege of Newport.—Abandonment of the enterprise.—Destruction of American shipping.—Byron succeeds Howe.—Marauding of the British.—The Wyoming massacre.—Ruin of Cherry Valley.—The expedition of Major Clarke.—The French and British fleets sail away.—A force is sent against Savannah.—Capture of the city.

CHAPTER XL.

MOVEMENTS OF '79.

THE winter of 1778–79 was passed by the American army at Middlebrook. There was much discouragement among the soldiers; for they were neither paid nor fed. But the influence of Washington prevented a mutiny. In February, Governor Tryon of New York marched with fifteen hundred regulars and tories to destroy the salt-works at Horse Neck, Connecticut. General Putnam rallied the militia and made a brave defence. The Americans were finally outflanked by the British and obliged to fly. It was here that General Putnam, when about to be overtaken, spurred his horse down a precipice and escaped.

2. In the latter part of May, Clinton sailed with an armament up the Hudson to Stony Point. The garrison, unable to resist, escaped from the fortifications. On the first of June, the British bombarded Verplanck's Point, on the other side of the river, and compelled a surrender. In July, Tryon, with twenty-six hundred Hessians and tories, captured New Haven. East Haven and Fairfield were given to the flames. At Norwalk, while the village was burning, Tryon on a neighboring hill, sat in a rocking-chair and laughed heartily at the scene.

3. On the 15th of July, General Wayne marched against Stony Point. In the evening, he halted near the fort and gave his orders. The British pickets were caught and gagged. Everything was done in silence. Muskets were unloaded and bayonets fixed; not a gun was to be fired. The assault was made a little after midnight. The patriots never wavered in the charge. The ramparts were scaled; and the British, finding themselves between two lines of bayonets, cried out for quarter. Sixty-three of the enemy fell; the remaining five hundred and forty-three were made

prisoners. Of the Americans only fifteen were killed and eighty-three wounded. General Wayne secured the ordinance and stores, and then destroyed the fort.

4. Three days afterward, Major Lee captured the British garrison at Jersey city. On the 25th of the month, a fleet was sent against a British post at the mouth of the Penobscot. On the 13th of August, while the American ships were besieging the post, they were attacked and destroyed by a British squadron. In the summer of this year, four thousand six hundred men, led by Generals Sullivan and James Clinton, were sent against the Indians on the Susquehanna. At Elmira the savages and tories had fortified themselves; but on the 29th of August, they were forced from their stronghold and utterly routed. The country between the Susquehanna and the Genesee was wasted by the patriots. Forty Indian villages were destroyed.

5. On the 9th of January, 1779, Fort Sunbury, on St. Catherine's Sound, was captured by the British under General Prevost. This officer then assumed command of the British army in the South. A force of two thousand regulars and loyalists was despatched against Augusta. On the 29th of January, the British reached their destination, and Augusta was taken.

6. In the mean time, the tories, who were advancing to join the British at Augusta, were defeated by the patriots under Captain Anderson. On the 14th of February, they were again overtaken and routed by Colonel Pickens. Colonel Boyd, the tory leader, and seventy of his men were killed. Seventy-five others were captured, and five of the ringleaders hanged. The western half of Georgia was quickly recovered by the patriots.

7. General Ashe was sent with two thousand men to intercept the enemy. On the 25th of February, the Americans crossed the Savannah and pursued Campbell as far as Brier Creek. Here the patriots came to a halt; and General Prevost, marching from Savannah, surrounded Ashe's command. A battle was fought on the 3d of March; the Americans were totally routed and driven into the swamps. By this defeat Georgia was again prostrated, and a royal government was established over the State.

8. Within a month, General Lincoln was again in the field

with five thousand men. He advanced up the left bank of the river in the direction of Augusta; but, at the same time, General Prevost crossed the Savannah and marched against Charleston. General Lincoln turned back to attack him, and the British made a hasty retreat. The Americans overtook the enemy at Stono Ferry, ten miles west of Charleston, but were repulsed with considerable loss. Prevost then fell back to Savannah. From June until September, military operations were suspended.

9. Count d'Estaing now arrived with his fleet from the West Indies to coöperate with Lincoln in the reduction of Savannah. Prevost concentrated his forces for the defence of the city. On the 12th of September, the French, numbering six thousand, effected a landing, and advanced to the siege. Eleven days elapsed before General Lincoln arrived with his forces. On the 16th of the month, D'Estaing demanded a surrender; but Prevost answered with a message of defiance. The siege was pressed with vigor, and the city constantly bombarded. But the defences remained unshaken. At last D'Estaing notified Lincoln that the city must be stormed. It was determined to make the assault on the morning of the 9th of October.

10. Before sunrise the allies advanced against the redoubts of the British. The attack was made with great vehemence. At one time it seemed that the works would be carried. The flags of Carolina and France were planted on the parapet, but were soon hurled down. Sergeant Jasper, the hero of Fort Moultrie, was killed. The allied columns were driven back with fearful losses. Count Pulaski was struck with a grape-shot, and borne dying from the field. D'Estaing retired on board the fleet, and Lincoln retreated to Charleston.

11. On the 23d of September, Paul Jones, cruising off the coast of Scotland with a fleet of French and American vessels, fell in with a British squadron, and a bloody battle ensued. The *Serapis*, a British frigate of forty-four guns, engaged the *Poor Richard* within musket-shot. At last the vessels were lashed together, and the *Serapis* struck her colors. Jones transferred his men to the conquered ship, and the *Poor Richard* went down. Of the three hundred and seventy-five men on board the fleet of Jones, three hundred were either killed or wounded.

12. So closed the year 1779. The colonies were not yet free. The French alliance had brought but little benefit. The national treasury was bankrupt. The patriots of the army were poorly fed, and paid only with unkept promises. The disposition of Great Britain was still for war. The levies of sailors and soldiers made by Parliament, amounted to a hundred and twenty thousand; while the expenses of the War Department were set at twenty million pounds sterling.

RECAPITULATION.

Hardships of the soldiers.—Tryon's expedition.—Is attacked by the militia.—Putnam's exploit.—Fall of Stony Point and Verplanck's.—Insurrection in Virginia.—Tryon invades Connecticut.—Destruction of East Haven, Fairfield, and Norwalk.—Stony Point is retaken by Wayne.—Lee captures Jersey City.—An American flotilla is lost in the Penobscot.—Sullivan ravages the Indian country.—The British evacuate Rhode Island.—Fort Sunbury is taken.—Fall of Augusta.—Anderson defeats the tories.—Pickens gains a victory.—Augusta is evacuated.—Defeat of Lincoln's army.—He again takes the field.—Is beaten at Stono Ferry.—Suspension of activity.—D'Estaing arrives.—Siege of Savannah.—The assault.—Paul Jones's victory.—The situation.

CHAPTER XLI.

REVERSES AND TREASON.

DURING the year 1780, military operations at the North were suspended. Early in July, Admiral De Ternay arrived at Newport with a French squadron and six thousand land-troops under Count Rochambeau. The Americans were greatly elated at the coming of their allies. In September, the commander-in-chief held a conference with Rochambeau, and the plans of future campaigns were determined.

2. In the South the patriots suffered many reverses. South Carolina was completely overrun by the enemy. On the 11th of February, Admiral Arbuthnot anchored before Charleston. Sir Henry Clinton and five thousand men were on board the fleet.

The city was defended by fourteen hundred men, under General Lincoln. The British effected a landing, and advanced up the right bank of Ashley River. On the 7th of April, Lincoln was reïnforced by seven hundred Virginians. Two days afterward, Arbuthnot succeeded in passing Fort Moultrie, and came within cannon-shot of the city.



SIEGE OF CHARLESTON, 1780.

3. A siege was at once begun, and prosecuted with vigor. Lincoln sent three hundred men under General Huger to scour the country north of Cooper River. Apprised of this movement, Tarleton with the British cavalry stole upon Huger's forces at Monk's Corner, and dispersed the whole company. The city was now fairly hemmed in. From the beginning the defence was hopeless. The fortifications were beaten down, and Lincoln, dreading an assault, agreed to capitulate. On the 12th of May, Charleston was surrendered to the British, and the garrison became prisoners of war.

4. A few days before the surrender, Tarleton surprised and dispersed a body of militia on the Santee. Afterward three expeditions were sent into different sections of the State. The American post at Ninety-Six was seized. A second detachment invaded the country on the Savannah. Cornwallis crossed the Santee and captured Georgetown. Tarleton with seven hundred cavalry overtook the Americans under Colonel Buford, on the Waxhaw, charged upon and scattered the whole command.

5. The authority of Great Britain was reëstablished over South Carolina. Clinton and Arbuthnot returned to New York, and Cornwallis was left to hold the conquered territory. In this condition of affairs, Thomas Sumter and Francis Marion appeared as the protectors of the State. They rallied the militia and began an audacious partisan warfare. Detachments of the British were swept off as though an enemy had fallen on them from the skies. At Rocky Mount, Colonel Sumter burst upon a party of dragoons, who barely saved themselves. On the 6th of August, he attacked a detachment at Hanging Rock, defeated them and retreated. It

was in this battle that young Andrew Jackson, then but thirteen years of age, began his career as a soldier.

6. Marion's company consisted of twenty men and boys, white and black, half clad and poorly armed. But the number increased, and the "Ragged Regiment" soon became a terror to the enemy. There was no telling when or where the sword of the fearless leader would fall. From the swamps at midnight he and his men would suddenly dart upon the encampments of the enemy. During the summer and autumn of 1780 he swept around Cornwallis's positions, cutting his lines of communication and making incessant onsets.

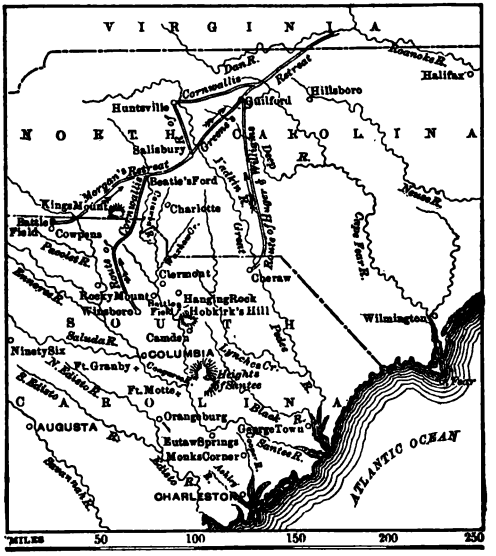


FRANCIS MARION.

7. General Gates now advanced into the Carolinas. Lord Rawdon concentrated his forces at Camden. Hither came Cornwallis with reïnforcements. The Americans took post at Clermont. Cornwallis and Gates each formed the design of surprising the other in the night. On the evening of the 15th of August, they both moved from their camps and met midway on Sander's Creek. After a severe battle the Americans were completely defeated, with a loss of more than a thousand men. Baron De Kalb was mortally wounded. The reputation of Gates was blown away like chaff, and he was superseded by General Greene.

8. A few days after the battle, Sumter's corps was overtaken by Tarleton at Fishing Creek and completely routed. Only Marion remained to harass the enemy. On the 8th of September, the British advanced into North Carolina, and on the 25th reached Charlotte. Colonel Ferguson, with eleven hundred reg-

ulars and tories, was sent into the country west of the Catawba to encourage the loyalists. On the 7th of October, while he and his men were encamped on King's Mountain, they were attacked by a thousand riflemen led by Colonel Campbell. A desperate battle ensued; Ferguson was slain, and three hundred of his men were killed or wounded. The remaining eight hundred threw down their arms and begged for quarter. Ten of the leading tory prisoners were condemned by a court-martial and hanged.



SCENE OF OPERATIONS IN THE SOUTH, 1780-81.

9. Meanwhile, the credit of the nation was sinking to the lowest ebb. Congress resorted to paper money. At first the continental bills were received at par; but the value of the notes rapidly diminished, until, by the middle of 1780, they were not worth two cents to the dollar. Business was paralyzed for the want of a currency; but Robert Morris and a few other wealthy patriots came forward with their private fortunes and saved the colonies from ruin. The mothers of America also lent a helping hand; and the patriot soldiers were supplied with food and clothing.

10. In the midst of the gloom, the country was shocked by the news that Benedict Arnold had turned traitor. After the battle of Bemis's Heights, in the fall of 1777, he had been promoted to the rank of major-general, and made commandant of Philadelphia. Here he married the daughter of a loyalist, and entered upon a career of extravagance which overwhelmed him with debt. He

then began a system of frauds on the commissary department of the army. Charges were preferred against him by Congress, and he was convicted by a court-martial.

11. Seeming to forget his disgrace, Arnold obtained command of the fortress of West Point on the Hudson. On the last day of July, 1780, he assumed control of the arsenal and dépôt of stores at that place. He then entered into a secret correspondence with Sir Henry Clinton, and finally offered to betray his country for gold. It was agreed that the British fleet should ascend the Hudson, and that the garrison and the fortress should be given up without a struggle.



SCENE OF ARNOLD'S TREASON, 1780.

12. On the 21st of September, Clinton sent Major John Andrè to hold a conference with Arnold and make arrangements for the surrender. Andrè, who was adjutant-general of the British army, went in full uniform; and the meeting was held outside of the American lines. About midnight of the 21st, he went ashore from the *Vulture*, and met Arnold in a thicket. Daydawn approached, and the conspirators entered the American lines. Andrè, disguising himself, assumed the character of a spy.

13. During the next day, the business was completed. Arnold agreed to surrender West Point for ten thousand pounds and a commission as brigadier in the British army. Andrè received papers containing a description of West Point, its defences, and the best method of attack. During that day, an American battery drove the *Vulture* down the river; and Andrè was obliged to cross to the other side and return by land. He passed the American outposts in safety; but at Tarrytown he was confronted by three militiamen* who stripped him, found his papers, and delivered

*John Paulding, David Williams and Isaac van Wart. Congress afterward rewarded them with silver medals and pensions for life.

him to Colonel Jameson at North Castle. Arnold, on hearing the news, escaped on board the *Vulture*. Andrè was tried by a court-martial at Tappan, and condemned to death. On the 2d of October, he was led to the gallows, and, under the stern code of war, was hanged.

14. For several years Holland had favored the Americans; now she began negotiations for a treaty similar to that between France and the United States. Great Britain discovered the purposes of the Dutch government, and remonstrated. On the 20th of December, an open declaration of war was made. Thus the Netherlands were added to the enemies of England.

RECAPITULATION.

Operations in the North suspended.—Ternay's fleet arrives.—Campaigns are planned.—Arbuthnot and Clinton besiege Charles on.—The city is taken.—Ravages of Tarleton.—Plan of the British to conquer South Carolina.—Capture of Ninety-Six.—Cornwallis's and Tarleton's successes.—South Carolina is subjugated.—Clinton returns to New York.—Marion's and Sumter's bands.—Their victories.—Gates takes command.—The British at Camden.—Gates advances against them.—Is defeated.—Is superseded by Greene.—Sumter's corps is broken up.—Rawdon advances into North Carolina.—Ferguson's tories are defeated.—Financial distresses.—Sacrifices of Morris.—The treason of Arnold.—Andrè is sent to a conference.—The interview.—Andrè is captured, condemned and executed.—Treaty with Holland.

CHAPTER XLII.

THE END.

FOR the Americans, the year 1781 opened gloomily. The condition of the army was desperate—no food, no pay, no clothing. On the first day of January, the whole Pennsylvania line mutinied and marched on Philadelphia. At Princeton they were met by emissaries from Sir Henry Clinton, and were tempted with offers of money and clothing if they would desert the American standard.

The patriots answered by seizing the British agents and delivering them to General Wayne to be hanged. The commissioners of Congress offered the insurgents a large reward, but the reward was refused; and a few liberal concessions on the part of the government quieted the mutiny.

2. About the middle of the month, the New Jersey brigade revolted. This movement Washington quelled by force. General Howe marched to the camp with five hundred regulars and compelled the mutineers to execute their own leaders. From that day order was restored. Congress was thoroughly alarmed. An agent was sent to France to obtain a loan of money. Robert Morris was appointed secretary of finance; and the Bank of North America was organized to aid the government.

3. On arriving at New York, Arnold received his commission as brigadier in the British army. In the preceding November, Washington and Major Lee had attempted to capture him. Sergeant John Champe undertook the work, deserted to the enemy, entered New York, joined Arnold's company, and concerted measures to abduct him from the city. But Arnold moved his quarters, and the plan was defeated. A month afterward, he was given command of sixteen hundred men, and, on the 16th of December, left New York for Virginia.

4. In January the traitor began war on his countrymen. His proceedings were marked with much ferocity. In the vicinity of Richmond a vast quantity of property was destroyed. Arnold then took up his headquarters in Portsmouth; and Washington again planned his capture. The French fleet was ordered to coöperate with La Fayette in the attempt. But Admiral Arbuthnot drove the French squadron back to Rhode Island. La Fayette abandoned the undertaking, and Arnold again escaped.

5. In April General Phillips arrived at Portsmouth and assumed command of the army. In May Phillips died, and for seven days Arnold held the supreme command of the British forces in Virginia. On the 20th of the month, Lord Cornwallis arrived and ordered him to begone. Returning to New York, he made an expedition against New London, in his native State. Fort Griswold, which was defended by Colonel Ledyard, was carried by

storm. When Ledyard surrendered, seventy-three of the garrison were murdered in cold blood.

6. General Greene was now in command of the American army at Charlotte, North Carolina. Early in January, General Morgan was sent into the Spartanburg district of South Carolina to repress the tories. Colonel Tarleton followed with his cavalry. The Americans took a position at the Cowpens, where, on the 17th of January, they were attacked by the British. Tarleton made the onset with impetuosity; but Morgan's men bravely held their ground. At last the American cavalry, under Colonel William Washington, made a charge and scattered the British dragoons like chaff. Ten British officers and ninety privates were killed.

7. When Cornwallis heard of the battle, he marched up the river to cut off Morgan's retreat. But Greene hastened to the camp of Morgan and took command in person. On the 28th of January, the Americans reached the Catawba and crossed to the northern bank. Within two hours the British arrived at the ford. During the night the rain poured down in torrents; the river was swollen to a flood; and it was many days before the British could cross. Then began a race for the Yadkin.

8. The distance was sixty miles. In two days the Americans reached the river. The crossing was nearly effected, when the British appeared in sight. That night the Yadkin was made impassable by rains, and Cornwallis was again delayed. On the 9th of February, the British succeeded in crossing. The lines of retreat and pursuit were now nearly parallel. A third time the race began, and again the Americans won it. On the 13th, Greene, with the main division, crossed the Dan into Virginia.

9. On the 22d of February, General Greene returned into North Carolina. Meanwhile, Cornwallis had sent Tarleton into the region between the Haw and Deep Rivers to encourage the tories. Three hundred loyalists were already under arms in that neighborhood. While marching to join Tarleton, they were intercepted, and the entire company dispersed by Colonel Lee.

10. Greene's army now numbered more than four thousand men. Determining to avoid battle no longer, he marched to Guilford Court-House. Cornwallis moved forward to the attack. On the

15th of March, the two armies met, and a severe but indecisive battle was fought. The Americans were driven back for several miles; but in killed and wounded the British loss was greatest.

11. Early in April, Cornwallis retreated to Wilmington, and then proceeded to Virginia. The British forces in the Carolinas remained under Lord Rawdon. The American army soon advanced into South Carolina and captured Fort Watson, on the Santee. Greene took post at Hobkirk's Hill, near Camden. On the 25th of April, Rawdon moved against the American camp. A severe battle ensued; and for a while it seemed that the British would be routed. At last, however, the American centre was broken, and the day lost.

12. On the 10th of May, Lord Rawdon retired to Eutaw Springs. The British posts at Orangeburg and Augusta fell into the hands of the patriots. Ninety-Six was besieged by General Greene. The supply of water was cut off from the fort, and the garrison reduced to the point of surrendering, when Rawdon approached, and the Americans were obliged to retreat. General Greene passed the sickly months of summer in the hill-country of the Santee.

13. Sumter, Lee, and Marion were constantly abroad, smiting the tories right and left. Lord Rawdon now went to Charleston and became a principal actor in one of the most shameful scenes of the Revolution. Colonel Isaac Hayne, a patriot who had once taken an oath of allegiance to the king, was caught in command of a troop of American cavalry. He was arraigned before Colonel Balfour, the commandant of Charleston, and condemned to death. Rawdon gave his sanction, and Colonel Hayne was hanged.

14. On the 22d of August, General Greene marched toward Orangeburg. The British retired to Eutaw Springs. There the Americans overtook them on the 8th of September. One of the fiercest battles of the war ensued; and General Greene was denied a decisive victory only by the bad conduct of some of his troops. After losing five hundred and fifty-five men, he gave over the struggle. The British lost in killed and wounded nearly seven hundred. Stuart retreated to Monk's Corner; Greene followed; and after two months of manœuvring, the British were driven into Charleston. In the whole South only Charleston and Savannah

were now held by the king's army; the latter city was evacuated on the 11th of July, and the former on the 14th of December, 1782. Such was the close of the Revolution in the Carolinas and Georgia.

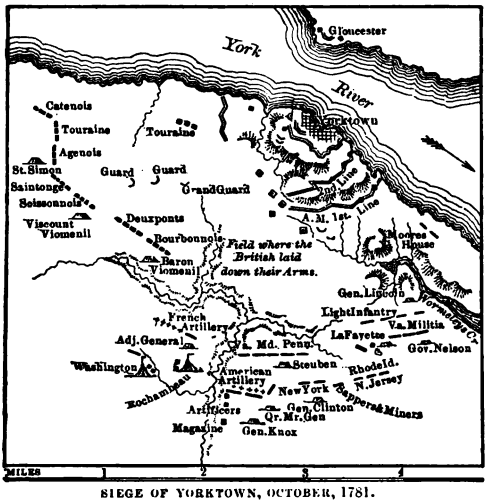
15. In the beginning of May, 1781, Cornwallis took command of the British army in Virginia. The country was ravaged, and property destroyed to the value of fifteen million dollars. La Fayette, to whom the defence of the State had been entrusted, was unable to meet Cornwallis in the field. While the British were near Richmond, a detachment under Tarleton proceeded to Charlottesville, and captured the town and seven members of the legislature. Governor Jefferson escaped into the mountains.



GENERAL GREENE.

16. On the 6th of July, General Wayne, who led La Fayette's advance, suddenly attacked the whole British army, at Green Springs on the James. Cornwallis was surprised by the audacious onset, and Wayne, seeing his mistake, made a hasty retreat. The loss of the two armies was equal, being a hundred and twenty on each side. The British next marched to Portsmouth; but early in August, the army was conveyed to Yorktown, on the southern bank of York River.

17. La Fayette followed and took post eight miles from the British. During the months of July and August, Washington, from his camp on the Hudson, looked wistfully to the South. Clinton was kept in alarm by false despatches, written for the purpose of falling into his hands. These intercepted messages indicated that the Americans would immediately besiege New York. When Clinton was informed that Washington was marching toward Virginia, he would not believe it. Washington pressed rapidly forward, and joined La Fayette at Williamsburg. On the 30th of August, a French fleet, with four thousand troops on board, reached the Chesapeake and anchored in the mouth of York River. Cornwallis was blockaded by sea and land.



SIEGE OF YORKTOWN, OCTOBER, 1781.

18. Count de Barras, who commanded the French flotilla at Newport, also arrived. On the 5th of September, Admiral Graves appeared in the bay, and a naval battle ensued, in which the British ships were roughly handled. On the 28th, the allied armies encamped around Yorktown. On the night of the 6th of October, the trenches were opened at the distance of six hundred yards from the British works. On the 11th, the allies drew their second parallel within three hundred yards of Cornwallis's redoubts. On the night of the 14th, the enemy's outer works were carried by storm. On the 16th the British made a sortie, but were repulsed. On the next day Cornwallis proposed a surrender; on the 18th, terms of capitulation were signed; and on the afternoon of the 19th, the whole British army, consisting of seven thousand two hundred and forty-seven English and Hessian soldiers laid down their arms and became prisoners of war.

19. On the evening of the 23d, the news was borne to Congress. On the morrow, the members went in concourse with the citizens to the Dutch Lutheran church and turned the afternoon into a thanksgiving. The note of rejoicing sounded throughout the land. In England the king and his ministers heard the tidings with rage; but the English people were secretly pleased. On the 20th of March, 1782, Lord North and his friends resigned their offices. A new ministry was formed, favorable to peace. The command of the British forces in the United States was transferred to Sir Guy Carleton, a man friendly to American interests.



LORD CORNWALLIS.

20. In the summer of 1782, Richard Oswald was sent by Parliament to Paris, to confer with Franklin and Jay in regard to the terms of peace. John Adams and Henry Laurens also entered into the negotiations. On the 30th of November, preliminary articles of peace were signed; and in the following April, the terms were ratified by Congress. On the 3d of September, 1783, a final treaty was effected between all the nations that had been at war.

21. The terms of THE TREATY OF 1783 were these: A complete recognition of the independence of the United States; the cession by Great Britain of Florida to Spain; the surrender of the remaining territory east of the Mississippi to the United States; the free navigation of the Mississippi and the lakes; and the retention by Great Britain of Canada and Nova Scotia.

22. Early in August, Sir Guy Carleton received instructions to evacuate New York city. By the 25th of November, every thing was in readiness; the British army was embarked; the sails were

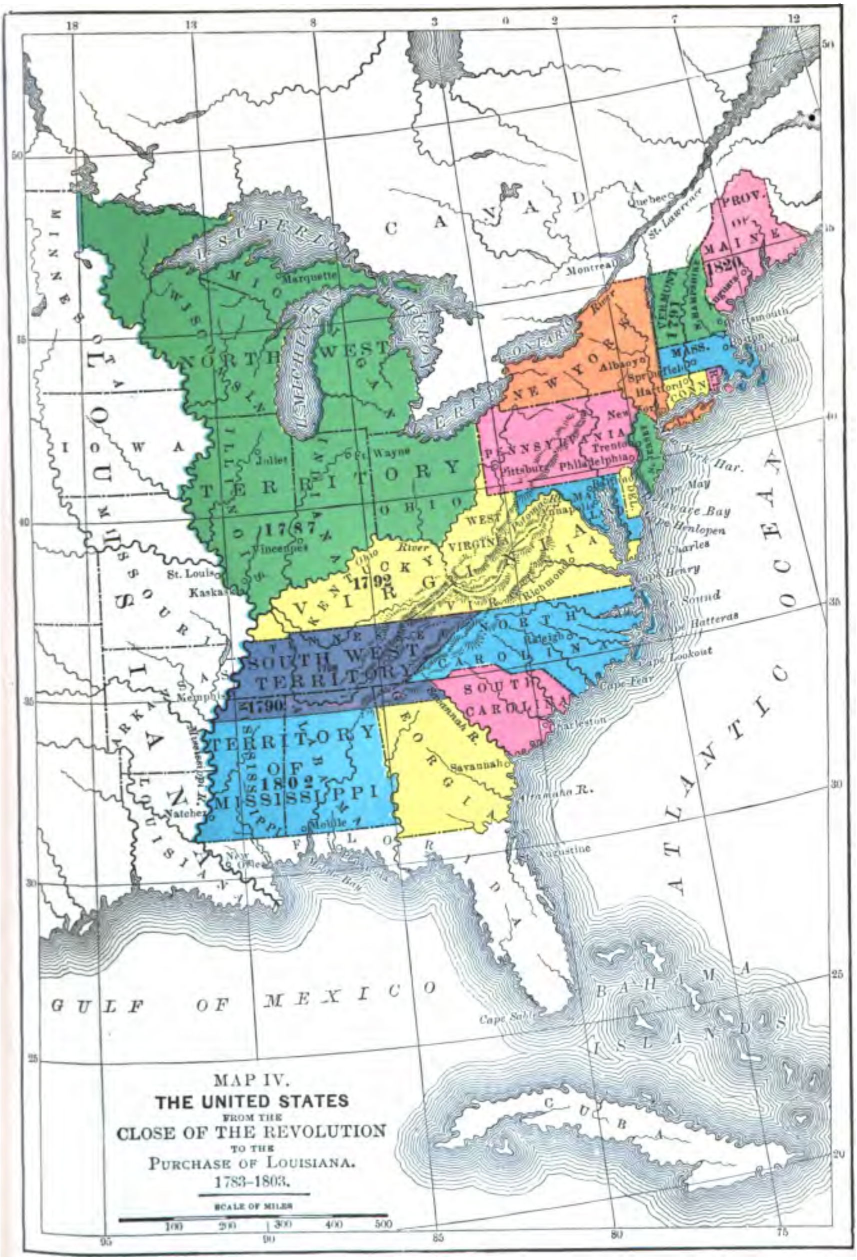
spread; the ships stood out to sea; dwindled to white specks on the horizon; disappeared. The Briton was gone. After the struggles of an eight years' war the patriots had achieved their independence.

23. On the 4th of December, Washington assembled his officers and bade them a final adieu. When they were met, he spoke a few affectionate words to his comrades, who came forward, and with tears and sobs bade him farewell. Washington then departed to Annapolis, where Congress was in session. At Philadelphia he made a report of his expenses during the war. The account, in his own handwriting, embraced an expenditure of seventy-four thousand four hundred and eighty-five dollars—all correct to a cent.

24. The route of the chief to Annapolis was a continuous triumph. The people by thousands flocked to the roadsides to see him pass. On the 23d of December, Washington was introduced to Congress, and delivered an address full of wisdom and modesty. With great dignity he surrendered his commission as commander-in-chief of the army. General Mifflin, the president of Congress, responded in an eloquent manner, and then the hero retired to his home at Mount Vernon.

RECAPITULATION.

Desperate condition of the army.—The Pennsylvania and Jersey lines revolt.—Robert Morris secretary of finance.—Champe attempts to capture Arnold.—Arnold's expedition to Virginia.—Second plan to capture him.—He becomes commander-in-chief in Virginia.—Is superseded.—Leads a band into Connecticut.—Captures Fort Griswold.—Greene advances into South Carolina.—Morgan at the Cowpens.—Cornwallis attempts to cut off his retreat.—Greene takes command.—Crosses the Catawba.—Race for the Yadkin.—Greene wins it.—Race for the Dan.—Greene wins it.—Turns upon the enemy.—Lee disperses the tories.—Greene moves to Guilford.—An indecisive battle.—The British retreat to Wilmington.—Cornwallis goes to Virginia.—The Americans advance into South Carolina.—The battle of Hobkirk's Hill.—The siege of Ninety-Six.—Greene in the highlands.—Sumter, Lee, and Marion overrun the country.—Execution of Hayne.—The battle of Eutaw Springs.—The British retreat to Charleston.—The campaign in Virginia.—Cornwallis ravages the State.—Is attacked by Wayne.—Proceeds to Yorktown.—The Army of the North comes down upon him.—The French fleet coöperates.—Yorktown is besieged.—And Cornwallis's army taken.—Rejoicings.—Fall of the king's party in Parliament.—Negotiations for peace.—A treaty is concluded.—Its terms.—Carleton supersedes Clinton.—Evacuation of New York.—Washington retires to private life.



MAP IV.
THE UNITED STATES
FROM THE
CLOSE OF THE REVOLUTION
TO THE
PURCHASE OF LOUISIANA.
1783-1803.
SCALE OF MILES
100 200 300 400 500

CHAPTER XLIII.

CONFEDERATION AND UNION.

DURING the progress of the Revolution the civil government of the United States was in a deplorable condition. Nothing but the peril of the country had, in the first place, led to the calling of a Congress. When that body assembled, it had no constitution nor power of efficient action. The two great wants of the country were *money* to carry on the war and *a central authority* to direct the war. Whenever Congress would attempt a firmer government, the movement would be checked by the remonstrance of the colonies.

2. Foremost of those who worked for better government was Benjamin Franklin. In 1775 he laid before Congress the plan of a perpetual confederation of the States. But the attention of that body was occupied with the stirring events of the war, and Franklin's measure received little notice. Congress, without any real authority, began to conduct the government, and its legislation was generally accepted by the States.

3. On the 11th of June, 1776, a committee was appointed by Congress to prepare a plan of confederation. After a month the work was completed and laid before the house. The debates on the subject continued at intervals until the 15th of November, 1777, when a vote was taken in Congress, and the articles of confederation were adopted. The next step was to transmit the articles to the State legislatures for ratification. By them the new frame of government was returned to Congress with many amendments. These having been considered, the articles were signed by the delegates of eight States, on the 9th of July, 1778. Before the following February, the representatives of Georgia, North Carolina, New Jersey, and Delaware had signed the compact. Maryland did not assent until March of 1781.

4. The government of the United States under the confederation was A LOOSE UNION OF INDEPENDENT COMMONWEALTHS. The executive and legislative powers were vested in Congress—a body composed of not less than two nor more than seven representatives from each State. The sovereignty was reserved to the States. There was no chief magistrate of the Republic; and no general judiciary was provided for. The consent of nine States was necessary to complete an act of legislation. The union was declared to be perpetual.

5. On the 2d of March, 1781, Congress assembled under the new form of government. From the first, the inadequacy of that government was manifest. Congress had no real authority. The first duty was to provide for the payment of the war debt of thirty-eight million dollars. Congress recommended a general tax to meet the indebtedness. Some of the States made a levy for that purpose; others refused. Robert Morris was brought to poverty in a vain effort to sustain the government.

6. In this condition of affairs, Washington advised the calling of a convention to meet at Annapolis. The proposition was received with favor; and in September of 1786 the representatives of five States assembled. The question of a tariff was discussed; and then attention was given to a revision of the articles of confederation. It was finally resolved to adjourn until the following year. Congress invited the legislatures to appoint delegates to the convention. All of the States except Rhode Island responded; and on the second Monday in May, 1787, the representatives assembled at Philadelphia. Washington was chosen president of the convention. On the 29th of the month, Edmund Randolph introduced a resolution to adopt a new constitution. A committee was accordingly appointed to revise the articles of confederation. Early in September, the report of the committee was adopted; and that report was THE CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES.*

7. On the question of *adopting* the Constitution the people were divided. Those who favored the new government were called FEDERALISTS; those who opposed, ANTI-FEDERALISTS. The leaders of the former were Washington, Jay, Madison, and Hamilton, the latter statesman throwing his whole energies into the

* Appendix.

controversy. In the papers called the *Federalist* he and Madison answered every objection of the anti-Federal party. To Hamilton the Republic owes a debt of gratitude for having established on a firm basis the true principles of free government.

8. Under the Constitution the powers of government are arranged under three heads—LEGISLATIVE, EXECUTIVE, and JUDICIAL. The legislative power is vested in Congress—composed of a Senate and a House of Representatives. The Senators are chosen, for a term of six years, by the legislatures of the several States. Each State is represented by two Senators. The Representatives are elected by the people; and each State is entitled to a number of representatives proportionate to its population. The members of this branch are chosen for two years.



ALEXANDER HAMILTON.

9. The executive power of the United States is vested in a President, chosen for four years by the Electoral College. The electors composing the college are chosen by the people; and each State is entitled to a number of electors equal to the number of its representatives and senators in Congress. The duty of the President is to enforce the laws of Congress in accordance with the Constitution. He is also commander-in-chief of the armies and navies. In case of the death or resignation of the President, the Vice-President becomes chief magistrate.

10. The judicial power of the United States is vested in a supreme court and in inferior courts established by Congress. The highest judicial officer is the chief-justice. The judges hold their offices during life or good behavior. The right of trial by jury is granted in all cases except the impeachment of public officers. Treason against the United States consists in levying war against them, or in giving aid to their enemies.

11. The Constitution provides that new territories may be organized and new States admitted into the Union; that to every State shall be guaranteed a republican government; and that the Constitution may be altered or amended by the consent of two-thirds of both houses of Congress and three-fourths of the legislatures of the States. In accordance with this provision, fifteen amendments have since been made to the Constitution.

12. Before the end of 1788, eleven States had adopted the Constitution. The new government was to go into operation when nine States should ratify. For a while, North Carolina and Rhode Island hesitated. In accordance with an act of Congress, the first Wednesday of January, 1789, was named as the time for the election of a chief-magistrate. The people had but one voice as to the man who should be honored with that high trust. Early in April, the ballots of the electors were counted, and George Washington was unanimously chosen President and John Adams Vice-President of the United States. On the 14th of the month, Washington received notification of his election, and departed for New York. His route was a constant triumph. With this event the era of nationality in the New Republic is ushered in.

RECAPITULATION.

Bad condition of the government.—Franklin pleads for union.—A committee appointed to prepare a Constitution.—The Articles of Confederation are adopted.—The colonies are slow to ratify.—The confederation.—Defects of the same.—A firmer Constitution is projected.—The convention at Annapolis.—Adjournment to Philadelphia.—The Constitution is reported to the convention.—And adopted.—The people divide on the question.—Hamilton.—Character of the Constitution.—Amendments thereto.—Ratification by eleven States.—Washington is chosen President.—John Adams for the vice-presidency.

PART V.

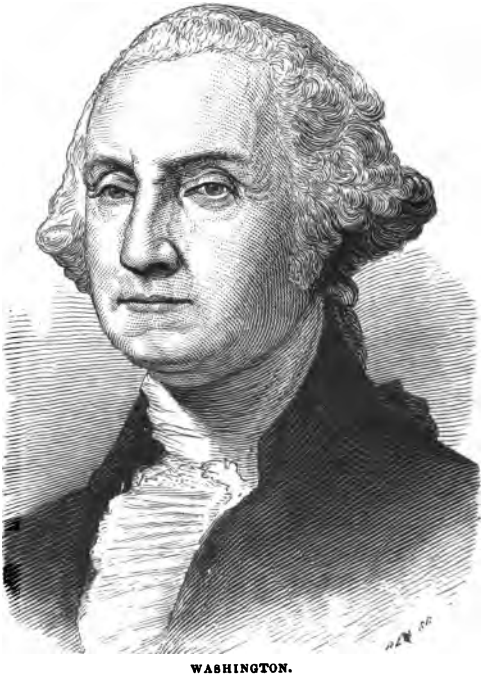
NATIONAL PERIOD.

A. D. 1789–1878.

CHAPTER XLIV.

WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION, 1789–1797.

ON the 30th of April, 1789, Washington was inaugurated first President of the United States. The ceremony was performed on the balcony of the old City Hall, on the site of the Custom-House, in Wall street. Chancellor Livingston of New York administered the oath of office. The streets and house-tops were thronged with people; flags fluttered; cannon boomed from the Battery. Washington retired to the Senate chamber and delivered his inaugural address. Congress had already been organized.



WASHINGTON.

2. The new government was embarrassed with many difficulties. By the treaty of 1783 the free navigation of the Mississippi had been guaranteed. Now

the Spaniards of New Orleans hindered the passage of American ships. On the frontier the Red men were at war with the settlers. As to financial credit, the United States had none.

3. On the 10th of September, an act was passed by Congress instituting a department of foreign affairs, a treasury department and a department of war. Washington nominated Jefferson as secretary of foreign affairs; Knox, secretary of war; and Hamilton, secretary of the treasury. A supreme court was also organized, John Jay receiving the appointment of first chief-justice. Edmund Randolph was chosen attorney-general. Meanwhile, the objections of North Carolina and Rhode Island were removed, and both States ratified the Constitution, the former in November of 1789, and the latter in the following May.

4. The war debt of the United States, including the revolutionary expenses of the several States, amounted to nearly eighty million dollars. Hamilton adopted a broad and honest policy. His plan proposed that the debt of the United States due to American citizens, as well as the debt of the individual States, should be assumed by the general government, *and that all should be fully paid.* By this measure the credit of the country was vastly improved. Hamilton's financial schemes were violently opposed by Mr. Jefferson and the anti-Federal party.

5. The question of fixing the seat of government was next discussed; and it was agreed to establish the capital for ten years at Philadelphia, and afterward at some locality on the Potomac. The next measure was the organization of the territory south-west of the Ohio. In 1790 a war broke out with the Miami Indians. These tribes went to war to recover the lands which they had ceded to the United States. In September General Harmar, with fourteen hundred men, marched from Fort Washington, on the present site of Cincinnati, to the Maumee. On the 21st of October, the army was defeated with great loss at a ford of this stream. General Harmar retreated to Fort Washington.

6. In 1791 THE BANK OF THE UNITED STATES was established by an act of Congress. On the 4th of March, Vermont, which had been an independent territory since 1777, was admitted into the Union as the fourteenth State. The claim of New York to

1789	93	97	1801	5	9
French	Revolution.	Napoleon	Bonaparte.		
	93. Fall of the Giro	ndists. 99. Overth	row of the French	Directory. 8. The	e Milan Decree.
	93. Execution of Lo	uis XVI. 99. Napol	eon, First Consul.	8. The	**Peninsular**
	93. **Reign of Te**	**rror.** 1800.	Murry, minister at	France.	9. Divorce of Jose
	94. Fall of Rob	espierre.	4. Na	poleon Emperor.	9. *Wagram.*
		97. Pinckney order	ed to leave France.	*Trafalgar.*	10. Marriage
George III.	94. Partition of	Poland.		*Austerlitz.*	12.
	93. British depreda	tions on neutral co	mmerce.	d. 7. Treaty	11. The
	94. Jay forms	a treaty with Great	Britain.	of Tilsit.	12.
	96. G	reat political distu	rbances in Englan	e great Irish rebell	ion.
			4. Th	5. Revival of **the**	**Rule of 1756.**
		1800.	*Marengo.*	6. Blockade of	the coast from Br
				8. Or	ders in council.
Washington,	President.	**John Adams,**	President.		**James Madi**
JOHN ADAM	**S,** Vice-President.				**GEORGE CL**
Jefferson, Secreta	ry of State.	**JEFFERSON,**			9. The Embargo
Hamilton, Secret	ary of Treasury.				9. Mr. Erskine gi
Knox, Secretary	of War.	98. War with	France.		cil" shall be
John Jay, Chief-J	ustice.	98. **Washin**	**gton** re-appointed		9. Harrison's treat
Edmond Randolp	h, Attorney-Gener	al.	comman	der-in-chief.	10. Popula
North Carolina ra	tifies the Constitution.	98. Hamilton,	first major-general.		11.
90. Rhode Isla	nd ratifies the Cons	titution.	99. **Was**	**hington** dies at	Mt. Vernon, a. 67.	11.
90. Seat of gov	ernment at Philade	lphia.	1. John Marshall,	Chief-Justice.	11.
90. Population	3,929,214.	1800.	Treaty with Franc	e.	11.
91. Bank	of the United States	established.	3. **Ohio** admi	tted into the Union.	12.
91.	*St. Clair's defeat.*	1800.	**Indiana** Territo	ry organized.	12.
91. **Ver**	**mont** admitted in	1800.	Passage of the alien	and sedition laws.	12.
92.	**Kentucky** admi	to the Union.	3. Purcha	se of **Louisiana.**	12.
92.	**Washington,** r	tted into the Union.	3. **War**	**with the Barb**	**ary States.**
92. **J**	**ohn Adams,** re-	e-elected Presiden	t. 4. H	amilton killed in a	duel. 12.
	93. Genet, French	elected Vice Presid	ent. 4. **J**	**efferson** re-elect	ed President.
	94. The Whisk	minister at Philade	lphia.	**George Clinto**	**n,** Vice-President
	94.	*Wayne's victory.*		5. **Michigan** Ter	ritory organized.
	95. Jay's	Treaty.		5. Lewis and Clar	k's expedition.
				6. Burr's cons	piracy.
		1800.	Removal of the seat	of government to	
			Washington City,	D. C.	
	96. **T**	**ennessee** admitt	ed into the Union.		
		1800.	Population,	7. *Attack on the*	
			5,308,483.	*Chesapeake.*	
				7. Passage	of the Em-
				bargo	Act.
				7. **The fi**	**rst Steamboat**
				7. Burr tr	ied for treason.

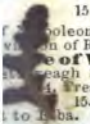
LOUISIANA, a French Province.

CHART IV.

National Period--First Section.

A. D. 1789—1837.

13	17	21	25	29	33	1837
14. Deposition	of Napoleon.	21. Napoleon dies.	**Frederick**	**William.**		
War. 15. Treaty	of Paris.	20. **George IV.**		27. Acknowledgment of the		independence of Greece.
ine. 15.	*Waterloo.*		24. Charles X.	30. The French		Revolution and election of **Louis Philippe.**
f poleon to Ma	ria Louisa.			28. Abolition of the Test		Act.
n of Russia.				30. Polish revolution.		
e of Wales	becomes **Regent.**			31. Fall of		Warsaw.
eagh Secreta	ry of Foreign Affairs.			30. **William**		**IV.**
Treaty of	Ghent.					
15. Rise of	the Radical party	in England.			32. Passage of the Great	Reform Bill by Parliament.
to Elba. 16. P	arliamentary reforms.					
n, President.	**James Monroe,** President.		**John Q. Adams,** President.		**Andrew Jackson,** President.	
TON, again Vice	e-President.				**JOHN C. CALHOUN,** again V.-Prest.	
repealed.	**DANIEL TOMPKINS,** Vice-President.					
notice that the	17. Treaty with the	Northwest Indians.	**JOHN C. CALHOUN,** Vice-President.			
ealed.	"Orders in Coun-		26. Treaty with		29-54. Era of the **Whig** and **Democratic Parties.**	
t Fort Wayne.	17. **Mississippi**	admitted into the Union.	the Creek			
7,239,881. 16. B	18. **Illinois**	admitted into the Union.	Indians.			
16.	ank of the United	States rechartered.	30. Population, 12,866,020.			
pecunac. 16.	**War with Algiers.**		26. Thomas Jefferson, died July 4th, aged 82.			
	ndiana admitted	into the Union.	26. John Adams, died July 4th, aged 90.			
President and L	*ittle Belt.* 20.	**Monroe** re-elected.	26. Great Masonic excitement.			
in Henry conspir	acy. 20. P	**Tompkins** re-elected.	28. Agitation of the tariff question.			
ion of the United	States Bank charter.	population, '9,638,453.		31. Monroe died, aged 73.		
Ninety-days' E	mbargo. 19. A gre	at financial crisis.			32. The great tariff excitement.	
uisiana admitt	ed into the Union.					
War declared	**against Great Britain.**				32. The doctrine of Nullification declared by South Carolina.	
ry Dearborn, co	mmander-in-chief.					
e surrender of M	ackinaw.				32. Proclamation of the President.	
Brownstown.	19. **Alab**	**ama** admitted into the Union.			32. Charles Carroll died, aged 96.	
rrender of Detroit.	19. **Ark**	**ansas** Territory organized.				
The Constitution and Guerriere.					32. **The Black Hawk War.**	
The Wasp and Frolic.	20.	**Maine** admitted into the Union.				
The United States and Macedonian.					32. First National Convention.	
Queenstown.		21. Rise of the slavery agitation.				
14. *Emuc*	*fau, Horseshoe Bend.*	21. **Missouri** admitted into the Union.			32. **Jackson,** re-elected.	
		22. The South American States recognized as sovereign powers.				
adison re-elec	ted.				**Van Buren,** V.-President.	
bridge Gerry,	Vice-President.	**The Monroe Doctrine.**				
Frenchtown.					33. Passage of Clay's Compromise bill.	
Siege of Fort Meigs.		24. Visit of La Fayette.			33. Removal of government funds from the United States Bank.	
Perry's Victory.		24. The President elected by the House of Representatives.				
The Thames.						
Fort Mimms, Tallashachee, Talladega.						
Toronto, Fort George, Burlington Bay, and Chrysler's Field.						
Youngstown, Lewistown, Manche		ster, Black Rock, a	nd Buffalo burned.			
The Hornet and Peacock.						
The Chesapeake and Shannon.						
The Argus and Pelican.						
The Cruises of the Essex.						
14. *Chippewa.*						
14. *Lundy's Lane and Bladensburg.*						
14. *Fort Platts*	*burg.*					
14. *Fort McHenry.*						
14. Washington City captured.						
14. Jackson in	vades Florida.					
14. Hartford C	onvention.					
14. Treaty of	Peace.					
15.	*New Orleans.*					
Florida, a Spanish	Prov- 19.	**Florida** ceded to the United States.				
	MEXICO, a Spanish Vice-Royalty.	21. **Mexico** becomes an Independent Republic.			36. **TEXAS.**	
					Santa Anna, President.	



the province had been purchased, in 1789, for thirty thousand dollars. The census of the United States, for 1790, showed a population of three million nine hundred and twenty-nine thousand.

7. After the defeat of Harmar, General St. Clair, with two thousand men, set out from Fort Washington to break the power of the Miamis. On the 4th of November, he was attacked in the south-west angle of Mercer county, Ohio, by more than two thousand warriors, led by Little Turtle and several American renegades. After a terrible battle, St. Clair was completely defeated, with a loss of half his men. The fugitives retreated precipitately to Fort Washington. The news of the disaster spread sorrow throughout the land. St. Clair was superseded by General Wayne, whom the people had named Mad Anthony.

8. The population of Kentucky had now reached seventy-three thousand. Seventeen years before, Daniel Boone, the hardy hunter of North Carolina, had settled at Boonesborough. Harrodsburg and Lexington were founded about the same time. During the Revolution the pioneers were constantly beset by the savages. After the expedition of General Clarke, in 1779, thousands of immigrants came annually. In the mean time, Virginia had relinquished her claim to the territory; and on the 1st of June, 1792, Kentucky was admitted into the Union. At the presidential election of 1792, Washington was again unanimously chosen; as Vice-President, John Adams was reëlected.

9. Washington's second administration was greatly troubled in its relations with foreign governments. Citizen Genet, who was sent by the French republic as minister to the United States, arrived at Charleston, and was greeted with great enthusiasm. Taking advantage of his popularity, the ambassador fitted out privateers to prey on the commerce of Great Britain, and planned an expedition against Louisiana. When Washington refused to enter into an alliance with France, the minister threatened *to appeal to the people.* But Washington stood unmoved, and demanded the minister's recall. The authorities of France heeded the demand, and Genet was superseded by M. Fouchet.

10. In 1794 the country was disturbed by a difficulty in Western Pennsylvania, known as THE WHISKY INSURRECTION.

Congress had, three years previously, imposed a tax on all ardent spirits distilled in the United States. Genet and his partisans had incited the people of the distilling regions to resist the tax-collectors. The disaffected rose in arms. Washington issued two proclamations, warning the insurgents to disperse; but instead of obeying, they fired upon the officers of the government. General Henry Lee, with a strong detachment of troops, then marched to the scene of the disturbance and dispersed the rioters.

11. In the fall of 1793, General Wayne entered the Indian country with a force of three thousand men. Near the scene of St. Clair's defeat, he built Fort Recovery, and then pressed on to the junction of the Au Glaize and the Maumee. Here he built Fort Defiance. Descending the Maumee, he sent proposals of peace to the Indians, who were in council but a few miles distant. Little Turtle would have made a treaty; but the majority were for battle. On the 20th of August, Wayne overtook the savages at the town of Waynesfield, and routed them with terrible losses. The chieftains were obliged to purchase peace by ceding to the United States all the territory east of a line drawn from Fort Recovery to the mouth of the Kentucky River. This was the last service of General Wayne. In December of 1796, he died and was buried at Presque Isle.

12. In 1793 George III. issued instructions to British privateers to seize all neutral vessels found trading in the French West Indies. The United States had no notification of this measure; and American commerce to the value of many millions of dollars was swept from the sea. Chief-Justice Jay was sent as envoy to demand redress of the British government. Contrary to expectation, his mission was successful; and in November of 1794, an honorable treaty was concluded. It was specified in the treaty that Great Britain should make reparation for the injuries done, and surrender to the United States certain Western posts which until now had been held by England.

13. In 1795 the boundary between the United States and Louisiana was settled. Spain granted to the Americans the free navigation of the Mississippi. About this time a difficulty arose with the dey of Algiers. For many years Algerine pirates had

been preying upon the commerce of civilized nations. The dey had agreed with these nations that his pirate ships should not attack their vessels if they would pay him an annual tribute. The Algerine sea-robbers were now turned loose on American commerce, and the government of the United States was also obliged to purchase safety by paying tribute.

14. In 1796 Tennessee, the third new State, was admitted into the Union. Six years previously, North Carolina had surrendered her claims to the territory. The population already numbered more than seventy thousand. The first inhabitants of Tennessee were as hardy a race of pioneers as ever braved the wilderness.

15. Washington was solicited to become a candidate for a third election; but he would not. In September of 1796, he issued to the people of the United States his Farewell Address—a document full of wisdom and patriotism. The political parties at once put forward their candidates—John Adams as the choice of the Federal, and Thomas Jefferson of the anti-Federal party. The chief question between the parties was whether it was the true policy of the United States to enter into intimate relations with France. The anti-Federalists said, *Yes!* The Federalists said, *No!* On that issue Mr. Adams was elected, but Mr. Jefferson, having the next highest number of votes, became Vice-President; for according to the old provision of the Constitution, the person who stood second on the list became the second officer in the government.

RECAPITULATION.

Washington is inaugurated.—And the new government organized.—The country is beset with difficulties.—A cabinet is formed.—Hamilton's financial measures.—The seat of government is fixed.—An Indian war breaks out.—Harmar is defeated.—The Bank of the United States is established.—Vermont is admitted into the Union.—St. Clair is defeated by the Indians.—Is superseded by Wayne.—Kentucky is admitted.—Washington reëlected.—The foreign relations of the government are troubled.—Genet's conduct.—Fouchet supersedes him.—The Whisky Insurrection.—Wayne defeats the Red men at Waynesfield.—Compels a cession of territory.—Dies.—Great Britain orders the seizure of American vessels.—Jay procures a treaty.—The compact with Spain.—Peace is purchased of Algiers.—Tennessee is admitted.—Washington issues his Farewell Address.—The candidates for the presidency.—Adams and Jefferson are elected.

CHAPTER XLV.

ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION, 1797–1801.

ON the 4th of March, 1797, President Adams was inaugurated. From the beginning, his administration was embarrassed by political opposition. Adet, the French minister, urged the government to conclude a league with France against Great Britain. When the President and Congress refused, the French Directory began *to demand* an alliance. On the 10th of March, that body issued instructions to French men-of-war to assail the commerce of the United States. Mr. Pinckney, the American minister, was ordered to leave France.

2. These proceedings were equivalent to a declaration of war. The President convened Congress in extraordinary session. Elbridge Gerry and John Marshall were directed to join Mr. Pinckney in a final effort for a peaceable adjustment of the difficulties. But the Directory refused to receive the ambassadors except upon condition that they would pay into the French treasury a quarter of a million of dollars. Pinckney answered that the United States had *millions for defence, but not a cent for tribute.* The envoys were then ordered to leave the country.

3. In 1798 an act was passed by Congress completing the organization of the army. Washington was called from his retirement and appointed commander-in-chief. Hamilton was chosen first major-general. A navy of six frigates had been provided for at the session of the previous year; and a national loan had been authorized. The treaties with France were declared void, and vigorous preparations were made for war. The American frigates put to sea, and, in the fall of 1799, did good service for the country. Commodore Truxtun, in the *Constellation*, won distinguished honors. On the 9th of February, while cruising in the

West Indies, he attacked the *Insurgent*, a French man-of-war, carrying forty guns and more than four hundred seamen. A desperate engagement ensued; and Truxtun gained a complete victory.

4. Meanwhile, Napoleon Bonaparte had overthrown the Directory of France and made himself first consul. He immediately sought peace with the United States. Three American ambassadors—Murray, Ellsworth, and Davie—were sent to Paris, in March of 1800. Negotiations were at once opened, and, in the following September, were terminated with a treaty of peace.



JOHN ADAMS.

5. Before the war-cloud was scattered, America was called to mourn the loss of Washington. On the 14th of December, 1799, after an illness of only a day, the chieftain passed from among the living. All hearts were touched with sorrow. Congress went in funeral procession to the German Lutheran church, where General Henry Lee delivered a touching and eloquent oration. Throughout the world the memory of the great dead was honored with appropriate ceremonies. To the legions of France, Napoleon announced the event in a beautiful tribute of praise. The voice of partisan malignity that had not hesitated to assail even the name of Washington, was hushed into silence; and all mankind agreed with Lord Byron

in declaring the illustrious dead to have been among warriors, statesmen and patriots

"——The first, the last, the best,
THE CINCINNATUS OF THE WEST."

6. The administration of Adams and the eighteenth century drew to a close together. The new Republic was growing strong and influential. The census of 1800 showed that the population of the country had increased to over five millions. The seventy-five post-offices reported by the census of 1790 had been multiplied to nine hundred and three; the exports of the United States had grown from twenty millions to nearly seventy-one millions of dollars. In December of 1800, Congress assembled in Washington city. Virginia and Maryland had ceded to the United States the District of Columbia, a tract ten miles square lying on both sides of the Potomac. The city was laid out in 1792; and in 1800 the population numbered between eight and nine thousand.

7. With prudent management the Federal party might have retained control of the government. But much of the legislation of Congress had been unwise and unpopular. The "Alien Law," by which the President was authorized to send foreigners out of the country, was specially odious. The "Sedition Law," which punished with fine and imprisonment the freedom of speech and of the press, was denounced as an act of tyranny. Partisan excitement ran high. Mr. Adams and Mr. Charles C. Pinckney were put forward as the candidates of the Federalists, and Thomas Jefferson and Aaron Burr of the Democrats. The election was thrown into the House of Representatives; and the choice fell on Jefferson and Burr.

RECAPITULATION.

Opposition to the new administration.—France demands an alliance.—Orders the destruction of American commerce.—Pinckney is dismissed.—The extra session of Congress.—Gerry, Marshall and Pinckney are sent to France.—The Directory want money.—Pinckney's answer.—An American army is organized.—Washington commander-in-chief.—The work of the navy.—Truxtun's victory.—Napoleon seeks peace.—Death of Washington.—Close of the administration.—Growth of the country.—The Alien and Sedition laws.—Overthrow of the Federal party.—Jefferson is elected president.—And Burr vice-president.

CHAPTER XLVI.

JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATION, 1801–1809.

AT the beginning of his administration, Mr. Jefferson transferred the chief offices of the government to members of the Democratic party. Such action was justified by the adherents of the President, on the ground that the affairs of a republic will be best administered when the officers hold the same political sentiments. One of the first acts of Congress was to abolish the system of internal revenues. The unpopular laws against foreigners and the freedom of the press were also repealed.



THOMAS JEFFERSON.

2. In the year 1800, a line was drawn through the North-west Territory from the mouth of the Great Miami River through Fort Recovery to Canada. Two years afterward the country east of

this line was erected into the State of Ohio and, in 1803, was admitted into the Union. The portion west of the line was organized under the name of INDIANA TERRITORY. Vincennes was the capital; and General William Henry Harrison was appointed governor. About the same time, MISSISSIPPI TERRITORY was organized.

3. More important still was the purchase of Louisiana. In 1800, Napoleon had compelled Spain to make a cession of this territory to France. He then prepared to send an army to New Orleans to establish his authority. But the United States remonstrated against such a proceeding; and Bonaparte authorized his minister to dispose of Louisiana by sale. The President appointed Mr. Livingston and James Monroe to negotiate the purchase. On the 30th of April, 1803, terms were agreed on; and for the sum of eleven million two hundred and fifty thousand dollars Louisiana was ceded to the United States. It was also agreed that the United States should pay certain debts due from France to American citizens—the sum not to exceed three million seven hundred and fifty thousand dollars. Thus did the vast domain west of the Mississippi pass under the dominion of the United States.*

4. Out of the southern portion of the great province the TERRITORY OF ORLEANS was organized, with the same limits as the present State of Louisiana; the rest continued to be called THE TERRITORY OF LOUISIANA. Very justly did Mr. Livingston say to the French minister as they arose from signing the treaty: "This is the noblest work of our lives."

5. In 1801 John Marshall became chief-justice of the United States. In the colonial times, the English constitution and common law had prevailed in America. When the new Republic was organized, it became necessary to modify the principles of law and to adapt them to the altered form of government. This great work was accomplished by Chief-Justice Marshall.

6. The Mediterranean pirates still annoyed American merchantmen. The emperors of Morocco, Algiers and Tripoli became especially troublesome. In 1803 Commodore Preble was sent to the Mediterranean to protect American commerce and punish the pirates. The frigate *Philadelphia*, under Captain Bainbridge, sailed

*See Map V.

directly to Tripoli. When nearing his destination, Bainbridge gave chase to a pirate which fled for safety to the harbor. The *Philadelphia*, in close pursuit, ran upon a reef of rocks near the shore, and was captured by the Tripolitans. The officers were treated with some respect, but the crew were enslaved.

7. In the following February, Captain Decatur sailed to Tripoli in a Moorish ship, called the *Intrepid*. At nightfall, Decatur steered into the harbor, slipped alongside of the *Philadelphia*, sprang on deck with his daring band, and killed or drove overboard every Moor on the vessel. In a moment the frigate was fired; Decatur and his crew escaped to the *Intrepid* without the loss of a man.



CHIEF-JUSTICE MARSHALL.

8. In July of 1804, Commodore Preble arrived at Tripoli and began a siege. The town was bombarded, and several Moorish vessels were destroyed. In the mean time, William Eaton, the American consul at Tunis, had organized a force, and was marching overland to Tripoli. Hamet, who was the rightful sovereign of Tripoli, was coöperating with Eaton in an effort to recover his kingdom. Yusef, the Tripolitan emperor, alarmed at the dangers around him, made overtures for peace. His offers were accepted

by Mr. Lear, the American consul for the Barbary States; and a treaty was concluded on the 4th of June, 1805.

9. In 1804 the country was shocked by the intelligence that Vice-President Burr had killed Alexander Hamilton in a duel. As his term of office drew to a close, Burr foresaw that he would not be renominated. In 1803 he became a candidate for governor of New York; but Hamilton's influence in that State prevented his election. Burr thereupon sought a quarrel with Hamilton; challenged him; met him at Weehawken, on the morning of the 11th of July, and deliberately murdered him. Thus the brightest intellect in America was put out in darkness.

10. In the autumn of 1804, Jefferson was reëlected. For Vice-President George Clinton of New York was chosen in place of Burr. In the next year, a part of the North-western Territory was organized under the name of MICHIGAN. In the same spring, Captains Lewis and Clarke set out from the falls of the Missouri River, with thirty-five soldiers and hunters, to explore Oregon. For two years, through forests of gigantic pines, and along the banks of unknown rivers did they continue their explorations. After wandering among unheard-of tribes of savages, and traversing a route of six thousand miles, the adventurers, with the loss of but one man, returned to civilization.

11. After the death of Hamilton, Burr fled to the South. At the opening of the next session of Congress he returned to preside over the Senate. Then he took up his residence with an Irish exile named Blannerhassett, who had built a mansion on an island in the Ohio, near the mouth of the Muskingum. Here Burr made a treasonable scheme to raise a military force, invade Mexico, detach the South-western States from the Union, and overthrow the government of the United States. But his purposes were suspected. The military preparations at Blannerhassett's Island were broken up. Burr was arrested in Alabama and taken to Richmond to be tried for treason. Chief-Justice Marshall presided at the trial, and Burr conducted his own defence. The verdict was, "Not guilty—*for want of sufficient proof.*" Burr afterward practiced law in New York, lived to old age, and died in poverty.

12. During Jefferson's second term, the country was much

agitated by the aggressions of the British navy. England and France were engaged in war. The British authorities struck blow after blow against the trade between France and foreign nations; and Napoleon retaliated. The plan adopted by the two powers was to blockade each other's ports with men-of-war. By such means the commerce of the United States was greatly injured.

13. In May of 1806, England blockaded the whole coast of France. American vessels, approaching the French ports, were seized as prizes. In the following November, Bonaparte issued a decree blockading the British isles. Again American merchantmen were subjected to seizure. In January of the next year, Great Britain retaliated by prohibiting the French coasting-trade. These measures were all in violation of the laws of nations.

14. Great Britain next set up her peculiar claim of citizenship, that whoever is born in England remains through life a subject of England. English cruisers were authorized to search American vessels for persons suspected of being British subjects. Those who were taken were impressed as seamen in the English navy.

15. On the 22d of June, 1807, the frigate *Chesapeake* was hailed near Fortress Monroe, by a British man-of-war, called the *Leopard*. British officers came on board and demanded *to search the vessel for deserters*. The demand was refused and the ship cleared for action. But before the guns could be charged, the *Leopard* poured in a destructive fire, and compelled a surrender. Four men were taken from the captured ship, three of whom proved to be American citizens. Great Britain disavowed this outrage, and promised reparation; but the promise was never fulfilled.

16. The President issued a proclamation forbidding British ships of war to enter American harbors. On the 21st of December, Congress passed the EMBARGO ACT, by which all American vessels were detained in the ports of the United States. The object was to cut off commercial intercourse with France and Great Britain. But the measure was of little avail; and after fourteen months the embargo act was repealed. Mean while, in November of 1808, the British government published an "order in council," prohibiting *all* trade with France and her allies. Thereupon Napoleon issued the "Milan decree," forbidding all trade with England and her

colonies. By these outrages the commerce of the United States was wellnigh destroyed.

17. While the country was thus distracted, Robert Fulton was building THE FIRST STEAMBOAT. This event exercised a vast influence on the future development of the nation. It was of great importance to the people of the inland States that their rivers should be enlivened with rapid navigation. This, without the application of steam, was impossible. Fulton was an Irishman by descent and a Pennsylvanian by birth. His education in boyhood was imperfect, but was afterward improved by study at London and Paris. Returning to New York, he began the construction of a steamboat. When the ungainly craft was completed, Fulton invited his friends to go on board and enjoy a trip to Albany. On the 2d of September, 1807, the crowds gathered on the shore. The word was given, and the boat did not move. Fulton went below. Again the word was given, and *the boat moved.* On the next day the company reached Albany. For many years this first rude steamer, called the *Clermont*, plied the Hudson.



ROBERT FULTON.

18. Jefferson's administration drew to a close. The territorial area of the United States had been vastly extended. Burr's wicked

conspiracy had come to naught. Pioneers were pouring into the valley of the Mississippi. The woods by the river-shores resounded with the cry of steam. But the foreign relations of the United States were troubled. The President declined a third election, and was succeeded by James Madison of Virginia. For Vice-President George Clinton was reëlected.

RECAPITULATION.

Jefferson puts Democrats in office.—Ohio is admitted.—Indiana and Mississippi organized.—Louisiana is purchased.—The Territory of Orleans set off.—John Marshall chief-justice.—The Mediterranean pirates.—Preble is sent against them.—The *Philadelphia* is captured.—Retaken and burned.—The siege of Tripoli.—Yusef signs a treaty.—Burr kills Hamilton.—Jefferson is reëlected.—Michigan is organized.—Lewis and Clarke explore Oregon.—Burr's conspiracy.—He is tried for treason.—British aggressions on American commerce.—England blockades the French coast.—Napoleon retaliates.—Great Britain forbids the coasting-trade.—The English theory of citizenship.—The *Leopard* attacks the *Chesapeake*.—Passage of the Embargo Act.—The Orders in Council and Milan Decree.—Fulton and his steamboat.—Summary.

CHAPTER XLVII.

MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION AND WAR OF 1812.

THE new President had been a member of the Continental Congress, a delegate to the Constitutional Convention of 1787, and secretary of state under Jefferson. He owed his election to the Democratic party, whose sympathy with France and hostility to Great Britain were well known. On the 1st of March, the embargo act was repealed by Congress, and another measure adopted by which American ships were allowed to go abroad, but were forbidden to trade with Great Britain. Mr. Erskine, the British minister, now gave notice that by the 10th of June the "orders in council," so far as they affected the United States, should be repealed.

2. In the following spring Bonaparte issued a decree for the seizure of all American vessels that might approach the ports of France. But in November, the decree was reversed, and all

restrictions on the commerce of the United States were removed. But the government of Great Britain adhered to its former measures, and sent ships of war to enforce the "orders in council."

3. The affairs of the two nations were fast approaching a crisis. The government of the United States had fallen completely under control of the party which sympathized with France. The American people, smarting under the insults of Great Britain, had adopted the motto of FREE TRADE AND SAILORS' RIGHTS, and had made up their minds to fight. The elections, held between 1808 and 1811, showed the drift of public opinion; the sentiment of the country was that war was preferable to national disgrace.

4. In the spring of 1810 the third census of the United States was completed. The population had increased to seven million two hundred and forty thousand souls. The States now numbered seventeen; and several new Territories were preparing for admission into the Union. The rapid march of civilization westward had aroused the jealousy of the Red men, and Indiana Territory was afflicted with an Indian war.

5. Tecumtha, chief of the Shawnees—a brave and sagacious warrior—and his brother, called the Prophet, were the leaders of the revolt. Their plan was to unite all the nations of the Northwest Territory in a final effort to beat back the whites. When, in September of 1809, Governor Harrison met the chiefs of several tribes at Fort Wayne, and purchased three million acres of land, Tecumtha refused to sign the treaty, and threatened death to those who did. In 1810 he visited the nations of Tennessee and exhorted them to join his confederacy.

6. Governor Harrison stood firm, sent for soldiers, and mustered the militia of the Territory. The Indians began to prowl through the Wabash Valley, murdering and stealing. The governor then advanced to Terre Haute, built Fort Harrison, and hastened toward the town of the Prophet, at the mouth of the Tippecanoe. When within a few miles of this place, Harrison was met by Indian ambassadors, who asked for a conference on the following day. Their request was granted; and the American army encamped for the night. The place selected was a piece of high ground covered with

oaks. Before daybreak on the morning of the 7th of November, 1811, the savages, seven hundred strong, crept through the marshes, surrounded Harrison's position, and burst upon the camp. But the American militia fought in the darkness, held the Indians in check until daylight, and then routed them in several vigorous charges. On the next day, the Americans burned the Prophet's town and soon afterward returned to Vincennes.

7. Meanwhile, Great Britain and the United States had come into conflict on the ocean. On the 16th of May, Commodore Rodgers, commanding the frigate *President*, hailed a vessel off the coast of Virginia. Instead of a polite answer, he received a cannon-ball in the mainmast. Rodgers responded with a broadside, silencing the enemy's guns. In the morning—for it was already dark—the hostile ship was found to be the British sloop-of-war *Little Belt*. This event produced great excitement throughout the country.

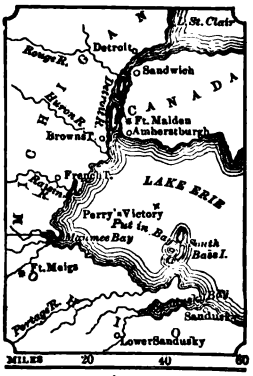
8. On the 4th of November, 1811, the twelfth Congress of the United States assembled. Many of the members still hoped for peace; and the winter passed without decisive measures. On the 4th of April, 1812, an act was passed laying an embargo for ninety days on all British vessels within the harbors of the United States. But Great Britain would not recede from her hostile attitude. Before the actual outbreak of hostilities, Louisiana, the eighteenth State, was, on the 8th of April, admitted into the Union. Her population had already reached seventy-seven thousand.

9. On the 19th of June, a declaration of war was made against Great Britain. Vigorous preparations for the conflict were made by Congress. It was ordered to raise twenty-five thousand regular troops and fifty thousand volunteers. The several States were requested to call out a hundred thousand militia. A national loan of eleven million dollars was authorized. Henry Dearborn, of Massachusetts, was chosen commander-in-chief of the army.

10. The war was begun by General William Hull, governor of Michigan Territory. On the 1st of June, he marched from Dayton with fifteen hundred men. For a full month, the army toiled through the forests to the western extremity of Lake Erie. Arriving at the Maumee, Hull sent his baggage to Detroit. But the British at Malden were on the alert, and captured Hull's boat with

every thing on board. Nevertheless, the Americans pressed on to Detroit, and on the 12th of July, crossed the river to Sandwich.

11. Hull, hearing that Mackinaw had been taken by the British, soon returned to Detroit. From this place he sent Major Van Horne to meet Major Brush, who had reached the river Raisin with reïnforcements. But Tecumtha laid an ambush for Van Horne's forces and defeated them near Brownstown. Colonel Miller with another detachment attacked and routed the savages with great loss, and then returned to Detroit.



SCENE OF HULL'S CAMPAIGN, 1812.

12. General Brock, governor of Canada, now took command of the British at Malden. On the 16th of August, he advanced to the siege of Detroit. The Americans in their trenches were eager for battle. When the British were within five hundred yards, Hull *hoisted a white flag over the fort.* Then followed a surrender, the most shameful in the history of the United States. All the forces under Hull's command became prisoners of war. The whole of Michigan Territory was surrendered to the British. Hull was afterward court-martialed and sentenced to be shot; but the President pardoned him.

13. About the time of the fall of Detroit, Fort Dearborn, on the present site of Chicago, was surrendered to an army of Indians. The garrison capitulated on condition of retiring without molestation. But the savages, finding that the whisky in the fort had been destroyed, fell upon the retreating soldiers, killed some, and distributed the rest as captives.

14. On the 19th of August, the frigate *Constitution*, commanded by Captain Isaac Hull, overtook the British *Guerriere* off the coast of Massachusetts. The vessels manœuvred for awhile, the *Constitution* closing with her antagonist, until at half-pistol shot she poured in a broadside, sweeping the decks of the *Guerriere* and deciding the contest. On the following morning, the *Guerriere*, being unmanageable, was blown up; and Hull returned to port with his prisoners and spoils.

15. On the 18th of October, the American *Wasp*, under Captain Jones, fell in with a fleet of British merchantmen off the coast of Virginia. The squadron was under protection of the *Frolic*, commanded by Captain Whinyates. A terrible engagement ensued, lasting for three-quarters of an hour. Finally the American crew boarded the *Frolic* and struck the British flag. Soon afterward the *Poictiers*, a British seventy-four gun ship, bore down upon the scene, captured the *Wasp*, and retook the wreck of the *Frolic*.

16. On the 25th of the month, Commodore Decatur, commanding the frigate *United States*, captured the British *Macedonian*, a short distance west of the Canary Islands. The loss of the enemy in killed and wounded amounted to more than a hundred men. On the 12th of December, the *Essex*, commanded by Captain Porter, captured the *Nocton*, a British packet, having on board fifty-five thousand dollars in specie. On the 29th of December, the *Constitution*, under command of Commodore Bainbridge, met the *Java*, on the coast of Brazil. A furious battle ensued, continuing for two hours. The *Java* was reduced to a wreck before the flag was struck. The crew and passengers, numbering upward of four hundred, were transferred to the *Constitution*, and the hull was burned at sea. The news of these victories roused the enthusiasm of the people.



THE NIAGARA FRONTIER, 1812.

17. On the 13th of October, a thousand men, commanded by General Stephen Van Rensselaer, crossed the Niagara River to capture Queenstown. They were resisted at the water's edge; but the British batteries on the heights were finally carried. The enemy's forces, returning to the charge, were a second time repulsed. General Brock fell mortally wounded. The Americans entrenched themselves, and waited for reïnforcements. None came; and after losing a hundred and sixty men, they were then

obliged to surrender. General Van Rensselaer resigned his command, and was succeeded by General Alexander Smyth.

18. The Americans now rallied at Black Rock, a few miles north of Buffalo. From this point, on the 28th of November, a company was sent across to the Canada shore; but General Smyth ordered the advance party to return. A few days afterward, another crossing was planned; but the Americans were again commanded to return to winter quarters. The militia became mutinous. Smyth was charged with cowardice and deposed from his command. In the autumn of 1812, Madison was reëlected President; the choice for Vice-President fell on Elbridge Gerry, of Massachusetts.

RECAPITULATION.

Previous services of Madison.—The Non-intercourse Act takes the place of the embargo.—Promised repeal of the Orders in Council.—Bonaparte makes a decree.—And then revokes it.—Obstinacy of Great Britain.—Third census.—Tecumtha and the Prophet.—Harrison purchases lands.—Tecumtha refuses to ratify.—Harrison marches up the Wabash.—Is attacked by night.—And routs the savages.—Fight of the *President* and the *Little Belt*.—The twelfth Congress.—British vessels are embargoed.—Louisiana is admitted.—War declared against England.—Hull marches to Lake Erie.—Invades Canada.—Van Horne's defeat.—Miller's victory.—Hull's surrender.—He is convicted of cowardice.—Capture of Fort Dearborn.—The *Constitution* captures the *Guerriere*.—The *Wasp*, the *Frolic*.—The *Poictiers*, the *Wasp*.—The *United States*, the *Macedonian*.—The *Essex*, the *Nocton*.—And the *Constitution*, the *Java*.—Van Rensselaer moves against Queenstown.—Carries the batteries.—Death of Brock.—The Americans surrender.—Smyth succeeds Van Rensselaer.—The Americans at Black Rock.—Madison reëlected.

CHAPTER XLVIII.

WAR OF 1812.—*CONTINUED.*

IN the beginning of 1813, the American army was organized in three divisions: THE ARMY OF THE NORTH, under General Wade Hampton; THE ARMY OF THE CENTRE, under the commander-in-chief; THE ARMY OF THE WEST, under General Winchester, who was soon superseded by General Harrison. Early in

January, the latter division moved toward Lake Erie to regain the ground lost by Hull. On the 10th of the month, the American advance reached the rapids of the Maumee, thirty miles from Winchester's camp. A detachment then pressed forward to Frenchtown, on the river Raisin, captured the town, and on the 20th of the month, were joined by Winchester with the main division.

2. Two days afterward the Americans were assaulted by a thousand five hundred British and Indians under General Proctor. A severe battle was fought. General Winchester, having been taken by the enemy, advised his forces to capitulate. The American wounded *were left to the mercy of the savages*, who at once began and completed their work of butchery. The rest of the prisoners were dragged away through untold sufferings to Detroit, where they were afterward ransomed.

3. General Harrison now built Fort Meigs, on the Maumee. Here he was besieged by two thousand British and savages, led by Proctor and Tecumtha. Meanwhile, General Clay, with twelve hundred Kentuckians, advanced to the relief of the fort. In a few days the Indians deserted in large numbers, and Proctor, becoming alarmed, abandoned the siege, and retreated to Malden.

4. Late in July, Proctor and Tecumtha with nearly four thousand men again besieged Fort Meigs. Failing to draw out the garrison, the British general filed off with half his forces and attacked Fort Stephenson, at Lower Sandusky. This place was defended by a hundred and sixty men under Colonel Croghan, a stripling but twenty-one years of age. On the 2d of August, the British advanced to storm the fort. Having crowded into the trench, they were swept away almost to a man. The repulse was complete. Proctor now raised the siege at Fort Meigs and returned to Malden.

5. At this time, Lake Erie was commanded by a British squadron of six vessels. The work of recovering these waters was entrusted to Commodore Oliver H. Perry. His antagonist, Commodore Barclay, was a veteran from Europe. With great energy Perry directed the construction of nine ships, and was soon afloat. On the 10th of September, the two fleets met near Put-in Bay. The battle was begun by the American squadron, Perry's flag-ship, the *Lawrence*, leading the attack. His principal antagonist was the

Detroit, under command of Barclay. The British guns had the wider range, and were better served. In a short time, the *Lawrence* was ruined; and Barclay's flag-ship was almost a wreck.

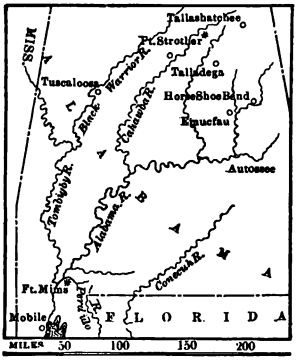
6. Perceiving how the battle stood, Perry seized his banner, got overboard into an open boat, and transferred his flag to the *Niagara*. With this powerful vessel he bore down upon the enemy's line, drove right through the midst, discharging terrible broadsides right and left. In fifteen minutes the British fleet was helpless. Perry returned to the hull of the *Lawrence*, and there received the surrender. And then he sent to General Harrison this despatch: "WE HAVE MET THE ENEMY, AND THEY ARE OURS."

7. For the Americans the way was now opened to Canada. On the 27th of September, Harrison's army was landed near Malden. The British retreated to the river Thames, and there faced about to fight. The battle-field extended from the river to a swamp. Here, on the 5th of October, the British were attacked by Generals Harrison and Shelby. In the beginning of the battle, Proctor fled. The British regulars were broken by the Kentuckians under Colonel Richard M. Johnson. The Americans wheeled against the fifteen hundred Indians, who lay hidden in the swamp. Tecumtha had staked all on the issue. For awhile his war-whoop sounded above the din of the conflict. Presently his voice was heard no longer; for the great chieftain had fallen. The savages, appalled by the death of their leader, fled in despair. So ended the campaign in the West. All that Hull had lost was regained.

8. Meanwhile, the Creeks of Alabama had taken up arms. In the latter part of August, Fort Mims, forty miles north of Mobile, was surprised by the savages, who murdered nearly four hundred people. The governors of Tennessee, Georgia, and Mississippi made immediate preparation for invading the country of the Creeks. The Tennesseeans, under General Jackson, were first to the rescue. Nine hundred men, led by General Coffee, reached the Indian town of Tallushatchee, burned it, and left not an Indian alive. On the 8th of November, a battle was fought at Talladega, and the savages were defeated with severe losses. Another fight occurred at Autosse, on the Tallapoosa, and again the Indians were routed.

9. During the winter, Jackson's troops became mutinous and

were going home. But the general set them the example of living on acorns, and threatened with death the first man who stirred from the ranks. And no man stirred. On the 22d of January, 1814, the battle of Emucfau was fought. The Tennesseeans again gained the victory. At Horseshoe Bend the Creeks made their final stand. On the 27th of March, the whites under General Jackson stormed the breastworks and drove the Indians into the bend of the river. There, huddled together, a thousand Creek warriors, with the women and children of the tribe, met their doom. The nation was completely conquered.



SCENE OF THE CREEK WAR, 1813–14.

10. On the 25th of April, 1813, General Dearborn, commanding the Army of the Centre, embarked his forces at Sackett's Harbor, and proceeded against Toronto. Here was the most important dépôt of supplies in British America. The American fleet under Commodore Chauncey had already obtained the mastery of Lake Ontario. On the 27th of the month, seventeen hundred men, under General Pike, were landed near Toronto. The Americans drove the enemy from the water's edge, stormed a battery, and rushed forward to carry the main defences. At that moment the British magazine blew up with terrific violence. Two hundred men were killed or wounded. General Pike was fatally injured; but the Americans continued the charge and drove the British out of the town. Property to the value of a half million dollars was secured to the victors.

11. While this movement was taking place, the enemy made a descent on Sackett's Harbor. But General Brown rallied the militia and drove back the assailants. The victorious troops at Toronto reëmbarked and crossed the lake to the mouth of the Niagara. On the 27th of May, the Americans, led by Generals Chandler and Winder, stormed Fort George. The British retreated to Burlington Bay, at the western extremity of the lake.

12. After the battle of the Thames, General Harrison had trans-

ferred his forces to Buffalo, and then resigned his commission. General Dearborn also withdrew from the service, and was succeeded by General Wilkinson. The next campaign, planned by General Armstrong, embraced the conquest of Montreal. The Army of the Centre was ordered to join the Army of the North on the St. Lawrence. On the 5th of November, seven thousand men, embarking twenty miles north of Sackett's Harbor, sailed against Montreal. Parties of British, Canadians, and Indians, gathering on the bank of the river, impeded the expedition. General Brown was landed with a considerable force to drive the enemy into the interior. On the 11th of the month, a severe but indecisive battle was fought at a place called Chrysler's Field. The Americans passed down the river to St. Regis, where the forces of General Hampton were expected to form a junction with Wilkinson's command. But Hampton did not arrive; and the Americans went into winter quarters at Fort Covington.

13. In the mean time, the British on the Niagara rallied and recaptured Fort George. Before retreating, General McClure, the commandant, burned the town of Newark. The British and Indians crossed the river, took Fort Niagara, and fired the villages of Youngstown, Lewiston, and Manchester. On the 30th of December, Black Rock and Buffalo were burned.

14. Off the coast of Demarara, on the 24th of February, 1813, the sloop-of-war *Hornet*, commanded by Captain James Lawrence, fell in with the British brig *Peacock*. A terrible battle of fifteen minutes ensued, and the *Peacock* struck her colors. While the Americans were transferring the conquered crew, the ocean yawned and the brig sank. Nine British sailors and three of Lawrence's men were sucked down in the whirlpool.

15. On returning to Boston the command of the *Chesapeake* was given to Lawrence, and again he put to sea. He was soon challenged by Captain Broke, of the British *Shannon*, to fight him. Eastward from Cape Ann the two vessels met on the 1st day of June. The battle was obstinate, brief, dreadful. In a short time, every officer of the *Chesapeake* was either killed or wounded. Lawrence was struck with a musket-ball, and fell dying on the deck. As they bore him down the hatchway, he gave his last order—ever

afterward the motto of the American sailor—"DON'T GIVE UP THE SHIP!" The *Shannon* towed her prize into the harbor of Halifax. There the bodies of Lawrence and Ludlow, second in command, were buried by the British.

16. On the 14th of August, the American brig *Argus* was overtaken by the *Pelican* and obliged to surrender. On the 5th of September, the British brig *Boxer* was captured by the American *Enterprise* off the coast of Maine. Captain Blyth, the British commander, and Burrows, the American captain, both of whom were killed in the battle, were buried side by side at Portland. On the 28th of the following March, while the *Essex*, commanded by Captain Porter, was lying in the harbor of Valparaiso, she was attacked by two British vessels, the *Phœbe* and the *Cherub*. Captain Porter fought his antagonists until nearly all of his men were killed or wounded; then struck his colors and surrendered.

17. From honorable warfare the naval officers of England stooped to marauding. Early in the year, Lewistown was bombarded by a British squadron. Other British men-of-war entered the Chesapeake and burned several villages on the shores of the bay. At the town of Hampton, the soldiers and marines perpetrated great outrages. Commodore Hardy, to whom the blockade of New England had been assigned, behaved with more humanity. Even the Americans praised him for his honorable conduct. So the year 1813 closed without decisive results.

RECAPITULATION.

Arrangement of the army.—The Americans capture Frenchtown.—Surrender to Proctor.—And are butchered.—Harrison at Fort Meigs.—Clay raises the siege.—Proctor and Tecumtha return.—Attack Fort Stephenson.—And are defeated by Croghan.—Perry gains a signal victory on Lake Erie.—Harrison embarks his forces to Malden.—Follows the British and Indians to the Thames.—And routs them in battle.—The Creek massacre at Fort Mims.—Jackson and Coffee burn Tallushatchee.—Battles of Talladega and Autosse.—Winter and starvation.—Battle of Emucfau.—And Horseshoe Bend.—Dearborn captures Toronto.—The British attack Sackett's Harbor.—The Americans take Fort George.—Wilkinson commander-in-chief.—Expedition against Montreal.—The battle of Chrysler's Field.—Winter quarters at Fort Covington.—McClure evacuates Fort George.—Burns Newark.—The British retaliate.—The *Hornet* captures the *Peacock*.—The *Chesapeake* is taken by the *Shannon*.—Death of Lawrence.—Capture of the *Argus*.—The *Enterprise* takes the *Boxer*.—The *Essex* is captured by the *Phœbe* and *Cherub*.—The British bombard Lewistown.—Marauding in the Chesapeake.

CHAPTER XLIX.

THE CAMPAIGNS OF '14.

IN the spring of 1814, another invasion of Canada was planned; but there was much delay. Not until the 3d of July did Generals Scott and Ripley, with three thousand men, cross the Niagara and capture Fort Erie. On the following day, the Americans advanced in the direction of Chippewa village. Before reaching that place, however, they were met by the British, led by General Riall. On the evening of the 5th, a severe battle was fought on the plain south of Chippewa River. The Americans, led on by Generals Scott and Ripley, won the day.

2. General Riall retreated to Burlington Heights. On the evening of the 25th of July, General Scott, commanding the American right, found himself confronted by Riall's army, on the high grounds in sight of Niagara Falls. Here was fought the hardest battle of the war. Scott held his own until reïnforced by other divisions of the army. The British reserves were brought into action. Twilight faded into darkness. A detachment of Americans, getting upon the British rear, captured General Riall and his staff. The key to the enemy's position was a high ground crowned with a battery. Calling Colonel James Miller to his side, General Brown said, "Colonel, take your regiment and storm that battery." "I'LL TRY, SIR," was Miller's answer; and he *did* take it, and held it against three assaults of the British. General Drummond was wounded, and the royal army, numbering five thousand, was driven from the field with a loss of more than eight hundred. The Americans lost an equal number.

3. After this battle of Niagara, or Lundy's Lane, the American forces fell back to Fort Erie. General Gaines crossed over from Buffalo, and assumed command of the army. General Drummond

received reïnforcements, and on the 4th of August invested Fort Erie. The siege continued until the 17th of September, when a sortie was made and the works of the British were carried. General Drummond then raised the siege and retreated to Fort George. On the 5th of November, Fort Erie was destroyed by the Americans, who recrossed the Niagara and went into winter quarters at Black Rock and Buffalo.

4. The winter of 1813–14 was passed by the army of the North at Fort Covington. In the latter part of February, General Wilkinson began an invasion of Canada. At La Colle, on the Sorel, he attacked the enemy, and was defeated. Falling back to Plattsburg, he was superseded by General Izard. At this time, the American fleet on Lake Champlain was commanded by Commodore MacDonough. The British general Prevost now advanced into New York at the head of fourteen thousand men, and ordered Commodore Downie to ascend the Sorel with his fleet.

5. The invading army reached Plattsburg. Commodore MacDonough's squadron lay in the bay. On the 6th of September, Macomb retired with his forces to the south bank of the Saranac. For four days the British renewed their efforts to cross the river. Downie's fleet was now ready for action, and a general battle was planned for the 11th. Prevost's army was to carry Macomb's position, while the British flotilla was to bear down on MacDonough. The naval battle began first, and was obstinately fought for two hours and a half. Downie and many of his officers were killed; the heavier British vessels were disabled and obliged to strike their colors. The smaller ships escaped. After a severe action, the British army on the shore was also defeated. Prevost retired precipitately to Canada; and the English ministry began to devise measures of peace.

6. Late in the summer, Admiral Cochrane arrived off the coast of Virginia with an armament of twenty-one vessels. General Ross, with an army of four thousand veterans, came with the fleet. The American squadron, commanded by Commodore Barney, was unable to oppose so powerful a force. The enemy entered the Chesapeake with the purpose of attacking Washington and Baltimore. The larger division sailed into the Patuxent, and on the

19th of August, the forces of General Ross were landed at Benedict. Commodore Barney was obliged to blow up his vessels and take to the shore. From Benedict the British advanced against Washington. At Bladensburg, six miles from the capital, they were met, on the 24th of the month, by the forces of Barney. Here a battle was fought. The militia behaved badly; Barney was defeated and taken prisoner. The President, the cabinet, and the people betook themselves to flight; and Ross marched unopposed into Washington. All the public buildings except the Patent Office were burned. The unfinished Capitol and the President's house were left a mass of ruins.

7. Five days afterward, a portion of the British fleet reached Alexandria. The inhabitants purchased the forbearance of the enemy by the surrender of twenty-one ships, sixteen thousand barrels of flour, and a thousand hogsheads of tobacco. After the capture of Washington, General Ross proceeded with his army and fleet to Baltimore. The militia, to the number of ten thousand, gathered under command of General Samuel Smith. On the 12th of September, the British were landed at the mouth of the Patapsco; and the fleet began the ascent of the river. The land-forces were met by the Americans under General Stricker. A skirmish ensued, in which General Ross was killed; but Colonel Brooks assumed command, and the march was continued. Near the city, the British came upon the American lines and were brought to a halt.

8. Meanwhile, the British squadron had ascended the Patapsco and begun the bombardment of Fort McHenry. From sunrise of the 13th until after midnight, the guns of the fleet poured a tempest of shells upon the fortress.* At the end of that time, the works were as strong as at the beginning. The British had undertaken more than they could accomplish. Disheartened and baffled, they ceased to fire. The land-forces retired from before the entrenchments, and the siege of Baltimore was at an end.

9. On the 9th and 10th of August, the village of Stonington, Connecticut, was bombarded by Commodore Hardy; but the

* During the night of this bombardment, Francis S. Key, who was detained on board a British ship in the bay, composed *The Star Spangled Banner*.

British, attempting to land, were driven back. The fisheries of New England were broken up. The salt-works at Cape Cod escaped by the payment of heavy ransoms. All the harbors from Maine to Delaware were blockaded. The foreign commerce of the Eastern States was totally destroyed.

10. From the beginning, many of the people of New England had opposed the war. The members of the Federal party cried out against it. The legislature of Massachusetts advised the calling of a convention. The other Eastern States responded to the call; and on the 14th of December the delegates assembled at Hartford. The leaders of the Democratic party did not hesitate to say that the purposes of the assembly were disloyal and treasonable. After remaining in session, with closed doors, for nearly three weeks, the delegates published an address, and then adjourned. The political prospects of those who participated in the convention were ruined.

11. During the progress of the war the Spanish authorities of Florida sympathized with the British. In August of 1814, a British fleet was allowed by the commandant of Pensacola to use that post for the purpose of fitting out an expedition against Fort Bowyer, on the bay of Mobile. General Jackson, who commanded in the South, remonstrated with the Spaniards, but received no satisfaction. He thereupon marched a force against Pensacola, stormed the town, and drove the British out of Florida.

12. General Jackson next learned that the British were making preparations for the conquest of Louisiana. Repairing to New Orleans, he declared martial law, mustered the militia, and adopted measures for repelling the invasion. From La Fitte, a smuggler, he learned the enemy's plans. The British army, numbering twelve thousand, came from Jamaica, under Sir Edward Packenham. On the 10th of December, the squadron entered Lake Borgne, sixty miles north-east of New Orleans.

13. On the 22d of the month, Packenham's advance reached the Mississippi, nine miles below the city. On the night of the 23d, Generals Jackson and Coffee advanced with two thousand Tennessee riflemen to attack the British camp. After a bloody assault, Jackson was obliged to fall back to a strong position on the canal,

four miles below the city. Packenham advanced, and on the 28th cannonaded the American position. On New Year's day the attack was renewed, and the enemy was driven back. Packenham now made arrangements for a general battle.

14. Jackson was ready. Earthworks had been constructed, and a long line of cotton-bales and sand-bags thrown up for protection. On the 8th of January, the British moved forward. The battle began with the light of morning, and was ended before nine o'clock. Column after column of the British was smitten with irretrievable ruin. Jackson's men were almost entirely secure from the enemy's fire, while every discharge of the Tennessee and Kentucky rifles told with awful effect on the exposed veterans of England. Packenham was killed; General Gibbs was mortally wounded. Only General Lambert was left to call the fragments of the army from the field. Of the British, seven hundred were killed, fourteen hundred wounded, and five hundred taken prisoners. The American loss amounted to *eight killed and thirteen wounded.*

15. General Lambert retired with his ruined army into Lake Borgne. Jackson marched into New Orleans and was received with great enthusiasm. Such was the close of the war on land. On the 20th of February, the American *Constitution*, off Cape St. Vincent, captured two British vessels, the *Cyane* and the *Levant.* On the 23d of March, the American *Hornet* ended the conflict by capturing the British *Penguin* off the coast of Brazil.

16. Already a treaty of peace had been made. In the summer of 1814, American commissioners were sent to Ghent, in Belgium, and were there met by the ambassadors of Great Britain. The agents of the United States were John Quincy Adams, James A. Bayard, Henry Clay, Jonathan Russell, and Albert Gallatin. On the 24th of December, a treaty was agreed to and signed. In both countries the news was received with deep satisfaction. On the 18th of February, the treaty was ratified by the Senate, and peace was publicly proclaimed.

17. The only significance of the treaty was that Great Britain and the United States agreed to be at peace. Not one of the issues, to decide which the war had been undertaken, *was even mentioned.* Of the impressment of American seamen not a word was said.

The wrongs done to the commerce of the United States were not referred to. Of "free trade and sailors' rights," the battle-cry of the American navy, no mention was made. The treaty was chiefly devoted to the settlement of unimportant boundaries and the possession of some small islands in the Bay of Passamaquoddy.

18. The country was now burdened with a war-debt of a hundred million dollars. The monetary affairs of the nation were in a deplorable condition. The charter of the Bank of the United States expired in 1811, and the other banks had been obliged to suspend specie payment. Trade was paralyzed for the want of money. In 1816 a bill was passed by Congress to re-charter the Bank of the United States. The President interposed his veto; but in the following session the bill was again passed in an amended form. On the 4th of March, 1817, the bank went into operation; and the business and credit of the country began to revive.

19. During the war with Great Britain the Algerine pirates renewed their depredations on American commerce. The government of the United States now ordered Commodore Decatur to proceed to the Mediterranean and chastise the sea-robbers into submission. On the 17th of June, Decatur fell in with the principal frigate of the Algerine squadron, and after a severe fight, compelled the Moorish ship to surrender. On the 19th, Decatur captured another frigate. A few days afterward he sailed into the Bay of Algiers, and obliged the frightened dey to make a treaty. The Moorish emperor released his American prisoners, relinquished all claims to tribute, and gave a pledge that his ships should trouble American merchantmen no more. Decatur next sailed against Tunis and Tripoli, compelled these States to give pledges of good conduct, and to pay large sums for former depredations.

20. The close of Madison's administration was signalized by the admission of Indiana into the Union. The new commonwealth was admitted in December, 1816. About the same time was founded the Colonization Society of the United States. Many distinguished Americans became members of the association, the object of which was to provide a refuge for free persons of color. Liberia, in Western Africa, was selected as the seat of the proposed colony. Immigrants arrived in sufficient numbers to found

a flourishing negro State. The capital was named Monrovia, in honor of James Monroe, who, in the fall of 1816, was elected as Madison's successor. Daniel D. Tompkins, of New York, was chosen Vice-President.

RECAPITULATION.

Scott and Ripley capture Erie.—Battles of Chippewa and Niagara.—Siege of Fort Erie.—Winter quarters at Black Rock.—Wilkinson invades Canada.—Is defeated at La Colle.—McDonough's squadron on Champlain.—The British advance to Plattsburg.—Attack by land and water.—And are defeated.—Cochrane and Ross in the Chesapeake.—Battle of Bladensburg.—Washington is captured by the British.—Public buildings burned.—Alexandria pays a ransom.—Siege of Baltimore.—Ravages in New England.—The Federal peace party.—The Hartford Convention.—Jackson captures Pensacola.—Takes command at New Orleans.—Approach of the British.—Skirmishing and fighting.—The decisive battle.—Ruin of Packenham's army.—Sea-fights afterward.—The treaty of Ghent and its terms.—Condition of the country.—Re-chartering of the United States Bank.—The Mediterranean pirates again.—Decatur sent out against them.—He captures Moorish ships.—And dictates the terms of peace.—Indiana is admitted.—Liberia founded.—Monroe is elected President.

CHAPTER L.

MONROE'S ADMINISTRATION, 1817–1825.

THE policy of Madison was adopted by his successor. The stormy times of the war gave place to many years of peace. The new President was a native of Virginia; a man of great talents and accomplishments. He had been a Revolutionary soldier; a member of Congress; governor of Virginia; envoy to France and England; secretary of state under Madison. The members of the new cabinet were,—John Quincy Adams, secretary of state; William H. Crawford, secretary of the treasury; John C. Calhoun, secretary of war; William Wirt, attorney-general. Statesmen of all parties devoted their energies to the payment of the national debt. Commerce soon revived; the government was

economically administered; and in a few years the debt was honestly paid.

2. In December of 1817, Mississippi was organized and admitted into the Union. The new State came with a population of sixty-five thousand souls. At the same time, the attention of the government was called to a nest of pirates on Amelia Island, off the coast of Florida. An armament was sent against them, and the lawless establishment was broken up. Another company, on the island of Galveston, was also suppressed.

3. The question of internal improvements now began to be agitated. Without railroads and canals the products of the interior could never reach a market. Whether Congress had a right to vote money to make public improvements was a question of debate. In one instance a bill was passed making appropriations for a national road across the Alleghanies, from Cumberland to Wheeling. Among the States, New York took the lead in improvements by constructing a canal from Buffalo to Albany. The cost of the work was nearly eight million dollars.

4. In 1817 the Seminole Indians of Georgia and Alabama became hostile. Some negroes and Creeks joined the savages in their depredations. General Gaines was sent into the Seminole country, but his forces were found inadequate. General Jackson was then ordered to reduce the Indians to submission. He mustered a thousand riflemen from Tennessee, and in the spring of 1818, completely overran the hostile country.

5. While on this expedition, Jackson took possession of St. Mark's. The Spanish troops, stationed there, were removed to Pensacola. Two Englishmen, named Arbuthnot and Ambrister, charged with inciting the Seminoles to insurrection, were tried by a court-martial, and hanged. Jackson then captured Pensacola, and sent the Spanish authorities to Havana. The enemies of General Jackson condemned him for these proceedings; but the President and Congress justified his deeds. The king of Spain now proposed to cede Florida to the United States. On the 22d of February, 1819, a treaty was concluded at Washington city by which the whole province was surrendered to the American government. The United States agreed to relinquish all claim to

Texas and to pay to American citizens, for depredations committed by Spanish vessels, five million dollars.

6. In 1818 Illinois, the twenty-first State, was organized and admitted into the Union. The population of the new commonwealth was forty-seven thousand. In December of 1819, Alabama was added, with a population of a hundred and twenty-five thousand. About the same time, Arkansas Territory was organized. In 1820 the province of Maine was separated from Massachusetts and admitted into the Union. The population of the new State had reached two hundred and ninety-eight thousand. In August of 1821, Missouri, with a population of seventy-four thousand, was admitted as the twenty-fourth member of the Union.

7. When the bill to admit Missouri was brought before Congress, a proposition was made *to prohibit slavery in the new State.* This measure was supported by the free States of the North, and opposed by the slaveholding States of the South. Congress was distracted with long and angry debates. At last the measure, known as THE MISSOURI COMPROMISE, was brought forward and adopted. Its provisions were—*first*, the admission of Missouri as a slaveholding State; *secondly*, the division of the rest of the Louisiana purchase by the parallel of thirty-six degrees and thirty minutes; *thirdly*, the admission of new States, south of that line, with or without slavery, as the people might determine; *fourthly*, the prohibition of slavery in all the new States north of the dividing-line.

8. The President's administration grew into high favor with the people; and in the fall of 1820 he was reëlected. As Vice-President, Mr. Tompkins was also chosen for a second term. The attention of the government was next called to a system of piracy which had sprung up in the West Indies. Early in 1822, an American fleet was sent thither, and more than twenty piratical ships were captured. In the following summer, Commodore Porter was despatched with a larger squadron. The retreats of the sea-robbers were completely broken up.

9. About this time, many of the countries of South America declared their independence of foreign nations. The people of the United States sympathized with the patriots of the South. Henry

Clay urged upon the government the duty of recognizing the South American republics. In March of 1822, a bill was passed by Congress embodying his views. In the President's message of 1823, the declaration was made that *the American continents are not subject to colonization by any European power.* This is the principle ever since known as THE MONROE DOCTRINE.

10. In the summer of 1824, the venerated La Fayette, now aged and gray, revisited the land for whose freedom he had shed his blood. The patriots who had fought by his side came forth to greet him. In every city he was surrounded by a throng of shouting freemen. His journey through the country was a triumph. It was a solemn moment when he stood alone by the grave of Washington. In September of 1825, he bade adieu to the people, and sailed for his native land. While Liberty remains, the name of La Fayette shall be hallowed.

11. In the fall of 1824, four candidates were presented for the presidency. John Quincy Adams was put forward as the candidate of the East; William H. Crawford of Georgia as the choice of the South; Henry Clay and Andrew Jackson as the favorites of the West. Neither candidate received a majority of the electoral votes, and the choice of President was referred to the House of Representatives. By that body Mr. Adams was elected. For Vice-President, John C. Calhoun of South Carolina was chosen by the electoral college.

RECAPITULATION.

The new President and his policy.—The cabinet.—Revival of the country.—Mississippi is admitted.—The pirates of Amelia Island dispersed.—The question of internal improvements arises.—The canal from Buffalo to Albany.—The Seminole War breaks out.—Jackson captures St. Marks.—Hangs Arbuthnot and Ambrister.—Takes Pensacola.—The cession of Florida.—Illinois is admitted.—And Alabama.—Arkansas is organized.—And Maine admitted.—And Missouri.—The Missouri Compromise.—Monroe and Tompkins are reëlected.—Commodore Porter suppresses piracy in the West Indies.—Sympathy of the United States for the South American republics.—The Monroe Doctrine.—The visit of La Fayette.—John Quincy Adams chosen President.

CHAPTER LI.

ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION, 1825-1829.

THE new President was a man of the highest attainments in literature and statesmanship. At the age of eleven years he accompanied his father, John Adams, to Europe. At Paris and Amsterdam and St. Petersburg the son continued his studies, and became acquainted with the politics of the Old World. In his riper years, he served as ambassador to the Netherlands, Portugal, Prussia, Russia, and England. He had also held the offices of United States senator, and secretary of State.

2. The new administration was a time of peace; but the spirit of party manifested itself with much violence. The adherents of General Jackson and Mr. Crawford united in opposition to the President. In the Senate the political friends of Mr. Adams were in a minority, and their majority in the lower House lasted for only one session. In his inaugural address the President strongly advocated the doctrine of internal improvements.

3. When, in the year 1802, Georgia relinquished her claim to Mississippi Territory, the general government agreed to purchase for the State all the Creek lands lying within her borders. This pledge the United States had never fulfilled, and Georgia complained of bad faith. Finally, in March of 1826, a treaty was concluded between the Creek chiefs and the President, by which a cession of all their lands in Georgia was obtained. At the same time, the Creeks agreed to remove beyond the Mississippi.

4. On the 4th of July, 1826—just fifty years after the Declaration of Independence—John Adams, second President, and his successor, Thomas Jefferson, both died. Both had lifted their voices for freedom in the days of the Revolution. One had written and both had signed the great Declaration. Both had lived

to see their country's independence. Both had reached extreme old age: Adams was ninety; Jefferson, eighty-two. Now, while the cannon were booming for the fiftieth birthday of the nation, the honored patriots passed from among the living.

5. In the congressional debates of 1828, the question of the tariff was much discussed. By a tariff is understood a duty levied on imported goods. The object of the same is—*first*, to produce a revenue for the government; and *secondly*, to raise the price of the article on which the duty is laid, in order that the domestic manufacturer of the thing taxed may be able to compete with the foreign producer. When the duty is levied for the latter purpose, it is called a *protective tariff*. Mr. Adams and his friends favored the tariff; and in 1828 protective duties were laid on fabrics made of wool, cotton, linen and silk; and those on articles manufactured of iron, lead, etc., were much increased.

6. With the fall of 1828, Mr. Adams, supported by Mr. Clay, was put forward for reëlection. General Jackson appeared as the candidate of the opposition. In the previous election Jackson had received more electoral votes than Adams; but the House of Representatives had chosen the latter. Now the people were determined to have their way; and Jackson was triumphantly elected, receiving a hundred and seventy-eight electoral votes against eighty-three for his opponent.

RECAPITULATION.

Sketch of the President.—Partisan opposition to him.—Internal improvements favored by the executive.—Trouble with Georgia about the lands of the Creeks.—Settled by a treaty.—Death of Adams and Jefferson.—Discussion of the tariff in Congress.—A protective duty laid on fabrics.—Adams renominated for the presidency.—General Jackson put forward by the Democrats.—And elected.

CHAPTER LII.

JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATION, 1829-1837.

THE new President was a military hero—a man of great talents and inflexible honesty. His integrity was unassailable; his will like iron. He was one of those men for whom no toils are too arduous. His personal character was impressed upon his administration. At the beginning, he removed nearly seven hundred office-holders, and appointed in their stead his own political friends.



ANDREW JACKSON.

2. In his first message the President took ground against rechartering the Bank of the United States. He recommended that the old charter should be allowed to expire by its own limitation in 1836. But the influence of the bank was very great; and in 1832 a bill to recharter was passed by Congress. The

President opposed his veto; a two-thirds majority in favor of the bill could not be secured, and the new charter failed.

3. In the congressional session of 1831–32, additional tariffs were levied upon goods imported from abroad. By this act the manufacturing districts were favored at the expense of the agricultural States. South Carolina was specially offended. A convention of her people was held, and it was resolved that the tariff-law of Congress was null and void. Open resistance was threatened in case the officers should attempt to collect the revenues at Charleston. In the United States Senate the right of a State to nullify an act of Congress was boldly proclaimed. On that question had already occurred the great debate between Colonel Hayne, senator from South Carolina, and Daniel Webster of Massachusetts. The former appeared as the champion of State rights, and the latter of constitutional supremacy.



DANIEL WEBSTER.

4. The President now took the matter in hand and issued a proclamation denying the right of a State to nullify the laws of Congress. But Mr. Calhoun, the Vice-President, resigned his office to accept a seat in the Senate, where he might defend the doctrines of his State. The President, having warned the South Carolinians, ordered a body of troops under General Scott to pro-

ceed to Charleston. The leaders of the nullifying party receded from their position, and bloodshed was avoided. Soon afterward Mr. Clay secured the passage of a bill providing for a gradual reduction of the duties until they should reach the standard demanded by the South.

5. In the spring of 1832, the Sac, Fox, and Winnebago Indians of Wisconsin began a war. They were led by the famous chief, Black Hawk. The lands of the Sacs and Foxes had been purchased by the government twenty-five years previously. The Indians, however, remained in the ceded territory. When at last they were required to give possession, they refused to comply. The government insisted that they fulfill their contract, and hostilities began. The governor of Illinois called out the militia. General Scott was sent with troops to Chicago, to coöperate with General Atkinson. The latter waged a vigorous campaign, defeated the Indians, and made Black Hawk prisoner. The captive chief was taken to Washington and the great cities of the East. Returning to his own people, he advised them to make peace. The warriors abandoned the disputed lands and retired into Iowa.

6. Difficulties also arose with the Cherokees of Georgia—the most civilized of all the Indian nations. The government of the United States had promised to purchase the Cherokee lands for the benefit of Georgia. The pledge was not fulfilled; and the legislature passed a statute extending the laws of the State over the Indians. At the same time, the Cherokees and Creeks were denied the use of the State courts. The Indians appealed to the President for help; but he refused to interfere. He recommended the removal of the Cherokees to lands beyond the Mississippi. THE INDIAN TERRITORY was accordingly organized in 1834. The Indians yielded with great reluctance. More than five million dollars were paid them for their lands. At last General Scott was ordered to remove them; and during the years 1837–38, the Cherokees were transferred to their new homes in the West.

7. More serious was the conflict with the Seminoles. The trouble arose from an attempt to remove the tribe beyond the Mississippi. Hostilities began in 1835, and continued for four years. Osceola and Micanopy, chiefs of the nation, denied the validity of a former

cession of Seminole lands. General Thompson was obliged to arrest Osceola and put him in irons. The chief then gave his assent to the old treaty, and was liberated, but immediately entered into a conspiracy to slaughter the whites.

8. Major Dade, with a hundred and seventeen men, was now despatched from Fort Brooke, on Tampa Bay, to reïnforce General Clinch at Fort Drane, seventy-five miles from St. Augustine. Dade's forces fell into an ambuscade, and were all massacred except one man. On the same day Osceola, with a band of warriors, surrounded a storehouse where General Thompson was dining, and killed him and four of his companions.

9. On the 31st of December, General Clinch defeated the Indians on the Withlacoochie. On the 29th of February, 1836, General Gaines was attacked near the same battle-field; and again the Seminoles were repulsed. In October Governor Call of Florida, with two thousand men, overtook the savages in the Wahoo Swamp, near the scene of Dade's massacre. Here the Indians were again defeated and driven into the Everglades.

10. In the mean time, the President had put an end to the Bank of the United States. After vetoing the bill to recharter that institution, he conceived that the surplus funds which had accumulated in its vaults would better be distributed among the States. Accordingly, in October of 1833, he ordered the funds of the bank, amounting to ten million dollars, to be distributed among certain State banks designated for that purpose. The financial panic of 1836–37, following soon afterward, was attributed by the Whigs to the destruction of the national bank and the removal of the funds. But the adherents of the President replied that the panic was attributable to the bank itself.

11. In 1834 the strong will of the chief magistrate was brought into conflict with France. In 1831 the French king had agreed to pay five million dollars for injuries formerly done to American commerce. But the government of France neglected the payment until the President recommended to Congress to make reprisals on French merchantmen. This measure had the desired effect, and the indemnity was paid. Portugal was brought to terms in a similar manner.

12. In these years, several eminent statesmen fell by the hand of death. On the 4th of July, 1831, amid the rejoicings of the national anniversary, ex-President Monroe passed away. In the following year, Charles Carroll of Carrollton, the last surviving signer of the Declaration of Independence, died at the age of ninety-six. A short time afterward, Philip Freneau, the poet of the Revolution, departed from the land of the living. On the 24th of June, 1833, John Randolph of Roanoke died in Philadelphia. In 1835 Chief-Justice Marshall breathed his last, at the age of fourscore years; and in the next year ex-President Madison, worn with the toils of eighty-five years, passed away. On the 16th of December, 1835, a fire broke out in New York city and laid thirty acres of buildings in ashes. Just one year afterward, the Patent Office and Post-office at Washington were burned.

13. In June of 1836, Arkansas, with a population of seventy thousand, was admitted into the Union. In the following January, Michigan territory was organized as a State and added to the Republic. The new commonwealth brought a population of a hundred and fifty-seven thousand. In the autumn of 1836, Martin Van Buren was elected President. As to the vice-presidency, no one secured a majority, and the choice devolved on the Senate. By that body Colonel Richard M. Johnson of Kentucky was chosen.

RECAPITULATION.

Character of Jackson.—He fills the offices with his political friends.—Opposes the rechartering of the United States Bank.—Vetoes the bill.—The tariff question again.—South Carolina attempts nullification.—Debate of Webster and Hayne.—The President's proclamation.—South Carolina recedes from her position.—Mr. Clay's tariff compromise.—The Black Hawk War breaks out.—Generals Scott and Atkinson drive the Red men to submission.—The difficulty with the Cherokees.—Scott compels their removal to the West.—A Second Seminole war.—The arrest of Osceola.—Dade's massacre.—Murder of General Thompson.—Clinch defeats the savages.—Gaines on the Withlacoochie.—Battle of the Wahoo Swamp.—The President orders the distribution of the funds.—A panic follows.—The President is vituperated.—He brings France and Portugal to terms.—Death-list of eminent men.—Fires in New York and Washington.—Arkansas and Michigan admitted into the Union.—Van Buren elected President.

CHAPTER LIII.

VAN BUREN'S ADMINISTRATION, 1837-1841.

MARTIN VAN BUREN, eighth President, was born at Kinderhook, New York, on the 5th of December, 1782. After receiving a limited education he became a student of law. In 1821 he was chosen United States senator. Seven years afterward, he was elected governor of New York, and was then appointed minister to England. From that important mission he returned to accept the office of Vice-President.

2. One of the first duties of the new administration was to finish the Seminole War. In 1837 the command of the army in Florida was transferred to General Jessup. In the fall, Osceola came to the American camp with a flag of truce; but he was suspected of treachery, seized, and sent a prisoner to Fort Moultrie, where he died. The Seminoles, however, continued the war. In December Colonel Zachary Taylor, with a thousand men, marched into the Everglades of Florida, and overtook the savages near Lake Okeechobee. A hard battle was fought, and the Indians were defeated. For more than a year, Taylor continued to hunt them through the swamps. In 1839 the chiefs signed a treaty; but their removal to the West was made with much delay.

3. In 1837 the country was afflicted with a serious monetary panic. The preceding years had been a time of great prosperity. A surplus of nearly forty million dollars, in the national treasury, had been distributed among the States. Owing to the abundance of money, the credit system was greatly extended. The banks of the country were multiplied to seven hundred. Vast issues of irredeemable paper money increased the opportunities for fraud.

4. The bills of these unsound banks were receivable for the

public lands. Seeing that the government was likely to be defrauded out of millions, President Jackson issued an order, called THE SPECIE CIRCULAR, by which the land-agents were directed *to receive nothing but coin in payment for the lands.* The effects of this circular followed in the first year of Van Buren's administration. The banks suspended specie payment. In the spring of 1837, the failures in New York and New Orleans amounted to a hundred and fifty million dollars.

5. When Congress convened in the following September, a bill authorizing the issue of ten millions of dollars in treasury notes was passed as a temporary expedient. More important by far was the measure proposed by the President under the name of THE INDEPENDENT TREASURY BILL, by which the public funds were to be kept in a treasury established for that special purpose. It was the President's plan thus to separate the business of the United States from the general business of the country.

6. The Independent Treasury Bill was at first defeated in the House of Representatives. But in the following regular session of Congress the bill was again brought forward and adopted. During the year 1838, the banks resumed specie payments. But trade was less vigorous than before. Discontent prevailed; and the administration was blamed with everything.

7. In the latter part of 1837, a portion of the people of Canada broke out in revolt and attempted to establish their independence. The insurgents found sympathy in the United States. Seven hundred men from New York, taking arms, seized and fortified Navy Island, in the Niagara River. The loyalists of Canada, however, succeeded in firing the *Caroline*, the supply-ship of the adventurers, cut her moorings, and sent the burning vessel over Niagara Falls. For a while, the peaceful relations of the United States and Great Britain were endangered. But the President issued a proclamation of neutrality, forbidding further interference with the affairs of Canada.

8. Mr. Van Buren became a candidate for reëlection, and received the support of the Democratic party. The Whigs put forward General Harrison. The canvass was one of the most exciting in the history of the country. Harrison was triumphantly elected.

1837	41	45	49	53	57
40.	**Frederick William IV.**	46.	**Pius IX.**		
37. Attempted capture of Madrid by Don Carlos.		48.	Outbreak of the Hungarian Revolution.		
			52. Fall of Kossuth and the Hungarian		
39. Suppression of the Carlists in Spain.		48.	Revolution in France.		
			52. The so-called **Tripartite Treat**		
		48.	A republic proclaimed.		
				54. **The Ostend Manifesto.**	
40. The body of Napoleon returned to France.		48.	**Louis Napoleon Bonaparte,** elected Presid		
			52.	**Louis Napoleon,** President for	
37. **Victoria** succeeds to the English throne.					
			52.	**Louis Napoleon,** Emperor as N	
					60. T
37. Insurrection in Canada.					
				54. **The Crimean War.**	
					58. Mutiny in
Van Buren, President.	**Wm. H. Harrison,** President.	**James K. Polk,** President.	**Zachary Taylor,** President.	**Franklin Pierce,** President.	**James Buchan**
			Died July 9, 1850.		
RICHARD M. JOHNSON, Vice-President, elected by the Senate.	**JOHN TYLER,** Vice-President, and President, after April, 1841.	**GEORGE M. DALLAS,** Vice-President.	**MILLARD FILLMORE,** Vice-President, and President after July 9, 1850.	**WILLIAM R. KING,** Vice-Pres.	**JOHN C. BRE**
		46. **Iowa** admitted into the Union.			57. The Dred Scott decision.
	41. Repeal of the Independent Treasury Bill.	46. The Smithsonian Institution organized.			
37. Monetary panic.			49. **California** forms a State government.		57. Personal Liberty Bill.
37. **The Independent Treasury Bill.**	41. Veto of the United States Bank charter, and resignation of the President's Cabinet.	46. **The Oregon Boundary Treaty.**	49. Renewal of the slavery agitation.		
		46. General Taylor advances to the Rio Grande.	49. **New Mexico** Territory organized.		
37. *Lake Okechobee.*		45. **Florida** admitted into the Union.	50. Passage of the **Omnibus Bill.**		
37. **Michigan** admitted into the Union.		46. The Mexicans cross the Rio Grande.	50. Texas cedes territory to the general Government.		
		46. *Palo Alto. Resaca de la Palma.*	53. Kane's Arctic expedition.		
	42. **The Webster-Ashburton Treaty.**		53. Route for a Pacific Railroad explo		
		46. The Mexicans recross the Rio Grande.	50. **Utah** Territory organized.		**n Purchase.**
39. Nauvoo founded by the Mormons.			53. **The Gadsden Purchase.**		57. The Mormon outbreak in Utah.
40. Great political excitement.		46. Congress declares war against Mexico.	50. John C. Calhoun died, aged 68.		57. The first Atlantic Telegraph C
		46. *Capture of Matamoras. Monterey.*	50. Population 23,191,876.		tory organized.
			53. **Arizona** Territory		
			51. The Fugitive Slave Law.		he Union.
	42. Completion of Bunker Hill Monument.	46. Fremont in California.			58. **Minnes** admitted into the
40. Population, 17,069,453.		46. Colonel Doniphan's march.		53-60. Walker's filibustering expedi	
		47. *Buena Vista. Vera Cruz.*		54. Treaty with Japan.	
	44. Joe Smith killed.				's Fair at New York
					58. The paign of M and Senator
	44. The Magnetic Telegraph in operation.	47. *Cerro Gordo. Contreras, San Antonio. Churubusco.*		54. **The Martin Koszta**	
				54. **The Kansas-Nebraska**	
				54. Repeal of the **Missouri promise.**	
			52. Kossuth's visit to the United States.		
		47. *Downfall of Santa Anna. Molino del Rey, Casa de Matta. Chapultepec.*			59. Wa
					Irving died, a
					59. Or
			52. Henry Clay died, aged 75.		mitted int
		47. Capture of Mexico.			60.
		48. Treaty of **Guadalupe Hidalgo.**			Commun
		48. Discovery of Gold in California.			60.
					of the U
					Party at
				55. Civil war in Kansas.	
		48. Ex-President John Q. Adams died, aged 81.			60.
		48. **Wisconsin** admitted into the Union.			n.
		48. The Department of the Interior organized.			zed.
		52. Daniel Webster died, aged 70.			ed, aged 70. 60.
					Democr
					60.
					ohio
TEXAS independent since '36.					
38. **Lamar,** President.	41. **Houston,** President.	45. **Texas** admitted into the Union.			
MEXICO, the "Central Republic."		48.	Mexican cession.		
37. **Bustamente,** President.					
38. Vera Cruz besieged by the French.					
	41. **Santa Anna,** President.				

61	65	69	73	77	1881
61. **William I.** cause. y. ent. ten years. **apoleon III.** reaty of Peace bet China and England 62. Death of the Con the East India army	67. **War** 67. Hano 68. F 68. P 65. Fenian troubles	**between Prus** ver absorbed by Pr formation of a North 71. Begin 71. 72. 71. Down 72. assage of the Refor in Ireland. 70. Disestablis Church. 71. Bill f 72.	**sia and Austri** ussia. German Confedera ning of the **Fran** *Sedan.* **King William** fall of **Napoleo** *Siege of Paris;* Treaty of Peace. m Bill. 74. Overthrow hment of the Irish 74. **Disraeli** orbidding the sale Population of the	78. **Leo** a. tion. **co-Prussian** 77. Beginning of the 77. *Siege of Kars.* proclaimed Empe **n III.** 77. Invasion of Eu by the Russians. 77. *Siege and* Collapse of the Gladstone 78. **Treaty o** , Prime Minister. of Commissions. United Kingdom,	**XIII.** **War.** e **Russo-Turk-ish War.** ror. ropean Turkey *capture of Plevna.* of Ottoman Empire Ministry. **f San Stefano.** 31,465,480.
Abraham Lin **nan,** President. **CKINRIDGE. HANNIBAL H** 61. Ten of the Sout 61. *The Star of the* *Fall of Fort* 61. *Sumter.* 61. The President c 61. Confederate Co 61. The President c 61. *Bull Run.* *Ball's Bluff.* 62. *Mill* *Spring.* 61. Mason and Slid 61. **Kansas** admi ved. 62. *Fort D* *Pittsb* 62. *The M* *Mer* 62. *Murfr* *Front* 62. *Fair* *Seven* 62. *Antiet* tn 63. **The** Union. 63. 63. cam- 63. **Wes** nolin ouglas. 63. **flair. Bill. 63.** oms- 63. legion 63. The P 64. T gon ad- 64. the Union. The Japanese 64. s in the U. S. 64. ruption 64. mocratic Charleston. 64. 64. opulation, 31,443,231. 64. deal of the 64. e Party. outh Car- 64. seceded. 64.	**coln,** President. **Andrew John** Vice-President. **AMLIN,** V.-Pres. hern States secede. *West* fired upon. 66. The Atlan-tic Cable laid. alls for 75,000 men. ngress at Montgom alls for 500,000 me 65. Reconstruction taken by the 65. **Amnesty P** 66. Tennessee ell captured. *onelson.* 67. Purch *urg Ldg.* 67. **Nebr** *Monitor and* 68. I *Mer rimac.* 68. T *esborough.* 68. A *Royal and Port Rep* *Oaks.* *Days' battles.* 68. G *am.* **Emancipatio** *Siege of Vicksburg.* *Chickamauga.* *Lookout Mountain.* *Missionary Ridge.* **t Virginia** admi *Siege of Knoxville.* *Morgan's raid.* *Chancellorsville.* Lee invades Penns *Gettysburg.* resident orders a dr he President calls *Dalton, Resaca.* *Dallas, Kenesa* *Siege of Atlant* *Franklin.* *Nashville.* **Nevada** admitted *Fort McAllister* *Petersburg.* *Mobile Bay.* *Fort Fisher.* *The Alabama* *and Kearsarge.* *The Wilderness.* *Cold Harbor.* **Lincoln** re-elect *Five Forks.* 65. *Lee's surre* 65. Lincoln assassi 67. French in vasion. **Maximilian**	**U. S. Grant,** **son,** President aft **SCHUYLER C** 69. The Pacific Rai 69. Edwin M. Stan 70. The Fiftee 70. Robert E. 70. Admiral F ery. 70. Virginia, n. 70. Populatio of the seceded Stat President. **roclamation.** re-admitted into th 71. Burni 72. ase of Alaska. **raska** admitted int mpeachment of Pr he Fifteenth Ame rkansas, Alabama, ublic. Carolina reat monetary pani 72. 72. **n Proclamati** 72. 72. 72. 72. itted into the Union. 72. 72. ylvania. aft for 200,000 troop for 300,000 men. w. a. into the Union. r. ed. *nder.* nated. lected Emperor. 67. French army withdrawn.	President. er April 15, 1865. **OLFAX,** Vice-President. road completed. ton died, aged 55. nth Amendment a Lee died, aged 63. arragut died, aged Mississippi, and T n 38,558,371. es under- e Union. ng of Chicago. **The Alabama** o the Union. resident Johnson. ndment adopted. Georgia, Florida, re-admitted into c in New York City. William H. Sewar **Grant** re-elect'd. **on.** **Henry Wilson,** Horace Greeley die Great fire in Bosto General George G. Boundary dispute b Britian settled. s. **73. Modoc War.** 73. The Credit Mob 73. Chief-Justice C 73. Great financial 74. Charles Su 76. 76. 76.	**Rutherford** **WILLIAM A.** 77. New Policy ad Southern States. dopted. 69. exas re-admitted i 77. The great Railr labor troubles. 77. **The Nez Pe** breaks out. **Claims** settled. 77. Great financial the country. Louisiana, North C the Union. 77. Oliver P. Morto d died, aged 71. Vice-President, die d, aged 61. n. Meade died, aged etween the United 78. The bill fo Silver pa 78. The Halifa sion mak 5,500,000 United St ilier investigation. hase died, aged 65. crisis and monetar mner died, aged 63. **Colorado** admit **Centennial Ce** Philadelphia. The disputed Presi	**B. Hayes,** President. **WHEELER.** Vice-President. opted toward the nto the Union. oad Strikes and **rcé War** n died, aged 54. d Nov. 22, 1875. 57. States and Great r Remonetizing ssed by Congress. x Fishery Commis-e an award of dollars against the ates. y panic. ted into the Union. **lebration** at dency.

CHART V.

National Period---Second Section.

A. D. 1837–1880.

After controlling the government for forty years, the Democratic party was temporarily overthrown. For Vice-President, John Tyler of Virginia was chosen.

RECAPITULATION.

Sketch of the new executive.—Continuance of the Seminole War.—Colonel Taylor defeats the savages at Lake Okeechobee.—And compels submission.—The financial panic of '37.—The Specie Circular.—The banks suspend.—Tremendous failures.—Treasury notes are issued.—The Independent Treasury Bill is passed.—Partial revival of business.—The Canada insurrection.—Affair of the *Caroline*.—Order is restored.—General Harrison is elected President.

CHAPTER LIV.

ADMINISTRATIONS OF HARRISON AND TYLER, 1841-1845.

THE new President was a Virginian by birth, the adopted son of Robert Morris. He was graduated at Hampden-Sidney College, and afterward entered the army of St. Clair. He became governor of Indiana Territory, which office he filled with great ability. He began his duties as President by calling a special session of Congress. An able cabinet was organized, with Daniel Webster as secretary of state. Everything promised well for the new Whig administration; but before Congress could convene, the President, now sixty-eight years of age, fell sick, and died just one month after his inauguration. On the 6th of April, Mr. Tyler became President of the United States.

2. He was a statesman of considerable distinction; a native of Virginia; a graduate of William and Mary College. In 1825 he was elected Governor of Virginia, and from that position he was sent to the Senate of the United States. He had been put upon the ticket with General Harrison through motives of expediency; for although a Whig in political principles, he was *known to be hostile to the United States Bank.*

3. One of the first measures of the new Congress was the repeal of the Independent Treasury Bill. A bankrupt law was then passed for the relief of insolvent business men. The next measure was the rechartering of the Bank of the United States. A bill for that purpose was brought forward and passed; but the President interposed his veto. Again the bill received the assent of both Houses, only to be rejected by the executive. By this action a rupture was produced between the President and the party which had elected him. All the members of the cabinet except Mr. Webster resigned their offices.

4. A difficulty now arose with Great Britain about the north-eastern boundary of the United States. Since the treaty of 1783 that boundary had been in question. Lord Ashburton on the part of Great Britain, and Mr. Webster on the part of the United States, were called upon to settle the dispute. They performed their work in a manner honorable to both nations; and the present boundary was established.

5. In the next year, the country was vexed with a domestic trouble in Rhode Island. By the terms of the old charter of that State the right of suffrage was restricted to property-holders. A proposition was now made to change the constitution, and on that issue the people of Rhode Island were nearly agreed; but in respect to the *manner* of annulling the old charter there was a division. One faction, called the "law and order party," chose Samuel W. King as governor. The other faction, called the "suffrage party," elected Thomas W. Dorr. In May of 1842 both parties met and organized their governments.

6. The "law and order party" now undertook to suppress the faction of Dorr. The latter resisted, and made an attempt to capture the State arsenal. But the militia drove the assailants away. Afterward, Dorr's partisans were dispersed by the troops of the United States. Dorr fled from Rhode Island; but, a few months later, was arrested, tried for treason, and sentenced to imprisonment for life. He was then offered a pardon, but refused to accept it; and in June of 1845, was set at liberty.

7. About the same time, a disturbance occurred in New York. Until the year 1840, the descendants of Van Rensselaer, one of the

old Dutch patroons of New Netherland, had held a claim on lands in the counties of Rensselaer, Columbia, and Delaware. At last the farmers grew tired of paying rents and rebelled. In 1844 the anti-rent party became so bold as to coat with tar and feathers their fellow-tenants who made the payments to the Rensselaers. Time and again the authorities of the State were invoked to quell the rioters; and the dispute has never been permanently settled.

8. Of a different sort was the difficulty with the Mormons. Under the leadership of their prophet, Joseph Smith, they made their first settlement in Jackson county, Missouri. Here their numbers increased to fully fifteen hundred. A difficulty arose between them and the people of Missouri. The militia was called out, and the Mormons were obliged to leave the State. In 1839 they crossed the Mississippi into Illinois, and laid out a city which they called Nauvoo, meaning *the Beautiful.* Here they built a splendid temple. Other Mormons came to join the community, until the number reached ten thousand. For awhile Smith administered the government according to Mormon usage; then serious troubles arose between the Mormons and the people of Illinois, and civil war ensued.

9. Finally, Smith and his brother were arrested, taken to Carthage and lodged in jail. On the 27th of June, 1844, a mob broke open the jail doors and killed the prisoners. In the following year, Nauvoo was besieged by the populace. At last the Mormons gave up in despair, and resolved to exile themselves beyond the limits of civilization. In 1846 they began a toilsome march to the far West; crossed the Rocky Mountains; reached the Great Salt Lake; and founded Utah Territory.

10. Meanwhile, a great agitation had arisen in regard to Texas. From 1821 to 1836 this vast territory had been a province of Mexico. It had been the policy of that country to keep Texas uninhabited, in order that the Americans might not encroach on the Mexican borders. At last, however, a large land-grant was made to Moses Austin of Connecticut, on condition that he would settle three hundred families within the limits of his domain. Afterward the grant was confirmed to his son Stephen, with the privilege of establishing five hundred additional families of immigrants.

11. In the year 1835, the Texans raised the standard of rebellion. In a battle, fought at Gonzales, a thousand Mexicans were defeated by a Texan force of five hundred. On the 6th of March, 1836, a Texan fort, called the Alamo, was surrounded by eight thousand Mexicans, led by Santa Anna. The garrison was overpowered and massacred. The daring David Crockett was one of the victims of the butchery. In the next month was fought the decisive battle of San Jacinto, which gave to Texas her independence.



PROFESSOR S. F. B. MORSE.

12. The people of Texas now asked to be admitted into the Union. At first the proposition was declined by President Van Buren. In 1844, the question of annexation was again agitated; and on that question the people divided in the presidential election. The annexation was favored by the Democrats and opposed by the Whigs. James K. Polk of Tennessee was put forward as the Democratic candidate, while the Whigs chose their favorite leader, Henry Clay. The former was elected; for Vice President, George M. Dallas of Pennsylvania was chosen.

13. On the 29th of May, 1844, the news of the nomination of Mr. Polk was sent from Baltimore to Washington by THE MAGNETIC TELEGRAPH. It was the first despatch ever so transmitted; and the event marks an era in the history of civilization. The in-

ventor of the telegraph, which has proved so great a blessing to mankind, was Professor Samuel F. B. Morse of Massachusetts. Perhaps no other invention has exercised so beneficent an influence on the welfare of the human race.

14. When Congress convened in December of 1844, a bill to annex Texas to the United States was brought forward, and, on the 1st of the following March, was passed. The President immediately gave his assent; and, on the 29th of December, Texas took her place in the Republic. On the 3d of March in this year, bills for the admission of Florida and Iowa were also signed; but the latter State was not formally admitted until December 28th, 1846.

RECAPITULATION.

Sketch of the President's life.—He enters upon his duties.—Falls sick.—And dies.—Tyler succeeds him.—Repeal of the Independent Treasury Bill.—The bill to re-charter the United States Bank is vetoed by the President.—Rupture between the executive and Congress.—Resignation of the cabinet.—The north-eastern boundary is settled by the Webster-Ashburton treaty.—The Rhode Island insurrection.—The suffrage party elects Dorr.—And the law-and-order party King.—The latter is supported by the government.—Dorr's followers are scattered.—And himself convicted of treason.—But afterward pardoned.—The Van Rensselear land troubles in New York.—The Mormons are driven from Missouri.—Found Nauvoo.—Popular feeling against them.—Smith and his brother are murdered.—And the Mormons driven into exile.—They journey to Salt Lake.—The Texas excitement begins.—The people rebel against Mexico.—Battle of Gonzales.—Massacre of the Alamo.—The battle of San Jacinto.—Texas independent.—Seeks admission into the Union.—The question of annexation before the people.—On that issue Polk is elected President.—Professor Morse and the telegraph.—Texas admitted into the Union.—Also Iowa and Florida.

CHAPTER LV.

POLK'S ADMINISTRATION AND THE MEXICAN WAR, 1845–49.

PRESIDENT POLK was a native of North Carolina. In boyhood he removed with his father to Tennessee, and in 1839 rose to the position of governor of that State. At the head of his cabinet he placed James Buchanan of Pennsylvania.

2. A war with Mexico was at hand. On the 4th of July, 1845,

the Texan legislature ratified the act of annexation. Almonte, the Mexican minister at Washington, immediately left the country. The authorities of Texas sent an urgent request to the President to despatch an army for their protection. Accordingly, General Zachary Taylor was ordered to march thither from Louisiana. The question at issue between Texas and Mexico was concerning boundaries. Texas claimed the Rio Grande as her western limit, while Mexico was determined to have the Nueces as the separating line. The government of the United States resolved to support the claim of Texas. General Taylor moved forward to Corpus Christi, at the mouth of the Nueces, and by November of 1845, concentrated a force of nearly five thousand men.

3. In the following January, General Taylor was ordered to advance to the Rio Grande. It was known that an army of Mexicans was gathering for the invasion of Texas. In March the American army advanced to Point Isabel, on the gulf. There General Taylor established his dépôt of supplies, and then pressed on to the Rio Grande. He took his station opposite Matamoras and erected a fortress, named Fort Brown.

4. On the 26th of April, a company of American dragoons, under Captain Thornton, was attacked by the Mexicans, *east of the Rio Grande*, and after losing sixteen men was obliged to surrender. This was the first bloodshed of the war. General Taylor, leaving the fort under command of Major Brown, hastened to Point Isabel and strengthened the defences. This done, he set out with a provision-train and an army of two thousand men to return to Fort Brown.



SCENE OF TAYLOR'S CAMPAIGN, 1846–47.

5. Meanwhile, the Mexicans had crossed the Rio Grande and taken a position at Palo Alto. On the 8th of May the Americans came in sight and immediately joined battle. After a severe engagement the Mexicans were driven from the field, with the loss of a hundred men. Only four Americans were killed and forty wounded; among the former was the gallant Major Ringgold.

6. On the following day, General Taylor resumed his march, and within three miles of Fort Brown, again came upon the Mexicans. They had selected for their battle-field a place called Resaca de la Palma. The enemy fought better than on the previous day. The American lines were severely galled until Captain May's dragoons charged through a storm of grape-shot, rode over the Mexican batteries, and captured La Vega, the commanding general. The Mexicans, abandoning their guns, fled in a general rout. On reaching Fort Brown, General Taylor found that the place had been constantly bombarded by the guns of Matamoras.

7. When the news from the Rio Grande was borne through the Union, the war spirit was everywhere aroused. On the 11th of May, 1846, Congress made a declaration of war. The President was authorized to accept fifty thousand volunteers, and ten million dollars were placed at his disposal. Nearly three hundred thousand men rushed forward to enter the ranks. The American forces were organized in three divisions: THE ARMY OF THE WEST, under General Kearney, to cross the Rocky Mountains against the northern Mexican provinces; THE ARMY OF THE CENTRE, under General Scott as commander-in-chief, to march from the gulf coast into the heart of the enemy's country; THE ARMY OF OCCUPATION, under General Taylor, to hold the districts on the Rio Grande.

8. By the middle of summer, General Wool despatched a force of nine thousand men to the Rio Grande. Ten days after the battle of Resaca de la Palma, General Taylor captured Matamoras. The Mexicans fell back and took post at Monterey. Taylor was obliged to tarry near the Rio Grande until the latter part of August. By that time his numbers were increased to six thousand six hundred. The march against Monterey was begun; and on the 19th of September, the town, defended by ten thousand troops under Ampudia, was reached and invested.

9. On the 21st of the month, the Americans, led by General Worth, carried the heights in the rear of the town. The Bishop's Palace was taken by storm on the following day. On the 23d the city was successfully assaulted in front by Generals Quitman and Butler. The American storming-parties charged into the town. They reached the Grand Plaza, or public square. They hoisted the

victorious flag of the Union; turned upon the buildings where the Mexicans were concealed; charged up dark stairways to the flat roofs of the houses; and drove the enemy to a surrender.

10. After the capitulation, General Taylor agreed to an armistice of eight weeks. But the Mexicans employed the interval in warlike preparations. General Santa Anna was called home from Havana to take the presidency of the country. A Mexican army of twenty thousand men was sent into the field. General Taylor again moved forward, and on the 15th of November, captured the town of Saltillo. Victoria, a city in the province of Tamaulipas, was taken by General Patterson. To that place General Butler advanced from Monterey. General Wool, with strong reïnforcements from San Antonio, entered Mexico, and took a position within supporting distance of Monterey.

11. In June of 1846, the Army of the West, led by General Kearney, set out from Fort Leavenworth for the conquest of New Mexico and California. After a wearisome march he reached Santa Fé, and on the 18th of August captured the city. With four hundred dragoons Kearney continued his march toward the Pacific coast. At the distance of three hundred miles from Santa Fé he was met by Kit Carson, who brought intelligence that California had already been subdued. But Kearney with only a hundred men continued his march to the Pacific.

12. For four years Colonel John C. Fremont had been exploring the country west of the Rocky Mountains. In California he received despatches informing him of the war with Mexico, and began to urge the people of California to declare their independence. The frontiersmen flocked to his standard; and a campaign was begun to overthrow the Mexican authority. In several engagements the Americans were victorious over superior numbers. Meanwhile, Commodore Sloat had captured the town of Monterey. A few days afterward Commodore Stockton took San Diego. Fremont now joined the naval commanders in a movement against Los Angelos, which was taken without opposition. Before the end of summer the whole of California was subdued. On the 8th of January, 1847, the Mexicans were decisively defeated in the battle of San Gabriel, by which the authority of the United States was completely established.

13. In the mean time, Colonel Doniphan, with seven hundred men began a march through the enemy's country from Santa Fé to Saltillo. On Christmas day, he gained the battle of Bracito, on the Rio Grande. On Sacramento Creek he met the Mexicans in overwhelming numbers, and on the 28th of February completely routed them. He then marched unopposed into Chihuahua, and finally joined General Wool in safety.

14. General Scott now arrived in Mexico and ordered the Army of Occupation to join him on the gulf for the conquest of the capital. By the withdrawal of their troops, Taylor and Wool were left in a critical condition; for Santa Anna was advancing against them with twenty thousand men. General Taylor was able to concentrate at Saltillo a force of only six thousand. His effective forces amounted to but four thousand eight hundred. At the head of this small army he chose a battle-field at Buena Vista.

15. On the 22d of February the Mexicans came pouring over the hills from the direction of San Luis Potosi. Santa Anna demanded a surrender, and was met with defiance. On the 23d the battle began. A heavy column was thrown against the American centre, but was driven back by Captain Washington's artillery. The Mexicans next fell upon the American flank, where the second regiment of Indianians gave way. But the troops of Mississippi and Kentucky were rallied to the breach; and again the enemy was hurled back. In the crisis of the battle the Mexicans made a furious charge upon Bragg's battery; but the columns of lancers were scattered with volleys of grape-shot. Against tremendous odds the field was fairly won. The Mexicans, having lost nearly two thousand men, made a precipitate retreat.

16. On the 9th of March, 1847, General Scott, with twelve thousand men, landed to the south of Vera Cruz, and invested the city. On the morning of the 22d, the cannonade was begun. On the water side Vera Cruz was defended by the castle of San Juan d'Ulloa. For four days the bombardment continued without cessation. An assault was already planned, when the authorities of the city proposed capitulation. On the 27th, terms of surrender were signed, and the American flag was raised over Vera Cruz.

17. The route to the capital was now open. On the 8th of April,

General Twiggs set out on the road to Jalapa. General Scott followed with the main division. On the 12th of the month, Twiggs came upon Santa Anna, with fifteen thousand men, on the heights of Cerro Gordo. On the 18th, the American army advanced to the assault; and before noonday every position of the Mexicans had been successfully stormed. Nearly three thousand prisoners were taken, together with forty-three pieces of bronze artillery. Santa Anna escaped with his life, but left behind his *wooden leg.*



SCENE OF SCOTT'S CAMPAIGN, 1847.

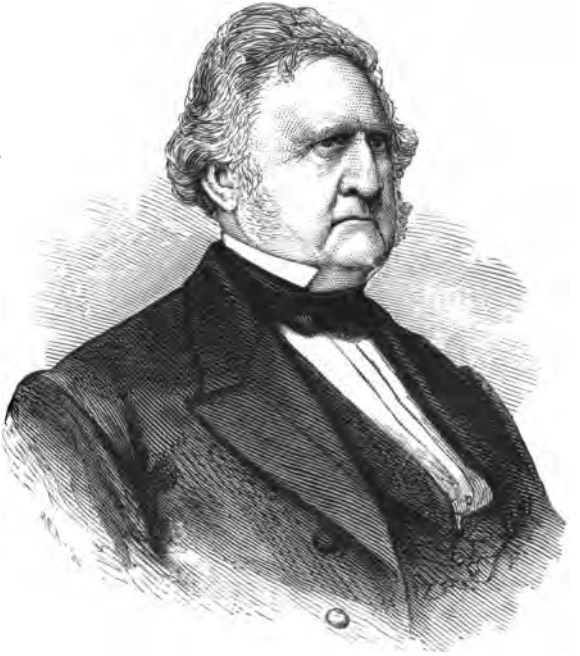
18. On the next day the victorious army entered Jalapa. The strong castle of Perote was taken without resistance. Turning southward, General Scott next led his army against the ancient city of Puebla. Though inhabited by eighty thousand people, no defence was made or attempted. Scott here waited for reïnforcements from Vera Cruz.

19. By the 7th of August, the American army was increased to eleven thousand men. General Scott again began his march upon the capital. The army swept through the passes of the Cordilleras to look down on THE VALLEY OF MEXICO. Never before had the American soldiery beheld such a scene—a living landscape of green fields, villages, and lakes.

20. At Ayotla, fifteen miles from the capital, General Scott wheeled to the south, around Lake Chalco, and thence westward to San Augustin. The city of Mexico could be approached only by causeways leading across marshes and the beds of bygone lakes. At the ends of these causeways were massive gates strongly defended. To the left were Contreras, San Antonio, and Molino del Rey. Directly in front were the powerful defences of Churubusco and Chapultepec. These various positions were held by Santa Anna with more than thirty thousand Mexicans.

21. On the 20th of August, Generals Pillow and Twiggs stormed the Mexican position at Contreras. In seventeen minutes six thou-

sand Mexicans, under General Valencia, were driven in utter rout from their fortifications. A few hours afterward General Worth carried San Antonio. This was the *second* victory. General Pillow led a column against one of the heights of Churubusco; and after a terrible assault the position was carried. This was the *third* triumph. General Twiggs added a *fourth* victory by storming another height of Churubusco; while the *fifth* was achieved by Generals Shields and Pierce, who defeated Santa Anna's reserves.



GENERAL WINFIELD SCOTT.

22. On the morning after the battles, the Mexican authorities came out to negotiate. General Scott rejected their proposals, rested his men until the 7th of September, and then renewed hostilities. On the next morning, General Worth stormed Molino del Rey and Casa de Mata, the western defences of Chapultepec. The guns were next brought to bear on Chapultepec itself, and on the 13th, that citadel was carried by storm. Through the San Cosme and Belen gates the conquering army swept into the suburbs of Mexico.

23. During the night, Santa Anna and the officers of the government fled from the city. On the following morning, forth came a deputation from the city to beg for mercy; but General Scott,

tired of trifling, turned them away with contempt. "Forward!" was the order that rang along the lines at sunrise. The war-worn regiments swept into the famous city, and at seven o'clock the flag of the Union floated over the halls of the Montezumas.

24. On leaving his capital, Santa Anna turned about to attack the hospitals at Puebla. Here eighteen hundred sick men had been left in charge of Colonel Childs. For several days a gallant resistance was made by the garrison, until General Lane, on his march to the capital, fell upon the besiegers and scattered them. It was the closing stroke of the war.

25. The military power of Mexico was completely broken. It only remained to determine the conditions of peace. In the winter of 1847–48, American ambassadors met the Mexican Congress at Guadalupe Hidalgo, and on the 2d of February, a treaty was concluded. By the terms of settlement the boundary-line between Mexico and the United States was established on the Rio Grande from its mouth to the southern limit of New Mexico; thence westward along the southern, and northward along the western, boundary of that territory to the Gila; thence down that river to the Colorado; thence westward to the Pacific. New Mexico and Upper California were relinquished to the United States. Mexico guaranteed the free navigation of the Gulf of California, and the river Colorado. The United States agreed to surrender all places in Mexico, to pay that country fifteen million dollars, and to assume all debts due from the Mexican government to American citizens.

26. A few days after the signing of the treaty, a laborer, employed by Captain Sutter to cut a mill-race on the American fork of Sacramento River, *discovered some pieces of gold in the sand.* The news spread as if borne on the wind. From all quarters adventurers came flocking. For a while there seemed no end to the discoveries. Straggling gold-hunters sometimes picked up in a few hours the value of five hundred dollars. The intelligence went flying to the ends of the world. Men thousands of miles away were crazed with excitement. Thousands of adventurers started overland to California. Before the end of 1850, San Francisco had grown to be a city of fifteen thousand inhabitants. In September of that year, California was admitted into the Union; and by the close of 1852, the State had a population of more than a quarter of a million.

27. In the first summer of President Polk's administration the country was called to mourn the death of General Jackson. The veteran warrior and statesman died at his home, called the Hermitage, in Tennessee. On the 23d of February, 1848, ex-President John Quincy Adams died at the city of Washington. He was struck with paralysis in the House of Representatives, where he had so many times electrified the nation with his eloquence.

28. In 1848 Wisconsin, last of the great States formed from the North-western Territory, was admitted into the Union. The new commonwealth came with a population of two hundred and fifty thousand. Another presidential election was already at hand. General Lewis Cass of Michigan was nominated by the Democrats, and General Zachary Taylor by the Whigs. As the candidate of the new Free-Soil party, ex-President Martin Van Buren was put forward. The real contest, however, lay between Generals Cass and Taylor. The memory of his recent victories in Mexico made General Taylor the favorite with the people, and he was elected by a large majority. As Vice-President, Millard Fillmore, of New York, was chosen.

RECAPITULATION.

Sketch of Polk.—Texas ratifies the annexation.—General Taylor sent to defend the country.—The boundary question.—Taylor ordered to the Rio Grande.—He establishes a post at Point Isabel.—Builds Fort Brown.—Beginning of hostilities.—Taylor fights the battles of Palo Alto and Resaca de la Palma.—The news in the United States.—Declaration of War.—Plan of the campaigns.—General Wool musters the forces.—Taylor captures Matamoras and Monterey.—An armistice.—Santa Anna made President of Mexico.—Saltillo is taken by Worth.—Victoria by Patterson.—Wool advances.—Kearney captures Santa Fé.—And marches to the Pacific coast.—The deeds of Colonel Fremont.—Rebellion of the Californians.—Monterey, San Diego, and Los Angelos taken.—Battle of San Gabriel.—The battles of Colonel Doniphan.—Taylor's and Wool's forces ordered to the coast.—Critical condition of Taylor's army.—Approach of Santa Anna.—Battle of Buena Vista.—Scott besieges and captures Vera Cruz.—Marches against the capital.—Battle of Cerro Gordo.—Jalapa, Perote, and Puebla are taken.—The army passes the Cordilleras.—Reaches Ayotla.—The approaches and fortifications of the city.—Storming of Contreras and San Antonio.—Churubusco is carried.—The Mexicans driven back to Chapultepec.—Scott rests his army.—Molino del Rey and Casa de Mata are stormed.—Chapultepec is taken.—Flight of the Mexican government.—The American army enters the city.—Santa Anna attacks the hospitals at Puebla.—Downfall of the Mexican authority.—The treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo.—Its terms.—The discovery of Gold in California.—Death of Jackson and John Quincy Adams.—Wisconsin is admitted.—The canvass for President.—Rise of the Free-Soil party.—Election of Taylor to the presidency.

CHAPTER LVI.

ADMINISTRATIONS OF TAYLOR AND FILLMORE, 1849-1853.

THE new President was a Virginian by birth, a soldier by profession. During the war of 1812, he distinguished himself in the Northwest. In the Seminole War he bore a part, but earned his greatest renown in Mexico. His administration began with a violent agitation on the question of slavery in the territories.



PRESIDENT TAYLOR.

2. In his first message the President advised the people of California to prepare for admission into the Union. The advice was promptly accepted. A convention was held at Monterey in September of 1849. A constitution *prohibiting slavery* was framed, submitted to the people, and adopted.

Peter H. Burnet was elected governor of the Territory; representatives were chosen; and on the 20th of December, the new government was organized at San José.

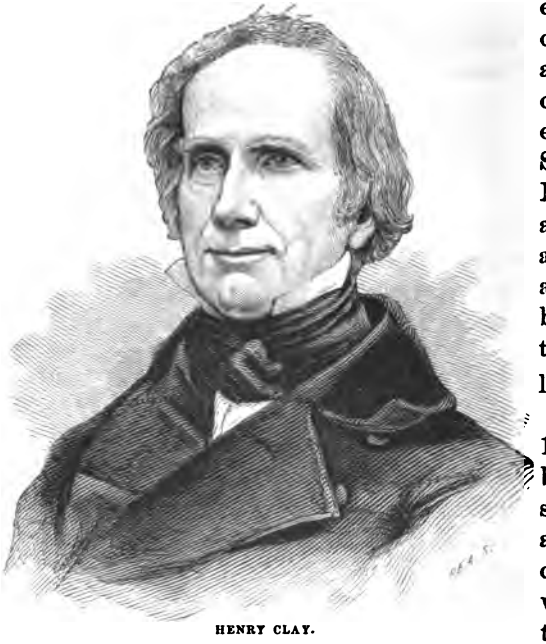
3. When the question of admitting California came before Congress the members were sectionally divided. The admission of the new State was favored by the representatives of the North and opposed by those of the South. The latter claimed that with the extension of the Missouri Compromise to the Pacific the right to introduce slavery into California was guaranteed by the general government, and that therefore the proposed constitution of the State ought to be rejected. The reply of the North was that the Missouri Compromise had respect only to the Louisiana purchase, and that the Californians had framed their constitution in their own way.

4. Other questions added fuel to the controversy. Texas claimed New Mexico as a part of her territory, and the claim was resisted by the people of Santa Fé. The people of the South complained that fugitive slaves were aided and encouraged in the North. The opponents of slavery demanded the abolition of the slave-trade in the District of Columbia.

5. Henry Clay appeared as a peacemaker. On the 9th of May, 1850, he brought forward, as a compromise, THE OMNIBUS BILL, of which the provisions were as follows: *First*, the admission of California as a free State; *second*, the formation of new States, not exceeding four in number, out of Texas, said States to permit or exclude slavery as the people should determine; *third*, the organization of territorial governments for New Mexico and Utah, without conditions as to slavery; *fourth*, the establishment of the present boundary between Texas and New Mexico; *fifth*, the enactment of a stringent law for the recovery of fugitive slaves; *sixth*, the abolition of the slave-trade in the District of Columbia.

6. When the Omnibus Bill was laid before Congress, the debates broke out anew. While the discussion was at its height, President Taylor fell sick, and died on the 9th of July, 1850. Mr. Fillmore at once took the oath of office and entered upon the duties of the presidency. A new cabinet was formed, with Daniel Webster at the head as secretary of state.

7. On the 18th of September, the compromise proposed by Mr. Clay was adopted, and received the sanction of the President. The excitement in the country rapidly abated, and the controversy seemed at an end. Shortly afterward Mr. Clay bade adieu to the Senate, and sought at Ashland a brief rest from the cares of public life.



HENRY CLAY.

8. The year 1850 was marked by an attempt of some American adventurers to conquer Cuba. It was thought that the Cubans were anxious to annex themselves to the United States. General Lopez organized an expedition in the South, and on the 19th of May, 1850, effected a landing at Cardenas, a port of Cuba. But there was no uprising in his favor; and he was obliged to return to Florida. Renewing the attempt in the following year, he and his band were defeated and captured by the Spaniards. Lopez and the ringleaders were taken to Havana and executed.

9. In 1852 a serious trouble arose with England. By the terms of former treaties the coast-fisheries of Newfoundland belonged to Great Britain. But outside of a line drawn three miles from the shore American fishermen enjoyed equal rights. A quarrel now arose as to how the line should be drawn across the bays and inlets; and both nations sent men-of-war to the contested waters. But reason triumphed over passion, and in 1854 the difficulty was settled happily

by negotiation; and the right to take fish in the bays of the British possessions was conceded to American fishermen.

10. During the summer of 1852, the Hungarian patriot Louis Kossuth made the tour of the United States. He came to plead the cause of Hungary before the American people, and was everywhere received with expressions of sympathy and good-will. But the policy of the United States forbade the government to interfere on behalf of the Hungarian patriots.



JOHN C. CALHOUN.

11. The attention of the American people was next directed to explorations in the Arctic Ocean. In 1845 Sir John Franklin, a brave English seaman, went on a voyage of discovery to the North. Years went by, and no tidings came from the daring sailor. Other expeditions were sent in search, but returned without success. Henry Grinnell, of New York, despatched a fleet to the North, under command of Lieutenant De Haven. In 1853 an Arctic squadron was equipped, the command of which was given to Dr. Elisha Kent Kane; but the expedition returned without the discovery of Franklin.

12. During the administrations of Taylor and Fillmore, many distinguished men fell by the hand of death. On the 31st of

March, 1850, John C. Calhoun of South Carolina passed away. At the age of sixty-eight he fell from his place like a scarred oak of the forest never to rise again. His death was much lamented, especially in his own State, to whose interests he had devoted the energies of his life. Then followed the death of the President; and then, on the 28th of June, 1852, the great Henry Clay sank to rest. On the 24th of the following October, Daniel Webster died at his home at Marshfield, Massachusetts. The office of secretary of state was then conferred on Edward Everett.

13. The political parties again marshaled their forces. Franklin Pierce of New Hampshire appeared as the candidate of the Democratic party, and General Winfield Scott as the choice of the Whigs. The question at issue before the country was the Compromise Act of 1850. Both the Whig and Democratic platforms stoutly reäffirmed the doctrines of the Omnibus Bill. A third party arose, however, whose members declared that *all* the Territories of the United States ought to be free. John P. Hale of New Hampshire was put forward as the candidate of this Free Soil party. Mr. Pierce was elected by a large majority, and William R. King of Alabama was chosen Vice-President.

RECAPITULATION.

Sketch of the chief magistrate.—The question of slavery in California.—A territorial government is organized.—The controversy in Congress.—Other political vexations.—Clay as a peacemaker.—Passage of the Omnibus Bill.—And its provisions.—Death of the President.—The slavery excitement subsides.—Retirement of Mr. Clay.—The Cuban expedition is organized.—Lopez and his associates are executed.—The difficulty about the coast fisheries is settled by a treaty.—The tour of Kossuth.—Arctic expeditions of Franklin, De Haven, and Kane.—Death of Calhoun, Clay, and Webster.—The candidates for the presidency.—Pierce is elected

CHAPTER LVII.

PIERCE'S ADMINISTRATION, 1853–1857.

THE new chief magistrate was a native of New Hampshire, a graduate of Bowdoin College, and a statesman of considerable abilities. On account of ill health, Mr. King, the Vice-President, was sojourning in Cuba. Growing more feeble, he returned to Alabama, where he died in April, 1853. As secretary of state, William L. Marcy of New York was chosen.

2. In 1853 a corps of engineers was sent out to explore the route for A PACIFIC RAILROAD. The enterprise was at first regarded as visionary and impossible. In the same year, the boundary between New Mexico and Chihuahua was satisfactorily settled. The difficulty was adjusted by the purchase of the claim of Mexico. The territory thus acquired is known as THE GADSDEN PURCHASE.

3. In the same year intercourse was opened between the United States and Japan. Hitherto the Japanese ports had been closed against the vessels of Christian nations. In order to remove this restriction, Commodore Perry sailed into the Bay of Yeddo. He explained to the Japanese officers the desire of the United States to enter into a treaty. On the 14th of July, the commodore obtained an audience with the emperor, and presented a letter from the President. In the next spring, a treaty was concluded; and the privileges of commerce were granted to American merchantmen.

4. On the very day of Perry's introduction to the emperor, the Crystal Palace was opened in New York for the WORLD'S FAIR. The palace was built of iron and glass. Specimens of the arts and manufactures of all nations were put on exhibition within the building. The enterprise and genius of the whole country were quickened into new life by the beautiful and instructive display.

5. In January of 1854, Senator Douglas of Illinois brought for-

ward a proposition to organize Kansas and Nebraska. In the bill reported for this purpose a clause was inserted providing that the people of the territories *should decide for themselves* whether the new State should be free or slaveholding. This was a repeal of the Missouri Compromise of 1821. From January until May, Mr. Douglas's report, known as THE KANSAS-NEBRASKA BILL, was debated in Congress, and finally passed.

6. Whether the new State should admit slavery now depended upon the vote of the people. The territory was soon filled with an agitated mass of people, thousands of whom had been sent thither *to vote.* In the elections of 1854–55, the pro-slavery party was triumphant. The State Legislature at Lecompton framed a constitution permitting slavery. The Free Soil party, declaring the elections to have been illegal, assembled at Topeka, and framed a constitution excluding slavery. Civil war broke out between the factions. In September of 1855, the President appointed John W. Geary of Pennsylvania military governor of Kansas, with power to restore order. The hostile parties were soon quieted; but the agitation had already extended to all parts of the Union. The Kansas question became the issue in the presidential election of 1856.

7. James Buchanan of Pennsylvania was nominated as the Democratic candidate. He planted himself on the Kansas-Nebraska Bill, and secured a heavy vote both North and South. As the candidate of the Free Soil or People's party, John C. Fremont of California was brought forward. The exclusion of slavery from all the Territories was the principle of the Free Soil platform. The American or Know-Nothing party nominated Millard Fillmore. Mr. Buchanan was elected by a large majority, while the choice for the vice-presidency fell on John C. Breckinridge of Kentucky.

RECAPITULATION.

Sketch of Franklin Pierce.—A route for a Pacific Railroad is explored.—Settlement of the boundary of New Mexico.—The Japanese ports are opened to the United States.—The World's Fair.—A bill to organize Kansas and Nebraska is passed.—Renewal of the slavery agitation.—The troubles in Kansas.—Geary sent thither as military governor.—Marshaling of parties on the slavery question.—Buchanan is elected to the presidency

CHAPTER LVIII.

BUCHANAN'S ADMINISTRATION, 1857–1861.

JAMES BUCHANAN was a native of Pennsylvania, born on the 13th of April, 1791. In 1831 he was appointed minister to Russia, was afterward Senator of the United States, and secretary of state under President Polk. In 1853 he received the appointment of minister to Great Britain. As secretary of state in the new cabinet General Lewis Cass of Michigan was chosen.

2. In the first year of Buchanan's administration, a serious trouble occurred with the Mormons. The difficulty arose from an attempt to enforce the authority of the United States over Utah. An army of two thousand five hundred men was sent to the territory in 1857 to establish courts and compel obedience. For a while the Mormons resisted; but when, in the following summer, the President proclaimed a pardon to all who would submit, they yielded; and order was restored. But the troops were not withdrawn from Utah until 1860.

3. Early in 1858, an American vessel, while exploring the Paraguay River, in South America, was fired on by a garrison. Reparation for the insult was demanded; but the government was obliged to send out a fleet to obtain satisfaction. The authorities of Paraguay finally quailed before the American flag, and apologies were made for the wrong which had been committed.

4. The 5th of August, 1858, was noted for the completion of THE FIRST TELEGRAPHIC CABLE across the Atlantic. The success of this great work was due to the genius of Cyrus W. Field of New York. The cable was stretched from Trinity Bay, Newfoundland, to Valentia Bay, Ireland; and telegraphic communication was established between the Old World and the New.

5. In 1858 Minnesota was added to the Union. The population of the new State was a hundred and fifty thousand. In the next

year, Oregon, the thirty-third State, was admitted, with a population of forty-eight thousand. On the 4th of the preceding March, General Sam Houston of Texas, one of the most remarkable civil and military heroes of the nation, bade adieu to the Senate of the United States and retired to private life.



GENERAL SAM HOUSTON.

6. The slavery question continued to vex the nation. In 1857 the Supreme Court of the United States, after hearing the cause of Dred Scott, formerly a slave, decided *that negroes are not, and cannot become, citizens.* Thereupon, in several of the free States, PERSONAL LIBERTY BILLS were passed, to defeat the Fugitive Slave Law. In the fall of 1859, John Brown of Kansas, with a party of twenty-one daring men, captured the arsenal at Harper's Ferry, and held his ground for two days. The national troops were called out to suppress the revolt. Thirteen of Brown's men were killed, two made their escape, and the rest were captured. The leader and his six companions were tried by the authorities of Virginia, condemned and hanged. In Kansas the Free Soil party gained ground so rapidly as to make it certain that slavery would be interdicted from the State.

7. In the presidential canvass of 1860, the candidate of the Republican party was Abraham Lincoln of Illinois. The distinct principle of this party was opposition to the extension of slavery. In April the Democratic convention assembled at Charleston; but the

Southern delegates withdrew from the assembly. The rest adjourned to Baltimore and chose Douglas as their standard-bearer. There also the delegates from the South reassembled in June, and nominated John C. Breckinridge of Kentucky. The American party chose John Bell of Tennessee as their candidate. The contest resulted in the election of Mr. Lincoln.

8. The leaders of the South had declared that the choice of Lincoln for the presidency would be a just cause for the dissolution of the Union. A majority of the cabinet and a large number of senators and representatives in Congress were advocates of disunion. It was seen that all the departments of the government would shortly pass under the control of the Republican party. The President was not himself a disunionist; but he declared himself not armed with the constitutional power to prevent secession by force. The interval, therefore, between the election and the inauguration of Mr. Lincoln, was seized by the leaders of the South as the fitting time for dissolving the Union.

9. The work of secession began in South Carolina. On the 17th of December, 1860, a convention met at Charleston, and after three days passed a resolution *that the union hitherto existing between South Carolina and the other States, was dissolved.* The sentiment of disunion spread with great rapidity. By the first of February, 1861, six other States—Mississippi, Florida, Alabama, Georgia, Louisiana, and Texas—had all passed ordinances of secession. Nearly all the senators and representatives of those States resigned their seats in Congress and gave themselves to the disunion cause.

10. In the secession conventions a few of the speakers denounced disunion as bad and ruinous. In the convention of Georgia, Alexander H. Stephens, afterward Vice-President of the Confederate States, undertook to prevent the secession of his State. He delivered a powerful oration in which he defended the theory of secession, but spoke against it on the ground that *the measure was impolitic, unwise, disastrous.*

11. On the 4th of February, 1861, delegates from six of the seceded States assembled at Montgomery, Alabama, and formed a new government, called THE CONFEDERATE STATES OF AMERICA. On the 8th, the government was organized by the election of Jef-

ferson Davis of Mississippi as provisional President, and Alexander H. Stephens as Vice-President. A few days previously a peace conference met at Washington, and proposed certain amendments to the Constitution. But Congress gave little heed; and the conference adjourned.



ALEXANDER H. STEPHENS.

12. The country seemed on the verge of ruin. The army was on remote frontiers — the fleet in distant seas. The President was distracted. With the exception of Forts Sumter, Moultrie, Pickens, and Monroe, all the important posts in the seceded States had been seized by the Confederate authorities. Early in January, the President sent the *Star of the West* to reïnforce Fort Sumter. But the ship was fired on by a battery and driven away from Charleston. Thus in gloom and grief the administration of Buchanan drew to a close. Such was the alarming condition of affairs that it was deemed prudent for the new President *to enter the capital by night.*

RECAPITULATION.

Sketch of the President.—The Mormon difficulty is settled.—A trouble with Paraguay is quieted by treaty.—The first Atlantic cable is laid.—Minnesota is admitted.—Retirement of Houston.—The Dred Scott decision and Personal Liberty bills.—John Brown's insurrection.—The political parties again divide on the slavery question.—Lincoln is elected President.—Condition of affairs in the government.—Position of Buchanan.—Seven States withdraw from the Union.—Position of Stephens.—Organization of the Provisional Confederate government.—Davis for President.—The peace movements end in failure.—Seizure of forts and arsenals by the Confederates.—The *Star of the West* is driven off from Sumter.—The President elect reaches Washington.

CHAPTER LIX.

LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION AND THE CIVIL WAR, 1861-1865.

ABRAHAM LINCOLN was a native of Kentucky, born on the 12th of February, 1809. At the age of seven he was taken to Southern Indiana, where his boyhood was passed in poverty and toil. On reaching his majority, he removed to Illinois, where he distinguished himself as a lawyer. He gained a national reputation in 1858, when, as the competitor of Stephen A. Douglas, he canvassed Illinois for the United States Senate.



ABRAHAM LINCOLN.

2. The new cabinet was organized with William H. Seward of New York as secretary of state. Salmon P. Chase of Ohio was chosen secretary of the treasury, and Simon Cameron secretary of war; but he was soon succeeded by Edwin M. Stanton. The secretaryship of the navy was conferred on Gideon Welles. In his inaugural address the President indicated his policy by declaring his purpose to repossess the forts and public

property which had been seized by the Confederates. On the 12th of March, an effort was made by the seceded States to obtain from the national government a recognition of their independence; but the negotiations failed. Then followed a second attempt on the part of the government to reïnforce Fort Sumter.

3. The defences of Charleston were held by seventy-nine men under Major Robert Anderson. With this small force he retired to Fort Sumter. Confederate volunteers flocked to the city, and batteries were built about the harbor. The authorities of the Confederate States determined to anticipate the movement of the government by compelling Anderson to surrender. On the 11th of April, General P. T. Beauregard, commandant of Charleston, sent a flag to Sumter, demanding an evacuation. Major Anderson replied that he should defend the fortress. On the following morning the first gun was fired from a Confederate battery; and a bombardment of thirty-four hours' duration followed. The fort was obliged to capitulate. The honors of war were granted to Anderson and his men.

4. Three days after the fall of Sumter the President issued a call for seventy-five thousand volunteers to serve three months in the overthrow of the secession movement. Two days later Virginia seceded from the Union. On the 6th of May, Arkansas followed, and then North Carolina, on the 20th of the month. In Tennessee there was a powerful opposition to disunion, and it was not until the 8th of June that a secession ordinance could be passed. In Missouri the movement resulted in civil war, while in Kentucky the authorities issued a proclamation of neutrality. The people of Maryland were divided into hostile parties.

5. On the 19th of April, when the Massachusetts volunteers were passing through Baltimore they were fired upon by the citizens, and three men killed. This was the first bloodshed of the war. On the day previous, a body of Confederate soldiers captured the armory of the United States at Harper's Ferry. On the 20th of the month, another company obtained possession of the great navy yard at Norfolk. The property thus captured amounted to fully ten millions of dollars. For a while, Washington city was in danger of being taken. On the 3d of May, the President issued a

call for eighty-three thousand soldiers to serve for three years or during the war. General Winfield Scott was made commander-in-chief. War ships were sent to blockade the Southern ports. In the seceded States there was boundless activity. The Southern Congress adjourned from Montgomery, to meet on the 20th of July, at Richmond. There Mr. Davis and the officers of his cabinet had assembled to direct the affairs of the government. So stood the antagonistic powers in the beginning of June, 1861. It is appropriate to look briefly into THE CAUSES of the conflict.

RECAPITULATION.

Sketch of Abraham Lincoln.—Organization of his cabinet.—His purpose to repossess the forts of the United States.—Preparations to reinforce Sumter.—Confederate movements in Charleston.—Bombardment and fall of Sumter.—The call for troops.—Secession of Virginia, Arkansas, North Carolina, and Tennessee.—The soldiers attacked in Baltimore.—Capture of Harper's Ferry and the Norfolk navy yard.—Activity and preparations.—Davis and his cabinet at Richmond.

CHAPTER LX.

CAUSES.

THE most general cause of the civil war in the United States was *the different construction put upon the Constitution by the people of the North and the South.* A difference of opinion existed as to how that instrument was to be understood. One party held that the Union of the States is indissoluble; that the States are subordinate to the central government; that the acts of Congress are binding on the States; and that all attempts at nullification and disunion are disloyal and treasonable. The other party held that the national Constitution is a compact between sovereign States; that for certain reasons the Union may be dissolved; that the sovereignty of the nation belongs to the individual States; that a State may

annul an act of Congress; that the highest allegiance of the citizen is due to his own State; and that nullification and disunion are justifiable and honorable.

2. This question struck into the very heart of the government. It threatened to undo the whole civil structure of the United States. In the earlier history of the country the doctrine of State sovereignty was most advocated in New England. Afterward the people of that section passed over to the advocacy of national sovereignty, while the people of the South took up the doctrine of State rights. As early as 1831, the right of nullifying an act of Congress was openly advocated in South Carolina. Thus it happened that the belief in State sovereignty became more prevalent in the South than in the North.

3. A second cause of the civil war was *the different system of labor in the North and in the South.* In the former section the laborers were freemen; in the latter, slaves. In the South the theory was that capital should own labor; in the North that both labor and capital are free. In the beginning all the colonies had been slave-holding. In the Eastern and Middle States the system of slave-labor had been abolished. In the North-western Territory slavery was excluded from the beginning. Thus there came to be a dividing line drawn through the Union. Whenever the question of slavery was agitated, a sectional division would arise between the North and the South. The danger arising from this source was increased by several subordinate causes.

4. The first of these was the invention of THE COTTON GIN. In 1793 Eli Whitney, of Massachusetts, went to Georgia, and resided with the family of Mrs. Greene, widow of General Greene. His attention was directed to the tedious process of picking cotton by hand. So slow was the work that the production of upland cotton was profitless. Mr. Whitney succeeded in inventing a gin which astonished all beholders. From being profitless, cotton suddenly became the most profitable of all the staples. It was estimated that Whitney's gin added a thousand millions of dollars to the revenues of the Southern States. Just in proportion to the increased profitableness of cotton, slave-labor grew in demand and slavery became an important and deep-rooted institution.

5. From this time onward, there was constant danger of disunion. In THE MISSOURI AGITATION of 1820–21, threats of dissolving the Union were freely made in both the North and the South. When the Missouri Compromise was enacted, it was the hope of Mr. Clay and his fellow-statesmen to save the Union by removing the slavery question from the politics of the country.

6. Next came THE NULLIFICATION ACTS of South Carolina. The Southern States had become cotton-producing; the Eastern States had given themselves to manufacturing. The tariff measures favored manufacturers at the expense of producers. Mr. Calhoun proposed to remedy the evil by annulling the laws of Congress; and another compromise was found necessary in order to allay the animosities which had been awakened.

7. THE ANNEXATION OF TEXAS led to a renewal of the Agitation. Those who opposed the Mexican War did so because of the fact that thereby slavery would be extended. At the close of the war came an enormous acquisition of territory. Whether the same should be made into free or slaveholding States was the question next agitated. This controversy led to the passage of THE OMNIBUS BILL, by which the excitement was again allayed.

8. In 1854 THE KANSAS-NEBRASKA bill opened the question anew. Meanwhile, the character of the Northern and the Southern people had become quite different. In population and wealth the North had far outgrown the South. In 1860 Mr. Lincoln was elected by the votes of the Northern States. The people of the South were exasperated at the choice of a chief-magistrate whom they regarded as hostile to their interests.

9. The third general cause of the war was *the want of intercourse between the people of the North and the South.* The great railroads ran east and west. Emigration flowed from the East to the West. Between the North and the South there was little travel or interchange of opinion. From want of acquaintance the people became estranged and jealous. They misrepresented each other's beliefs, and suspected each other of dishonesty and ill-will.

10. A fourth cause was *the publication of sectional books.* During the twenty years preceding the war, many works were published whose popularity depended on the animosity existing between the

two sections. In such books the manners and customs of one section were held up to the contempt of the people of the other section. In the North the belief was fostered that the South was given up to inhumanity; while in the South the opinion prevailed that the Northern people were a mean race of cowardly Yankees.

11. *The evil influence of demagogues* may be cited as the fifth general cause of the war. From 1850 to 1860, American statesmanship and patriotism were at a low ebb. Ambitious and scheming politicians had obtained control of the political parties. The welfare of the country was put aside as of little value. In order to gain power, many unprincipled men in the South were anxious *to destroy* the Union, while others in the North were willing *to abuse* the Union for the same purpose.

12. Added to all these causes was *a growing public opinion in the North against the institution of slavery itself;* a belief that slavery was wrong and ought to be destroyed. This opinion, comparatively feeble at the beginning of the war, was rapidly developed, and had much to do in determining the final character of the conflict.

RECAPITULATION.

The causes.—First, the different construction of the Constitution in the North and the South.—Fatal character of this dispute.—Second, the system of slavery.—The cotton gin.—The Missouri agitation.—The annexation of Texas, and the Mexican War.—The nullification measures of South Carolina.—The Omnibus Bill.—The Kansas-Nebraska imbroglio.—Third, the want of intercourse between the North and the South.—Fourth, the publication of sectional books.—Fifth, the influence of demagogues.—Sixth, hostility to slavery itself.

CHAPTER LXI.

FIRST YEAR OF THE WAR.

ON the 24th of May, the Union army crossed the Potomac from Washington to Alexandria. At this time Fortress Monroe was held by twelve thousand men, under General B. F. Butler. At Bethel Church, in that vicinity, was stationed a detachment of

Confederates commanded by General Magruder. On the 10th of June, a body of Union troops was sent to dislodge them, but was repulsed with considerable loss.

2. In the last of May, General T. A. Morris moved forward from Parkersburg to Grafton, West Virginia. On the 3d of June, he defeated a force of Confederates at Philippi. General George B. McClellan now took the command, and on the 11th of July, gained a victory at Rich Mountain. General Garnett, the Confederate commander, fell back to Carrick's Ford, on Cheat River, where he was again defeated and himself killed. On the 10th of August, General Floyd, with a detachment of Confederates at Carnifex Ferry, on Gauley River, was attacked by General William S. Rosecrans and obliged to retreat. On the 14th of September, the Confederates under General Robert E. Lee were beaten in an engagement at Cheat Mountain.

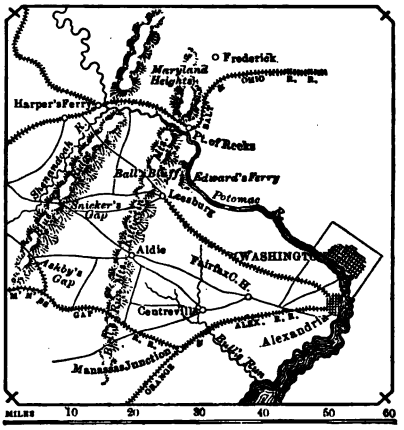


SCENE OF OPERATIONS IN WEST VIRGINIA, 1861.

3. In the beginning of June, General Robert Patterson marched against Harper's Ferry. On the 11th of the month, a division commanded by Colonel Lewis Wallace made a successful onset upon the Confederates, at Romney. Patterson then crossed the Potomac and pressed back the Confederate forces to Winchester. Thus far there had been only petty engagements and skirmishes. The time had now come for the first great battle of the war.

4. The main body of the Confederates, under General Beauregard, was concentrated at Manassas Junction, twenty-seven miles west of Alexandria. Another large force, commanded by General Joseph E. Johnston, was in the Shenandoah Valley. The Union army at Alexandria was commanded by General Irwin McDowell, while General Patterson was stationed in front of Johnston. On the 16th of July, the national army moved forward, and on the morning of the 21st, came upon the Confederate army, between

Bull Run and Manassas Junction. A general battle ensued, continuing with great severity until noonday. In the crisis of the conflict General Johnston arrived with nearly six thousand fresh troops from the Shenandoah Valley; and in a short time McDowell's army was hurled back in rout and confusion into the defences of Washington. The Union loss in killed, wounded and prisoners amounted to two thousand nine hundred and fifty-two; that of the Confederates to two thousand and fifty.



VICINITY OF MANASSAS JUNCTION, 1861.

5. Meanwhile, on the 20th of July, the new Confederate government was organized at Richmond. Jefferson Davis, the President, was a man of wide experience in the affairs of state, and considerable reputation as a soldier. He had served in both houses of the national Congress, and as a member of Pierce's cabinet. His decision of character and advocacy of State rights had made him a natural leader of the South.

6. The next military movements were made in Missouri. A convention, called by Governor Jackson in the previous March, had refused to pass an ordinance of secession. But the disunionists were numerous and powerful; and the State became a battle-field. Both Federal and Confederate camps were organized. By capturing the United States arsenal at Liberty, the Confederates obtained a supply of arms and ammunition. By the formation of Camp Jackson, near St. Louis, the arsenal in that city was endangered; but by the vigilance of Captain Nathaniel Lyon the arms and stores were sent to Springfield.

7. The Confederates now hurried up troops from Arkansas and Texas in order to secure the lead mines in the southwest part of the State. On the 17th of June, Lyon defeated Governor Jackson at Booneville, and on the 5th of July, the Unionists, led

by Colonel Franz Sigel, were again successful in a fight at Carthage. On the 10th of August, a hard battle was fought at Wilson's Creek, near Springfield. General Lyon made a daring attack on the Confederates under Generals McCulloch and Price. The Federals at first gained the field, but General Lyon was killed, and his men retreated.



JEFFERSON DAVIS.

8. General Price now pressed northward to Lexington, which was defended by two thousand six hundred Federals, commanded by Colonel Mulligan. A stubborn defence was made, but Mulligan was obliged to capitulate. On the 16th of October, Lexington was retaken by the Federals. General John C. Fremont followed the retreating Confederates as far as Springfield, when he was superseded by General Hunter. The latter retreated to St. Louis, and Price fell back toward Arkansas.

9. Notwithstanding the neutrality of Kentucky, the Confederate general Polk entered the State and captured the town of Columbus. The Confederates also gathered in force at Belmont, on the opposite bank of the Mississippi. Colonel Ulysses S. Grant, with three thousand Illinois troops, was now sent into Missouri. On the 7th of November, he made a successful attack on the Confederate camp at Belmont; but was afterward obliged to retreat.

10. After the rout at Bull Run, troops were rapidly hurried to Washington. The aged General Scott retired from active duty, and General McClellan took command of the Army of the Potomac.

By October his forces had increased to a hundred and fifty thousand men. On the 21st of that month, two thousand troops were thrown across the Potomac at Ball's Bluff. Without proper support, the Federals were attacked by a force of Confederates under General Evans, driven to the river, their leader, Colonel Baker, killed, and the whole force routed with a loss of eight hundred men.



SCENE OF OPERATIONS IN THE SOUTH-WEST, 1861.

11. In the summer of 1861, a naval expedition, commanded by Commodore Stringham and General Butler, proceeded to the North Carolina coast, and on the 29th of August, captured the forts at Hatteras Inlet. On the 7th of November, an armament, under Commodore Dupont and General Thomas W. Sherman, reached Port Royal, and captured Forts Walker and Beauregard. The blockade became so rigorous that communication between the Confederate States and foreign nations was cut off. In this juncture of affairs, a serious difficulty arose with Great Britain.

12. The Confederate government appointed James M. Mason and John Slidell as ambassadors to France and England. The envoys, escaping from Charleston, reached Havana in safety. At that port they took passage on the British steamer *Trent* for Europe. On the 8th of November, the vessel was overtaken by the United States frigate *San Jacinto*, commanded by Captain Wilkes. The *Trent* was hailed and boarded; the two ambassadors were seized, transferred to the *San Jacinto*, and carried to Boston. When the *Trent* reached England, the whole kingdom burst out in a blaze of wrath.

13. At first the government of the United States was disposed to defend Captain Wilkes's action. Had such a course been taken, war would have been inevitable. The country was saved from the peril by the diplomacy of William H. Seward, the secretary of state. When Great Britain demanded reparation for the insult and the liberation of the prisoners, he replied in a mild, cautious, and very able paper. It was conceded that the seizure of Mason and Slidell was not justifiable according to the law of nations. An apology was made for the wrong done; the Confederate ambassadors were liberated, put on board a vessel, and sent to their destination. So ended the first year of the civil war.



WILLIAM H. SEWARD.

RECAPITULATION.

Advance of the Union army.—Fight at Bethel Church.—Morris and McClellan move forward in West Virginia.—Engagements at Philippi, Rich Mountain, Carrick's Ford, Carnifex Ferry, Cheat Mountain and Romney.—The Confederates concentrate at Manassas.—The national forces advance.—The battle and the rout.—The Confederate government at Richmond.—Notice of Davis.—Affairs in Missouri.—Confederates capture Liberty.—Form Camp Jackson.—Lyon defends St. Louis.—Battles of Carthage and Springfield.—Price captures Lexington.—Fremont pursues him.—And is superseded.—Grant captures Belmont.—McClellan is made commander-in-chief.—The disaster at Ball's Bluff.—Hatteras Inlet and Port Royal secured by the Federals.—Capture of Mason and Slidell.—They are released by Mr. Seward.

CHAPTER LXII.

CAMPAIGNS OF '62.

THE Federal forces now numbered about four hundred and fifty thousand men. Of these nearly two hundred thousand, under General McClellan, were encamped near Washington. Another army, commanded by General Buell, was stationed at Louisville, Kentucky. On the 9th of January, Colonel Humphrey Marshall, commanding a force of Confederates on Big Sandy River, was defeated by a body of Unionists, led by Colonel Garfield. Ten days later, an important battle was fought at Mill Spring, Kentucky. The Confederates, under Generals Crittenden and Zollicoffer, were severely defeated by the forces of General George H. Thomas. Zollicoffer was killed in the battle.

2. At the beginning of the year, the capture of Forts Henry and Donelson, on the Tennessee and the Cumberland, was planned by General Halleck. Commodore Foote was sent up the Tennessee with a fleet of gunboats, and General Grant was ordered to move forward against Fort Henry. Before the land-forces reached that place, the flotilla compelled the evacuation of the fort, the Confederates escaping to Donelson.

3. The Federal gunboats now dropped down the Tennessee and then ascended the Cumberland. Grant pressed on from Fort Henry, and began the siege of Fort Donelson. The defences were manned by ten thousand Confederates, under General Buckner. Grant's force numbered nearly thirty thousand. On the 16th of February, Buckner was obliged to surrender. His army became prisoners of war, and all the magazines, stores and guns of the fort fell into the hands of the Federals.

4. General Grant now ascended the Tennessee to Pittsburg Landing. A camp was established at Shiloh Church, near the river;

and here, on the 6th of April, the Union army was attacked by the Confederates, led by Generals Albert S. Johnston and Beauregard. All day long the battle raged with great slaughter on both sides. Night fell on the scene with the conflict undecided; but in the crisis General Buell arrived with strong reïnforcements. In the morning General Grant assumed the offensive. General Johnston had been killed, and Beauregard was obliged to retreat to Corinth. The losses in killed, wounded and missing were more than ten thousand on each side.

5. After the Confederates evacuated Columbus, Kentucky, they fortified Island Number Ten in the Mississippi, opposite New Madrid. Against this place General Pope advanced with a body of Western troops, while Commodore Foote descended the Mississippi with his gunboats. Pope captured New Madrid; and for twenty-three days Island Number Ten was besieged. On the 7th of April, the Confederates attempted to escape; but Pope had cut off the retreat, and the garrison, numbering five thousand, was captured. On the 6th of June, the city of Memphis was taken by the fleet of Commodore Davis.

6. Early in the year, General Curtis pushed forward into Arkansas and took position at Pea Ridge, among the Mountains. Here he was attacked on the 6th of March by twenty thousand Confederates and Indians, under Generals McCulloch, McIntosh, and Pike. A hard-fought battle ensued, lasting for two days. The Federals were victorious; McCulloch and McIntosh were killed, and their men obliged to retreat toward Texas.

7. After the destruction of the navy yard at Norfolk, the Confederates had raised the frigate *Merrimac*, one of the sunken ships, and plated the sides with iron. The vessel was then sent to attack the Union fleet at Fortress Monroe. Reaching that place on the 8th of March, the *Merrimac* began the work of destruction; and two valuable vessels, the *Cumberland* and the *Congress*, were sent to the bottom. During the night, however, a strange ship, called the *Monitor*, invented by Captain John Ericsson, arrived from New York; and on the following morning, the two iron-clad monsters turned their enginery upon each other. After fighting for five hours, the *Merrimac* was obliged to retire badly damaged to Norfolk.

8. On the 8th of February, a Federal squadron, commanded by General Ambrose E. Burnside and Commodore Goldsborough, attacked the Confederate fortifications on Roanoke Island. The garrison, nearly three thousand strong, were taken prisoners. Burnside next proceeded against Newbern, and on the 14th of March, captured the city. Proceeding southward, he reached the harbor of Beaufort, and on the 25th of April, took possession of the town.

9. On the 11th of the same month, Fort Pulaski, at the mouth of the Savannah, surrendered to General Gillmore. Early in April, a powerful squadron, under General Butler and Admiral Farragut, ascended the Mississippi and attacked Forts Jackson and St. Philip, thirty miles above the gulf. From the 18th to the 24th, the fight continued without cessation. At the end of that time Admiral Farragut succeeded in running past the batteries. On the next day, he reached New Orleans and captured the city. General Butler became commandant, and the fortifications were manned with fifteen thousand Federal soldiers. Three days afterwards, Forts Jackson and St. Philip surrendered to Admiral Porter.

10. The Confederates now invaded Kentucky, in two strong divisions, the one led by General Kirby Smith and the other by General Bragg. On the 30th of August, Smith's army reached Richmond, and routed the Federals stationed there, with heavy losses. Lexington was taken, and then Frankfort; and Cincinnati was saved from capture only by the exertions of General Wallace. Meanwhile, the army of General Bragg advanced from Chattanooga, and, on the 17th of September, captured a Federal division of four thousand five hundred men at Mumfordsville. The Confederate general pressed on toward Louisville, and would have taken the city but for the arrival of General Buell. Buell's army was increased to a hundred thousand men. In October he again took the field, and on the 8th of the month, overtook General Bragg at Perryville. Here a severe but indecisive battle was fought; and the Confederates, laden with spoils, continued their retreat into East Tennessee.

11. On the 19th of September, a hard battle was fought at Iuka between a Federal army, under Generals Rosecrans and Grant, and a Confederate force, under General Price. The latter was defeated,

losing, in addition to his killed and wounded, nearly a thousand prisoners. Rosecrans now took post at Corinth with twenty thousand men; while Grant, with the remainder of the Federal forces, proceeded to Jackson, Tennessee. Generals Van Dorn and Price turned about to recapture Corinth. There, on the 3d of October, another severe battle ensued, which ended, after two days' fighting, in the repulse of the Confederates.

12. General Grant next moved forward to coöperate with General Sherman in an effort to capture Vicksburg. On the 20th of December General Van Dorn cut Grant's line of supplies at Holly Springs, and obliged him to retreat. On the same day, General Sherman dropped down the river from Memphis to the Yazoo. On the 29th of the month, he made an unsuccessful attack on the Confederates at Chickasaw Bayou. The assault was exceedingly disastrous to the Federals, who lost in killed, wounded, and prisoners more than three thousand men.

13. General Rosecrans was now transferred to the command of the Army of the Cumberland, with headquarters at Nashville. General Bragg, on his retirement from Kentucky, had thrown his forces into Murfreesborough. Rosecrans moved forward, and on the 30th of December, came upon the Confederates on Stone's River, a short distance north-west of Murfreesborough. On the following morning a furious battle ensued, continuing until nightfall. The Union army was brought to the verge of ruin. But during the night Rosecrans rallied his forces, and at daybreak was ready to renew the conflict. On that day there was a lull. On the morning of the 2d of January, Bragg's army again rushed to the onset, gained some successes at first, was then checked, and finally driven back with heavy losses. Bragg withdrew his shattered columns, and filed off toward Chattanooga.

14. In Virginia the first scenes of the year were enacted in the Shenandoah Valley. General Banks was sent forward with a strong division, and in the last of March, occupied the town of Harrisonburg. To counteract this movement, Stonewall Jackson was sent with twenty thousand men to pass the Blue Ridge and cut off Banks's retreat. At Front Royal, the Confederates fell upon the Federals, routed them, and captured their guns and stores. Banks

succeeded, however, in passing with his main division to Strasburg and escaping out of the valley.

15. Jackson now found himself in great peril. For General Fremont had been sent into the valley to intercept the Confederate retreat. But Jackson succeeded in reaching Cross Keys before Fremont could attack him. The battle was so little decisive that Jackson pressed on to Port Republic, where he attacked and defeated the division of General Shields.



SCENE OF CAMPAIGN IN VIRGINIA, MARYLAND, AND PENNSYLVANIA, 1862.

16. On the 10th of March, the Army of the Potomac, set out from the camps about Washington to capture the Confederate capital. The advance proceeded as far as Manassas Junction, where McClellan, changing his plan, embarked a hundred and twenty thousand of his men for Fortress Monroe. From that place, on the 4th of April, the Union army advanced to Yorktown. This place was defended by ten thousand Confederates, under General Magruder; and here McClellan's advance was delayed for a month. On the 4th of May, Yorktown was taken and the Federal army pressed on to West Point, at the junction of the Mattapony and Pamunkey. McClellan reached the Chickahominy without serious resistance, and crossed at Bottom's Bridge.

17. On the 10th of May, General Wool, the commandant of Fortress Monroe, led an expedition against Norfolk and captured the town. On the next day, the iron-clad *Virginia* was blown up to save her from capture. The James River was thus opened for the supply-transports of the Army of the Potomac. On the 31st of

May, that army was attacked by the Confederates at a place called Fair Oaks, or Seven Pines. Here for a part of two days the battle raged with great fury. At last the Confederates were driven back; but McClellan's victory was by no means decisive. General Joseph E. Johnston, the commander-in-chief of the Confederates, was severely wounded; and the command devolved on General Robert E. Lee.



GENERAL ROBERT E. LEE.

18. McClellan now formed the design of retiring to a point on the James below Richmond. Before the movement fairly began, General Lee, on the 25th of June, struck the right wing of the Union army at Oak Grove, and a hard-fought battle ensued. On the next day, another engagement occurred at Mechanicsville, and the Federals won the field. On the following morning, Lee renewed the struggle at Gaines's Mill, and came out victorious. On the 29th, McClellan's army was attacked at Savage's Station and again in the White Oak Swamp—but the Confederates were kept at bay. On the 30th was fought the desperate battle of Glendale, or Frazier's Farm. On that night the Federal army reached Malvern Hill, twelve miles below Richmond. General Lee determined to carry the place by storm. On the morning of the 1st of July, the whole Confederate army rushed forward to the assault. All day long the struggle for the pos-

session of the high grounds continued. Not until nine o'clock at night did Lee's columns fall back exhausted. *For seven days* the roar of battle had been heard almost without cessation.

19. On the 2d of July, McClellan retired with his army to Harrison's Landing, a few miles down the river; and the great campaign was at an end. The Federal army had lost more than fifteen thousand men, and the losses of the Confederates had been still greater.



VICINITY OF RICHMOND, 1862.

20. General Lee now formed the design of capturing the Federal capital. The Union troops between Richmond and Washington were under command of General John Pope. Lee moved northward, and on the 20th of August Pope retreated beyond the Rappahannock. Meanwhile, General Banks was attacked by Stonewall Jackson at Cedar Mountain, where nothing but hard fighting saved the Federals from a rout.

21. Jackson next shot by with his division on a flank movement to Manassas Junction, where he made large captures. Pope then threw his army between the two divisions of the Confederates. On August 28th and 29th, there was terrible fighting on the old Bull Run battle-ground. At one time it seemed that Lee's army would be defeated; but Pope's reïnforcements were withheld by General Porter, and on the 31st, the Confederates struck the Union army at Chantilly, winning a complete victory. Generals Stevens and Kearney were among the brave men who fell in this battle. Pope withdrew his broken columns as rapidly as possible, and found safety within the defences of Washington.

22. General Lee crossed the Potomac at Point of Rocks, and on the 6th of September captured Frederick. On the 10th, Hagerstown was taken, and on the 15th, Stonewall Jackson seized

Harper's Ferry, with nearly twelve thousand prisoners. On the previous day, there was a hard-fought engagement at South Mountain, in which the Federals were victorious. McClellan's army was now in the rear of Lee, who fell back to Antietam Creek and took a strong position near Sharpsburg. Then followed two days of skirmishing, which terminated on the 17th in one of the great battles of the war. From morning till night the struggle continued with unabated violence, and ended, after a loss of more than ten thousand men on each side, in a drawn battle. Lee withdrew his forces from the field and recrossed the Potomac.

23. General McClellan moved forward to Rectortown, Virginia. Here he was superseded by General Burnside, who changed the plan of the campaign, and advanced against Fredericksburg. At this place the two armies were again brought face to face. Burnside's movement was delayed, and it was not until the 12th of December that a passage could be effected. Meanwhile, the heights south of the river had been fortified, and the Union columns were hurled back in several desperate assaults which cost the assailants more than twelve thousand men. Thus in disaster to the Federal cause ended the campaigns of 1862.

RECAPITULATION.

Extent and position of the Union forces.—The Confederates defeated on the Big Sandy and at Mill Spring.—Fort Henry is taken.—Siege of Fort Donelson.—Battle of Shiloh.—Island Number Ten is taken.—The battle of Pea Ridge.—Fight of the *Monitor* and the *Merrimac*.—Burnside captures Roanoke Island, Newbern, and Beaufort.—Farragut and Butler ascend the Mississippi.—Capture of New Orleans.—Fall of Forts Jackson and St. Philip.—Kirby Smith invades Kentucky.—Battle of Richmond.—Bragg marches on Louisville.—The city held by Buell.—Battle of Perryville.—Battles of Iuka and Corinth.—Grant moves against Vicksburg.—Battle of Chickasaw Bayou.—Battle of Murfreesborough.—Banks and Jackson on the Shenandoah.—Fight at Front Royal.—Battles of Cross Keys and Port Republic.—McClellan advances.—Yorktown is taken.—Wool captures Norfolk.—The *Virginia* destroyed.—Battle of Fair Oaks.—Lee made general-in-chief of the Confederates.—McClellan changes base.—The seven days' battles.—The Union army at Harrison's Landing.—Lee strikes for Washington.—Is opposed by Pope.—Flank movement of Jackson.—Battles of Manassas and Chantilly.—Lee invades Maryland.—Harper's Ferry is taken.—Engagement at South Mountain.—Battle of Antietam.—Burnside in command.—Is defeated at Fredericksburg.

CHAPTER LXIII.

THE WORK OF '63.

THE war had now grown to enormous proportions. The Confederate States were draining every resource of men and means. The superior energies of the North were greatly taxed. On the day after the battle of Malvern Hill, President Lincoln issued a call for three hundred thousand troops. During Pope's retreat from the Rappahannock, he sent forth another call for three hundred thousand, and to that was added a draft of three hundred thousand more. Most of these demands were promptly met, and it became evident that in resources the Federal government was vastly superior to the Confederacy.

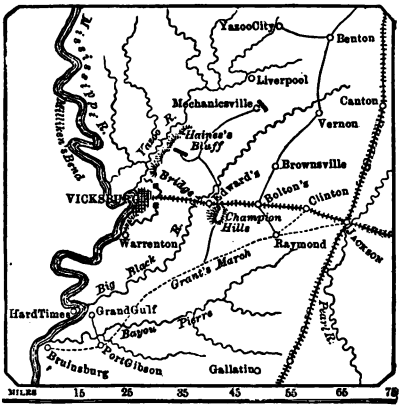
2. On the 1st day of January, 1863, the President issued THE EMANCIPATION PROCLAMATION. The war had been begun with no well-defined intention to free the slaves of the South. But during the progress of the war the sentiment of abolition had grown with great rapidity; and when at last it became a military necessity to strike a blow at the labor-system of the South, the step was taken with but little opposition. Thus, after an existence of two hundred and forty-four years, African slavery in the United States was swept away.

3. Early in January, General Sherman despatched an expedition to capture Arkansas Post, on the Arkansas River. The Union forces reached their destination on the 10th of the month, fought a battle with the Confederates and gained a victory. On the next day, the post was surrendered with nearly five thousand prisoners.

4. Soon afterward, the Union forces were concentrated for the capture of Vicksburg. Three months were spent by General Grant in beating about the bayous around Vicksburg, in the hope of getting a position in the rear of the town. A canal was cut across

a bend in the river with a view to opening a passage for the gunboats. But a flood washed the works away. Then another canal was begun, only to be abandoned. Finally, it was determined to run the fleet past the Vicksburg batteries. On the night of the 16th of April, the boats dropped down the river. All of a sudden the guns burst forth with shot and shell, pelting the passing steamers; but they went by with little damage.

5. General Grant now marched his land-forces down the Mississippi and formed a junction with the squadron. On the 1st day of May he defeated the Confederates at Port Gibson. The evacuation of Grand Gulf followed immediately. The Union army now swept around to the rear of Vicksburg. On the 12th of May, a Confederate force was defeated at Raymond. On the 14th of the month, a decisive battle was fought near Jackson; the Confederates were beaten, and the city captured. General Pemberton, sallying forth with his forces from Vicksburg, was defeated by Grant on the 16th at Champion Hills, and again on the 17th at Black River Bridge. Pemberton then retired within the defences of Vicksburg.



VICKSBURG AND VICINITY, 1863.

6. The city was now besieged. On the 19th of May, Grant made an assault but was repulsed with terrible losses. Three days afterward, the attempt was renewed with a still greater destruction of life. But the siege was pressed with ever-increasing severity. Admiral Porter bombarded the town incessantly. Reïnforcements swelled the Union ranks. Pemberton held out until the 4th of July, and was then driven to surrender. The defenders of Vicksburg, numbering thirty thousand, became prisoners of war. Thousands of small arms, hundreds of cannon, and vast quantities of ammunition and stores were the fruits of the great victory.

7. Meanwhile, General Banks had been conducting a campaign

on the Lower Mississippi. From Baton Rouge he advanced into Louisiana, reached Brashear City, and gained a victory over the Confederates at Bayou Teche. He then moved northward and besieged Port Hudson, the last fort held by the Confederates on the Mississippi. The garrison made a brave defence; and it was not until the 8th of July, that the commandant, with his force of six thousand men, was obliged to capitulate.

8. Just before the investment of Vicksburg, occurred the great raid of Colonel Benjamin Grierson. With the Sixth Illinois Cavalry, he struck out from La Grange, Tennessee, traversed Mississippi to the east of Jackson, cut the railroads, destroyed property, and after a rapid course of more than eight hundred miles, gained the river at Baton Rouge.

9. Late in the spring Colonel Streight's command went on a raid into Georgia, but was surrounded and captured by General Forrest. In the latter part of June, Rosecrans succeeded in crowding General Bragg out of Tennessee. The Union general followed and took post at Chattanooga, on the left bank of the Tennessee. During the summer, Bragg was reïnforced by the corps of Johnston and Longstreet. On the 19th of September, he turned upon the Federals at Chickamauga Creek, in the north-west angle of Georgia. A hard battle was fought, but night came with the victory undecided. On the following morning the fight was renewed. After the conflict had continued for some hours, the national battle-line was opened by a mistake of General Wood. Bragg thrust forward a heavy column into the gap, cut the Union army in two, and drove the right wing into a rout. General Thomas, with desperate firmness, held the left until nightfall, and then withdrew into Chattanooga. The Union loss amounted to nearly nineteen thousand, and that of the Confederates was even greater.

10. General Bragg pressed forward to besiege Chattanooga. But General Hooker arrived with two corps from the Army of the Potomac, opened the Tennessee River, and brought relief. At the same time General Grant assumed the direction of affairs at Chattanooga. General Sherman arrived with his division, and offensive operations were at once renewed. On the 24th of November, Lookout Mountain, overlooking the town and river, was stormed

by the division of General Hooker. On the following day, Missionary Ridge was also carried, and Bragg's army fell back in full retreat toward Ringgold.

11. On the 1st of September, General Burnside arrived with his command at Knoxville. After the battle of Chickamauga, General Longstreet was sent into East Tennessee, where he arrived and began the siege of Knoxville. On the 29th of November, the Confederates attempted to carry the town by storm, but were repulsed with heavy losses. General Sherman soon marched to the relief of Burnside; and Longstreet retreated into Virginia.

12. Early in 1863, the Confederates resumed activity in Arkansas and Southern Missouri. On the 8th of January, they attacked Springfield, but were repulsed. Three days afterward, at Hartsville, a battle was fought with a similar result. On the 26th of April, General Marmaduke attacked the post at Cape Girardeau, but the garrison drove the Confederates away. On the 4th of July General Holmes made an attack on the Federals at Helena, Arkansas, but was repulsed. On the 13th of August, Lawrence, Kansas, was sacked, and a hundred and forty persons killed by a band of desperate fellows led by a chieftain called Quantrell. On the 10th of September, the Federal general Steele captured Little Rock, Arkansas.

13. In the summer of this year General John Morgan made a great raid through Kentucky, Indiana, and Ohio. He crossed the Ohio at Brandenburg, and began his march to the north. At Corydon and other points he was resisted by the home-guards and pursued by General Hobson. Morgan crossed into Ohio, made a circuit north of Cincinnati, and attempted to re-cross the river. But the raiders were driven back. The Confederate leader pressed on, until he came near New Lisbon, where he was captured by the brigade of General Shackelford. After a four months' imprisonment, Morgan escaped and made his way to Richmond.

14. On the 1st of January, General Magruder captured Galveston, Texas. By this means the Confederates secured a port of entry in the Southwest. On the 7th of April, Admiral Dupont, with a fleet of iron-clads, attempted to capture Charleston, but was driven back. In June the city was besieged by a strong land-force,

under General Q. A. Gillmore, assisted by Admiral Dahlgren's fleet. After the bombardment had continued for some time, General Gillmore, on the 18th of July, attempted to carry Fort Wagner by assault, but was repulsed with severe loss. The siege progressed until the 6th of September, when the Confederates evacuated the fort and retired to Charleston. Gillmore now brought his guns to bear on the wharves and buildings in the lower part of the city. But Charleston still held out; and the only gain of the Federals was the establishment of a complete blockade.



STONEWALL JACKSON.

15. After his repulse at Fredericksburg, General Burnside was superseded by General Joseph Hooker, who, in the latter part of April, crossed the Rappahannock and reached Chancellorsville. Here, on the morning of the 2d of May, he was attacked by the Army of Northern Virginia, led by Lee and Jackson. The latter general, at the head of twenty-five thousand men, outflanked the Union army, burst upon the right wing, and swept everything to destruction. But it was the last of Stonewall's battles. As night came on, the Confederate leader received a volley *from his own lines*, and fell to rise no more.

16. On the 3d, the battle was renewed. General Sedgwick was defeated and driven across the Rappahannock. The main army was crowded between Chancellorsville and the river, where it re-

mained until the 5th, when General Hooker succeeded in withdrawing his forces to the northern bank. The Union losses amounted in killed, wounded, and prisoners to about seventeen thousand; that of the Confederates was less by five thousand.

17. Next followed the cavalry raid of General Stoneman. On the 29th of April, he crossed the Rappahannock with ten thousand men, tore up the Virginia Central Railroad, cut General Lee's communications, swept around within a few miles of Richmond, and then recrossed the Rappahannock in safety.

18. General Lee now determined to carry the war into the North. In the first week of June he crossed the Potomac, and captured Hagerstown. On the 22d he entered Chambersburg, and then pressed on through Carlisle to within a few miles of Harrisburg. The militia of Pennsylvania was called out, and volunteers came pouring in from other States. General Hooker pushed forward to strike his antagonist. General Lee rapidly concentrated his forces near Gettysburg, Pennsylvania. On the eve of battle the command of the Union army was transferred to General George G. Meade, who took up a position on the hills around Gettysburg. Here the two armies, each numbering about eighty thousand men, were brought face to face.

19. On the 1st of July, the struggle began, and for three days the conflict raged. The battle reached its climax on the 3d, when a Confederate column, three miles long, headed by the Virginians under General Pickett, made a final charge on the Union centre. But the onset was in vain, and the men who made it were mowed down with terrible slaughter. The victory remained with the national army, and Lee was obliged to turn back to the Potomac. The entire Confederate loss was nearly thirty thousand; that of the Federals twenty-three thousand a hundred and eighty-six. General Lee withdrew his forces into Virginia, and the Union army resumed its position on the Potomac.

20. The administration of President Lincoln was beset with many difficulties. The last calls for volunteers had not been fully met. The anti-war party of the North denounced the measures of the government. On the 3d of March, THE CONSCRIPTION ACT was passed by Congress, and the President ordered a draft of three

hundred thousand men. The measure was bitterly opposed, and in many places the draft-officers were resisted. On the 13th of July, in the city of New York, a mob rose in arms, demolished buildings, burned the colored orphan asylum, and killed about a hundred people. For three days the authorities were set at defiance; but a force of regulars and volunteers gathered at the scene, and the riot was suppressed.

21. Only about fifty thousand men were obtained by the draft. But volunteering was quickened by the measure, and the employment of substitutes soon filled the ranks. In October the President issued another call for three hundred thousand men. By these measures the columns of the Union army were made more powerful than ever. In the armies of the South, on the other hand, there were already symptoms of exhaustion. On the 20th of June in this year, West Virginia was separated from the Old Dominion and admitted as the thirty-fifth State of the Union.

RECAPITULATION.

Proportions of the conflict.—New calls for troops.—The Emancipation Proclamation.—Capture of Arkansas Post.—Movements against Vicksburg.—The fleet passes the batteries.—Battles of Port Gibson, Raymond, Jackson, and Champion Hills.—The siege and capture of Vicksburg.—Fall of Port Hudson.—Cavalry raid of Grierson.—Rosecrans drives Bragg across the Tennessee.—Battle of Chickamauga.—Siege of Chattanooga.—Storming of Lookout and Missionary Ridge.—Longstreet in Tennessee.—Siege of Knoxville.—Engagements at Springfield, Cape Girardeau, and Helena.—The sacking of Lawrence.—Capture of Little Rock.—Morgan invades Indiana.—Is hemmed in and captured.—The Confederates take Galveston.—The siege of Charleston.—Hooker commands the Army of the Potomac.—Battle of Chancellorsville.—Death of Stonewall Jackson.—Stoneman's raid.—Lee invades Pennsylvania.—The battle of Gettysburg.—Retreat of the Confederates.—The conscription.—Riot in New York.—The draft.—New calls for soldiers.—West Virginia a State.

CHAPTER LXIV.

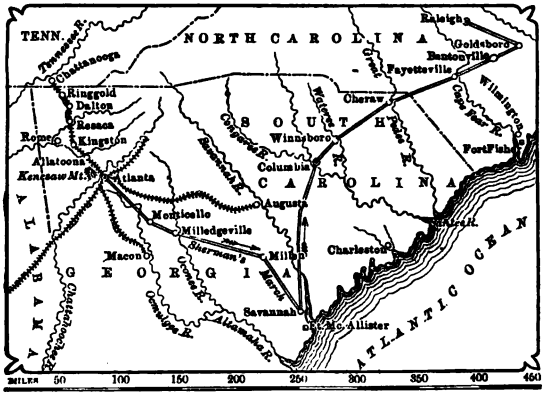
THE CLOSING CONFLICTS.

EARLY in February, 1864, General Sherman moved from Vicksburg to Meridian. In this vicinity the railroad tracks were torn up for a hundred and fifty miles. At Meridian General Sherman expected a force of Federal cavalry which had been sent out from Memphis, under General Smith. The latter advanced into Mississippi, but was met by the cavalry of Forrest, and driven back to Memphis. General Sherman thereupon retraced his course to Vicksburg. Forrest continued his raid northward to Paducah, Kentucky, and made an assault on Fort Anderson, but was repulsed with a severe loss. Turning back into Tennessee, he came upon Fort Pillow, on the Mississippi, and carried the place by storm.

2. In the spring of 1864, THE RED RIVER EXPEDITION was undertaken by General Banks. The object was to capture Shreveport, the seat of the Confederate government of Louisiana. On the 14th of March, the Federal advance captured Fort de Russy, on Red River. The Confederates retreated to Alexandria, and on the 16th, that city was taken by the Federals. Three days afterward, Natchitoches was captured. The fleet now proceeded up stream toward Shreveport, and the land-forces whirled off to the left.

3. At Mansfield, on the 8th of April, the advancing Federals were attacked by the Confederates, and completely routed. At Pleasant Hill, on the next day, the main body of the Union army was badly defeated. The flotilla now descended the river from the direction of Shreveport. The whole expedition returned as rapidly as possible to the Mississippi. General Steele had, in the meantime, advanced from Little Rock to aid in the reduction of Shreveport; but learning of the Federal defeats, he withdrew after several severe engagements.

4. On the 2d of March, 1864, General Grant was appointed commander-in-chief of all the armies of the United States. Seven hundred thousand soldiers were now to move at his command. Two great campaigns were planned for the year. The Army of the Potomac, under Meade and the general-in-chief, was to advance upon Richmond. General Sherman, with a hundred thousand men, was to march from Chattanooga against Atlanta.



SHERMAN'S CAMPAIGN, 1864.

5. On the 7th of May, General Sherman moved forward. At Dalton he succeeded in turning General Johnston's flank, and obliged him to fall back to Resaca. After two hard battles, on the 14th and 15th of May, this place was carried, and the Confederates retreated to Dallas. Here, on the 28th, Johnston made a second stand, but was again outflanked, and compelled to fall back to Lost Mountain. From this position he was forced on the 17th of June. The next stand was made on Great and Little Kenesaw Mountains. From this line on the 22d of June the division of General Hood made a fierce attack, but was repulsed with heavy losses. Five days afterward, General Sherman attempted to carry Great Kenesaw by storm; but the assault ended in a dreadful repulse. Sherman resumed his former tactics, and on the 3d of July, compelled his antagonist to retreat across the Chattahoochee. By the 10th of the month, the whole Confederate army had retired to Atlanta.

6. This stronghold was at once besieged. Here were the machine-shops, foundries, and car-works of the Confederacy. At the beginning of the siege, the cautious General Johnston was superseded by the rash General J. B. Hood. On the 20th, 22d,

and 28th of July, the latter made three assaults on the Union lines, but was repulsed with dreadful losses. It was in the second of these battles that the brave General James B. McPherson was killed. For more than a month the siege was pressed with great vigor. At last Hood was obliged to evacuate Atlanta; and on the 2d of September, the Union army marched into the captured city.



GENERAL THOMAS.

7. General Hood now marched northward toward Tennessee, swept up through Northern Alabama, crossed the river at Florence, and advanced on Nashville. Meanwhile, General Thomas, with the Army of the Cumberland, had been detached from Sherman's army and sent northward to confront Hood. General Schofield, who commanded the Federal forces in Tennessee, fell back before the Confederates and took post at Franklin. Here, on the 30th of November, he was attacked by Hood's legions, and held them in check till nightfall, when he retreated within the defences of Nashville. At this place all of General Thomas's forces were concentrated. Hood came on, confident of victory, and prepared to begin the siege; but before the work was fairly begun, General Thomas, on the 15th of December, fell upon the Confederate army, and routed it with a loss of more than twenty-five thousand men. For many days of freezing weather

Hood's columns were pursued, until at last they found refuge in Alabama.

8. On the 14th of November, General Sherman burned Atlanta and began his MARCH TO THE SEA. His army numbered sixty thousand men. He cut his communications with the North, abandoned his base of supplies, and struck out for the sea-coast, two hundred and fifty miles away. The Union army passed through Macon and Milledgeville, crossed the Ogeechee, captured Gibson and Waynesborough, and on the 10th of December, arrived in the vicinity of Savannah. On the 13th, Fort McAllister was carried by storm. On the night of the 20th, General Hardee, the Confederate commandant, escaped from Savannah and retreated to Charleston. On the 22d, General Sherman made his headquarters in the city.



GENERAL SHERMAN.

9. January, 1865, was spent by the Union army at Savannah. On the 1st of February, General Sherman began his march against Columbia, South Carolina. The Confederates had not sufficient force to stay his progress. On the 17th of the month, Columbia was surrendered. On the same night, Hardee, having destroyed the public property of Charleston and kindled fires which laid four squares in ashes, evacuated the city; and on the following morning

the national forces entered. From Columbia General Sherman marched into North Carolina, and on the 11th of March, captured the town of Fayetteville.

10. General Johnston was now recalled to the command of the Confederate forces, and the advance of the Union army began to be seriously opposed. At Averasborough, on Cape Fear River, General Hardee made a stand, but was repulsed. When, on the 19th of March, General Sherman was approaching Bentonsville, he was attacked by Johnston, and for a while the Union army was in danger of defeat. But the day was saved by hard fighting, and on the 21st, Sherman entered Goldsborough. Here he was reïnforced by Generals Schofield and Terry. The Federal army turned to the north-west, and on the 13th of April, entered Raleigh. This was the end of the great march; and here, on the 26th of the month, General Sherman received the surrender of Johnston's army.



ADMIRAL FARRAGUT.

11. Meanwhile, important events had occurred on the Gulf. Early in August, 1864, Admiral Farragut bore down on the defences of Mobile. The harbor was defended by a Confederate fleet and the monster iron-clad *Tennessee*. On the 5th of August, Farragut ran past Forts Morgan and Gaines into the harbor. In

order to direct the movements of his vessels, the old admiral mounted to the maintop of the *Hartford*, lashed himself to the rigging, and from that high perch gave his commands during the battle. One of the Union ships struck a torpedo and sank. The rest attacked and dispersed the Confederate squadron; but just as the day seemed won, the *Tennessee* came down at full speed to strike the *Hartford*. Then followed one of the fiercest conflicts of the war. The Union iron-clads closed around their antagonist and battered her with fifteen-inch bolts of iron until she surrendered.

12. Next came the capture of Fort Fisher, at the entrance to Cape Fear River. In December, Admiral Porter was sent with a powerful American squadron to besiege and take the fort. General Butler, with six thousand five hundred men, accompanied the expedition. On the 24th of the month, the troops were sent ashore with orders to storm the works. When General Weitzel, who led, came near enough to reconnoitre, he decided that an assault could only end in disaster. General Butler held the same opinion, and the enterprise was abandoned. Admiral Porter remained before Fort Fisher with his fleet, and General Butler returned to Fortress Monroe. Early in January, the siege was renewed, and on the 15th of the month, Fort Fisher was taken by storm.

13. In the previous October, Lieutenant Cushing, with a number of volunteers, embarked in a small steamer, and entered the Roanoke. A tremendous iron ram, called the *Albemarle*, was discovered lying at the harbor of Plymouth. Cautiously approaching, the lieutenant sank a torpedo under the Confederate ship, exploded it, and left the ram a ruin. The adventure cost the lives or capture of all of Cushing's party except himself and one other, who made good their escape.

14. During the progress of the war, the commerce of the United States was greatly injured by the Confederate cruisers. The first ship sent out was the *Savannah*, which was captured on the same day that she escaped from Charleston. In June of 1861, the *Sumter*, commanded by Captain Semmes, ran the blockade at New Orleans, and did fearful work with the Union merchantmen. But in February of 1862, Semmes was chased into the harbor of Gibraltar, where he was obliged to sell his vessel. The *Nashville*

ran out from Charleston, and returned with a cargo worth three millions of dollars. In March of 1863, she was sunk by a Union iron-clad in the Savannah River.

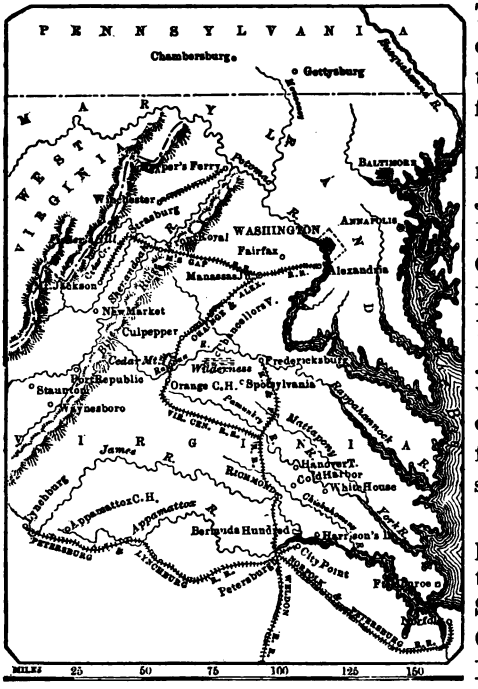
15. The ports of the Southern States were now closely blockaded. In this emergency the Confederates turned to the ship-yards of Great Britain, and began to build cruisers. In the harbor of Liverpool the *Florida* was fitted out; and going to sea in the summer of 1862, she succeeded in running into Mobile Bay. She afterward destroyed fifteen merchantmen, and was then captured and sunk in Hampton Roads. The *Georgia*, the *Olustee*, the *Shenandoah* and the *Chickamauga*, all built at the ship-yards of Glasgow, Scotland, escaped to sea and made great havoc with the merchant-ships of the United States.

16. Most destructive of all was the *Alabama*, built at Liverpool. Her commander was Captain Raphael Semmes. A majority of the crew were British subjects; and her armament was entirely British. In her whole career, involving the destruction of sixty-six vessels and a loss of ten million dollars, she never entered a Confederate port. In the summer of 1864, Semmes was overtaken in the harbor of Cherbourg, France, by Captain Winslow, commander of the steamer *Kearsarge*. On the 19th of June, Semmes went out to give his antagonist battle. After a desperate fight of an hour's duration, the *Alabama* was sunk. Semmes was picked up by the English *Deerhound* and carried to Southampton.

17. On the night of the 3d of May, 1864, the national camp at Culpepper was broken up, and the march on Richmond was begun. On the first day of the advance, Grant crossed the Rapidan and entered the Wilderness, a country of oak woods and thickets. He was immediately attacked by the Confederate army. During the 5th, 6th and 7th of the month, the fighting continued incessantly with terrible losses; but the results were indecisive. Grant next made a flank movement in the direction of Spottsylvania Court-house. Here followed, from the 9th till the 12th, one of the bloodiest struggles of the war. The Federals gained some ground and captured the division of General Stewart; but the losses of Lee were less than those of his antagonist.

18. Grant again moved to the left, crossed the Pamunkey, and

came to Cold Harbor, twelve miles north-east of Richmond. Here, on the 1st of June, he attacked the Confederates, but was repulsed with heavy losses. On the morning of the 3d, the assault was renewed, and in half an hour nearly ten thousand Union soldiers fell dead or wounded before the Confederate entrenchments.



OPERATIONS IN VIRGINIA, '64 AND '65.

The repulse of the Federals was complete, but they held their lines as firmly as ever.

19. General Grant now changed his base to James River. General Butler had already taken City Point and Bermuda Hundred. Here, on the 15th of June, he was joined by General Grant's whole army, and the combined forces moved forward and began the siege of Petersburg.

20. Meanwhile, important movements were taking place on the Shenandoah. When Grant moved from the Rapidan, General Sigel marched up the valley to New Market, where he was met and defeated by the Confederate cavalry, under General Breckinridge. The latter then returned to Richmond, whereupon the Federals faced about, overtook the Confederates at Piedmont, and gained a signal victory. From this place Generals Hunter and Averill advanced against Lynchburg. By this movement the valley of the Shenandoah was again exposed to invasion.

21. Lee immediately despatched General Early to cross the Blue Ridge, invade Maryland and threaten Washington city. With

twenty thousand men Early began his march, and on the 5th of July crossed the Potomac. On the 9th, he defeated the division of General Wallace on the Monocacy. But the battle saved Washington and Baltimore from capture.

22. General Wright followed Early as far as Winchester. But the latter wheeled upon him, and the Union troops were driven across the Potomac. Early next invaded Pennsylvania and burned Chambersburg. General Grant now appointed General Philip H. Sheridan to command the army on the Upper Potomac. The troops placed at his disposal numbered nearly forty thousand. On the 19th of September, Sheridan marched upon Early at Winchester, and routed him in a hard-fought battle. On the 22d of August, he gained another complete victory at Fisher's Hill.

23. Sheridan next turned about to ravage the valley. The ruinous work was fearfully well done. Nothing worth fighting for was left between the Blue Ridge and the Alleghanies. Maddened by his defeats, Early rallied his forces, and again entered the valley. Sheridan had posted his army on Cedar Creek, and feeling secure, had gone to Washington. On the 19th of October, Early surprised the Union camp, captured the artillery, and sent the routed troops flying in confusion toward Winchester. The Confederates pursued as far as Middletown, and there paused to eat and rest. On the previous night, Sheridan had returned to Winchester, and was now coming to rejoin his army. He rode twelve miles at full speed, rallied the fugitives, and gained one of the most signal victories of the war. Early's army was completely ruined.

24. All fall and winter, General Grant pressed the siege of Petersburg. On the 30th of July, a mine was exploded under one of the forts; but the assaulting column was repulsed with heavy losses. On the 18th of August, a division of the Union army seized the Weldon Railroad and held it against several assaults. On the 28th of September, Battery Harrison was stormed by the Federals, and on the next day, General Paine's brigade carried the redoubt on Spring Hill. On the 27th of October, there was a battle on the Boydton road; and then the army went into winter-quarters.

25. On the 27th of February, Sheridan gained a victory over Early at Waynesborough, and then joined the commander-in-chief.

On the 1st of April, a severe battle was fought at Five Forks, in which the Confederates were defeated with a loss of six thousand prisoners. On the next day, Grant ordered a general assault on the lines of Petersburg, and the works were carried. On that night, Lee's army and the Confederate government fled from Richmond; and on the following morning the city was entered by the Federal troops. The warehouses were fired by the retreating Confederates, and the better part of the city was reduced to ruins.

26. General Lee retreated as rapidly as possible to the southwest. Once, at Deatonsville, the Confederates turned and fought, but were defeated with great losses. For five days the pursuit was kept up; and then Lee was brought to bay at Appomattox Court-house. There, on the 9th of April, 1865, the work was done. General Lee surrendered the Army of Northern Virginia, and the Confederacy was hopelessly overthrown. General Grant signalized the end of the strife by granting to his antagonist the most liberal terms. How the army of General Johnston was surrendered a few days later has already been narrated. After four dreadful years of bloodshed and sorrow, THE CIVIL WAR WAS AT AN END.

27. The Federal authority was rapidly extended over the South. Mr. Davis and his cabinet escaped to Danville, and there for a few days kept up the forms of government. From that place they fled into North Carolina. The ex-President continued his flight into Georgia, and encamped near Irwinsville, where, on the 10th of May, he was captured by General Wilson's cavalry. He was conveyed to Fortress Monroe, and kept in confinement until May of 1867, when he was taken to Richmond to be tried for treason. He was admitted to bail; and his cause was finally dismissed.

28. At the presidential election of 1864, Mr. Lincoln was chosen for a second term. As Vice-President, Andrew Johnson of Tennessee was elected. In the preceding summer, the people of Nevada framed a constitution, and on the 31st of October the new commonwealth was proclaimed as the thirty-sixth State. The gold and silver mines of Nevada soon surpassed those of California in their yield of precious metals.

29. At the outbreak of the civil war the financial credit of the United States sank to a very low ebb. Mr. Chase, the secretary

of the treasury, first sought relief by issuing TREASURY NOTES, receivable as money. By the beginning of 1862, the expenses of the government had risen to more than a million of dollars daily. To meet these tremendous demands on the government, Congress next provided AN INTERNAL REVENUE. This was made up from two general sources: first, *a tax on manufactures, incomes and salaries;* second, *a stamp-duty on all legal documents.* The next measure was the issuance of LEGAL TENDER NOTES of the United States, to be used as money. These are the notes called *Greenbacks.* The third great measure adopted by the government was the sale of UNITED STATES BONDS. The interest upon them was fixed at six per cent., payable semi-annually in gold. In the next place, Congress passed an act providing for the establishment of NATIONAL BANKS. National bonds, instead of gold and silver, were used as a basis of the circulation of these banks; and the redemption of their bills was guaranteed by the treasury of the United States. At the end of the conflict, *the national debt had reached nearly three thousand millions of dollars.*

30. On the 4th of March, 1865, President Lincoln was inaugurated for his second term. Three days after the evacuation of Richmond by Lee's army, the President made a visit to that city. On the evening of the 14th of April, he, with his wife and a party of friends, attended Ford's Theatre in Washington. As the play drew near its close, a disreputable actor, named John Wilkes Booth, stole into the President's box, and shot him through the brain. Mr. Lincoln lingered in an unconscious state until morning, and died. It was the greatest tragedy of modern times. The assassin, after the murder, escaped into the darkness, and fled.

31. At the same hour, another murderer, named Lewis Payne Powell, burst into the bed-chamber of Secretary Seward, sprang upon the couch of the sick man, and stabbed him nigh unto death. The city was wild with alarm. Troops of cavalry departed in all directions to hunt down the assassins. On the 26th of April, Booth was found concealed in a barn south of Fredericksburg. Refusing to surrender, he was shot by Sergeant Boston Corbett. Powell was caught and hanged. David E. Herrold and Geo. A. Atzerott, together with Mrs. Mary E. Surratt, at whose house the plot was

formed, were also condemned and executed. Michael O'Laughlin, Dr. Samuel A. Mudd, and Samuel Arnold were sentenced to imprisonment for life, and Edward Spangler for six years.

32. So ended in darkness, but not in shame, the career of Abraham Lincoln—one of the most remarkable men of any age or country. He was prudent, far-sighted, and resolute; thoughtful, calm, and just; patient, tender-hearted, and great. The manner of his death consecrated his memory. From city to city, in one vast funeral procession, the mourning people followed his remains to their last resting-place at Springfield.

RECAPITULATION.

Sherman's campaign to Meridian.—He retires to Vicksburg.—Forrest's raid.—The Red River expedition.—Capture of Fort de Russy, Alexandria, and Natchitoches.—Union disaster and retreat.—Steele falls back to Little Rock.—Grant lieutenant-general.—Plan of the campaigns of '64.—Sherman advances.—Battles of Dalton, Resaca, and Dallas.—Repulses at Kenesaw.—Siege and capture of Atlanta.—Hood invades Tennessee.—Battle of Franklin.—Siege of Nashville.—Ruin of Hood's army.—Sherman's march to the sea.—Capture of Macon, Milledgeville, Gibson, and Waynesborough.—Storming of Fort McAllister.—Escape of Hardee.—And capture of the city.—Renewal of the march.—Columbia, Charleston, and Fayetteville are taken.—Johnston restored to command.—Battles of Averasborough and Bentonsville.—Capture of Goldsborough and Raleigh.—Surrender of Johnston.—Farragut in Mobile Bay.—Fort Fisher is besieged.—And finally taken by storm.—Cushing's exploit.—The Confederate cruisers.—The *Savannah*.—Career of the *Sumter*.—Cruise of the *Nashville*.—The Confederates use the British ship-yards.—Building of the *Florida*.—The *Georgia*, the *Olustee*, the *Shenandoah*, and the *Chickamauga* built at Glasgow.—Career of the *Georgia* and the *Shenandoah*.—The *Alabama* scours the ocean.—Runs into Cherbourg.—Is destroyed by the *Kearsarge*.—The Army of the Potomac moves from Culpepper.—Reaches the Wilderness.—The battles.—Grant advances to Spottsylvania.—Terrible fighting there.—The Union army repulsed at Cold Harbor.—Grant changes base.—Butler captures Bermuda and City Point.—Junction of the armies.—The siege of Petersburg begins.—Sigel on the Shenandoah.—Battles of New Market and Piedmont.—Early threatens Washington and Baltimore.—Fight at Winchester.—The Confederates burn Chambersburg.—Sheridan is sent into the valley.—Battles of Winchester and Fisher's Hill.—Sheridan ravages the country.—Early routs the Federals at Cedar Creek.—Sheridan returns, and destroys Early's army.—The siege of Petersburg continues.—Battles of Boydtown and Five Forks.—Flight of the Confederate government.—Fall of Richmond.—Surrender of Lee.—The Federal authority is reëstablished.—Capture and trial of Davis.—Lincoln reëlected.—Financial condition of the country.—Treasury notes.—Internal Revenue.—Legal Tenders.—Bonds.—Banks.—The debt.—Lincoln is reïnaugurated.—Visits Richmond.—Is assassinated.—Punishment of his murderers.—Character of Lincoln.

CHAPTER LXV.

JOHNSON'S ADMINISTRATION, 1865–1869.

ON the day after the assassination of Mr. Lincoln, Andrew Johnson became President of the United States. He was a native of Raleigh, North Carolina—born in 1808. With no advantages of education, he passed his boyhood in poverty. In 1828 he removed to Greenville, Tennessee, where he soon rose to distinction, and was elected to Congress. As a member of the United States Senate in 1860–61, he opposed secession with all his powers. In 1862 he was appointed military governor of Tennessee. This office he held until he was nominated for the vice-presidency.

2. On the 1st of February, 1865, Congress adopted an amendment to the Constitution by which slavery was abolished throughout the Union. By the 18th of the following December, the amendment had been ratified by the Legislatures of twenty-seven States, and was duly proclaimed as a part of the Constitution. The emancipation proclamation had been issued *as a military necessity;* and the results of the instrument were incorporated in the fundamental law of the land.

3. On the 29th of May, THE AMNESTY PROCLAMATION was issued by the President. By its provisions a pardon was extended to all persons—except those specified in certain classes—who had taken part in upholding the Confederacy. During the summer of 1865, the great armies were disbanded, and the victors and vanquished returned to their homes to resume the work of peace.

4. The finances of the nation were in an alarming condition. The war-debt went on increasing until the beginning of 1866. The yearly interest grew to a hundred and thirty-three million dollars in gold. The expenses of the government had reached two hundred millions of dollars annually. But the revenues of the

nation proved sufficient to meet these enormous outlays, and at last the debt began to be diminished.

5. During the civil war, the emperor Napoleon III. succeeded in setting up a French empire in Mexico. In 1864 the Mexican crown was conferred on Maximilian of Austria, who sustained his authority with French and Austrian soldiers. But the Mexican president Juarez headed a revolution; the government of the United States rebuked France for her conduct; Napoleon withdrew his army; and Maximilian was overthrown. Flying to Queretaro, he was besieged and taken prisoner. On the 13th of June, 1867, he was tried and condemned to be shot; and six days afterward the sentence was carried into execution.

6. After a few weeks of successful operation, the first Atlantic telegraph had ceased to work. But Mr. Field continued to advocate his measure and to plead for assistance both in Europe and America. He made fifty voyages across the Atlantic, and finally secured sufficient capital to lay a second cable. The work began from the coast of Ireland in the summer of 1865; but the first cable parted and was lost. In July of 1866, a third cable, two thousand miles in length, was coiled in the *Great Eastern*, and again the vessel started on her way. This time the work was completely successful. Mr. Field received a gold medal from Congress, and the plaudits of all civilized nations.

7. The administration of President Johnson is noted as the time when the Territories of the United States assumed their present form. A part of the work was accomplished during the civil war. In March of 1861, the Territory of Dakota was detached from Nebraska and given a distinct organization. The State of Kansas had at last, on the 29th of January, 1861, been admitted into the Union, under a constitution framed at Wyandotte. In February, 1863, Arizona was separated from New Mexico, and on the 3d of March, in that year, Idaho was organized out of portions of Dakota, Nebraska, and Washington Territories. On the 26th of May, 1864, Montana was cut off from Idaho. On the 1st of March, 1867, Nebraska was admitted into the Union as the thirty-seventh State. Finally, on the 25th of July, 1868, the Territory of Wyoming was organized out of portions of Dakota, Idaho, and Utah.

8. The year 1867 was signalized by THE PURCHASE OF ALASKA. Two years previously, the territory had been explored by a corps of scientific men with a view of establishing telegraphic communication with Asia. The explorers found that the coast-fisheries were of great value, and that the forests of white pine and yellow cedar were among the finest in the world. Negotiations for the purchase were at once opened, and on the 30th of March, 1867, a treaty was concluded by which, for the sum of seven million two hundred thousand dollars, Russia ceded Alaska to the United States. The territory embraced an area of five hundred and eighty thousand square miles, and a population of twenty-nine thousand souls.

9. Very soon after his accession, a serious disagreement arose between the President and Congress. The difficulty grew out of the question of reörganizing the Southern States. The point in dispute was as to the relation which those States had sustained to the Federal Union during the civil war. The President held that the ordinances of secession were null and void, and that the seceded States *had never been out of the Union*. The majority in Congress held that the acts of secession were illegal and unconstitutional, but that the seceded States had been actually detached from the Union, and that special legislation was necessary in order to restore them to their former relations.

10. In 1865, measures of reconstruction were begun by the President. On the 9th of May, a proclamation was issued for the restoration of Virginia to the Union. Twenty days later a provisional government was established over South Carolina; and similar measures were adopted in respect to the other States of the Confederacy. On the 24th of June, all restrictions on trade and intercourse with the Southern States were removed. On the 7th of September, a second amnesty proclamation was issued, by which all persons who had upheld the Confederate cause—excepting the leaders—were unconditionally pardoned. Meanwhile, Tennessee had been reörganized, and in 1866 was restored to its place in the Union. When Congress convened, a committee of fifteen members was appointed, to which were referred all questions concerning the reörganization of the Southern States. In accordance with measures reported by this committee, Arkansas, Alabama, Georgia, Florida, Louisiana,

North Carolina, and South Carolina were reconstructed, and in June and July of 1868, reädmitted into the Union. Congress had, in the meantime, passed THE CIVIL RIGHTS BILL, by which the privileges of citizenship were conferred on the freedmen of the South. All of these congressional enactments were effected over the veto of the President.



CHIEF-JUSTICE CHASE.

11. Meanwhile, a difficulty had arisen in the President's cabinet which led to his impeachment. On the 21st of February, 1868, he notified Edwin M. Stanton, secretary of war, of his dismissal from office. The act was regarded by Congress as a usurpation of authority and a violation of law. On the 3d of March, articles of impeachment were agreed to by the House of Representatives, and the President was summoned before the Senate for trial. Proceedings began on the 23d of March and continued until the 26th of May, when the President was acquitted. Chief-Justice Salmon P Chase, one of the most eminent of American statesmen and jurists, presided during the impeachment.

12. The time for another presidential election was already at hand. General Ulysses S. Grant was nominated by the Republicans, and Horatio Seymour, of New York, by the Democrats. The canvass was one of great excitement. The questions most discussed by the political speakers were those arising out of the civil

war. The principles advocated by the majority in Congress furnished the Republican platform of 1868, and on that platform General Grant was elected by a large majority. As Vice-President, Schuyler Colfax, of Indiana, was chosen.

RECAPITULATION.

Johnson in the presidency.—Slavery is formally abolished.—The Amnesty Proclamation.—A struggle with the war-debt.—Napoleon's empire in Mexico.—Maximilian is captured and shot.—Final success of the Atlantic telegraph.—The Territories assume their final form.—Alaska is purchased from Russia.—The difficulty between the President and Congress.—The reconstruction imbroglio.—Second amnesty.—The Southern States are readmitted.—The President removes Stanton.—Is impeached.—And acquitted.—General Grant is elected President.

CHAPTER LXVI.

GRANT'S ADMINISTRATION, 1869–1877.

ULYSSES S. GRANT, eighteenth President of the United States, was born at Point Pleasant, Ohio, April 27th, 1822. At the age of seventeen he entered the Military Academy at West Point, and was graduated in 1843. He served with distinction in the Mexican war; but his first national reputation was won by the capture of Forts Henry and Donelson. From that time he rapidly rose in rank, and in March, 1864, was appointed lieutenant-general and commander-in-chief of the Union army.

2. The first great event of the new administration was the completion of THE PACIFIC RAILROAD. The first division of the road extended from Omaha, Nebraska, to Ogden, Utah, a distance of a thousand and thirty-two miles. The western division reached from Ogden to San Francisco, a distance of eight hundred and eighty-two miles. On the 10th of May, 1869, the work was completed with appropriate ceremonies.

3. Before the inauguration of President Grant two additional

amendments to the Constitution had been adopted. The first of these, known as the Fourteenth Amendment, extended the right of citizenship to all persons born or naturalized in the United States, and declared the validity of the public debt. Early in 1869, the Fifteenth Amendment was adopted by Congress, providing that the right of citizens to vote shall not be denied or abridged on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude. This clause was proclaimed by the President as a part of the Constitution, on the 30th of March, 1870.



ULYSSES S GRANT.

4. In the first three months of the same year, the reörganization of the Southern States was completed. On the 24th of January, the senators and representatives of Virginia were reädmitted to their seats in Congress. On the 23d of February a like action was taken in regard to Mississippi; and on the 30th of March the work was finished by the reädmission of Texas.

5. In 1870 was completed the ninth census of the United States. Notwithstanding the ravages of war, the last ten years had been a period of growth and progress. During that time the population had increased to thirty-eight million five hundred and eighty-seven thousand souls. The national debt was rapidly falling off. The products of the United States had grown to a vast aggregate. American manufacturers were competing with those of England in the markets of the world. The Union now embraced thirty-seven

States and eleven Territories. The national domain had spread to the vast area of three million six hundred and four thousand square miles. Few things have been more wonderful than the territorial growth of the United States. The nature of this development will be easily understood from the accompanying map.

6. In January of 1871, President Grant appointed Senator Wade of Ohio, Professor White of New York, and Dr. Samuel Howe of Massachusetts, to visit Santo Domingo and report upon the desirability of annexing that island to the United States. The measure was earnestly favored by the President. After three months spent abroad, the commissioners returned and reported in favor of annexation; but the proposal was met with opposition in Congress, and defeated.

7. The claim of the United States against the British government for damages done by Confederate cruisers during the civil war still remained unsettled. After the war Great Britain grew anxious for an adjustment of the difficulty. On the 27th of February, 1871, a joint high commission, composed of five British and five American statesmen, assembled at Washington city. From the fact that the cruiser *Alabama* had done most of the injury complained of, the claims of the United States were called THE ALABAMA CLAIMS. After much discussion, the commissioners framed a treaty, known as the Treaty of Washington. It was agreed that all claims of either nation against the other should be submitted to a board of arbitration to be appointed by friendly nations. Such a court was formed, and in the summer of 1872 convened at Geneva, Switzerland. The cause of the two nations was heard, and on the 14th of September, decided in favor of the United States. Great Britain was required to pay into the Federal treasury fifteen million five hundred thousand dollars.

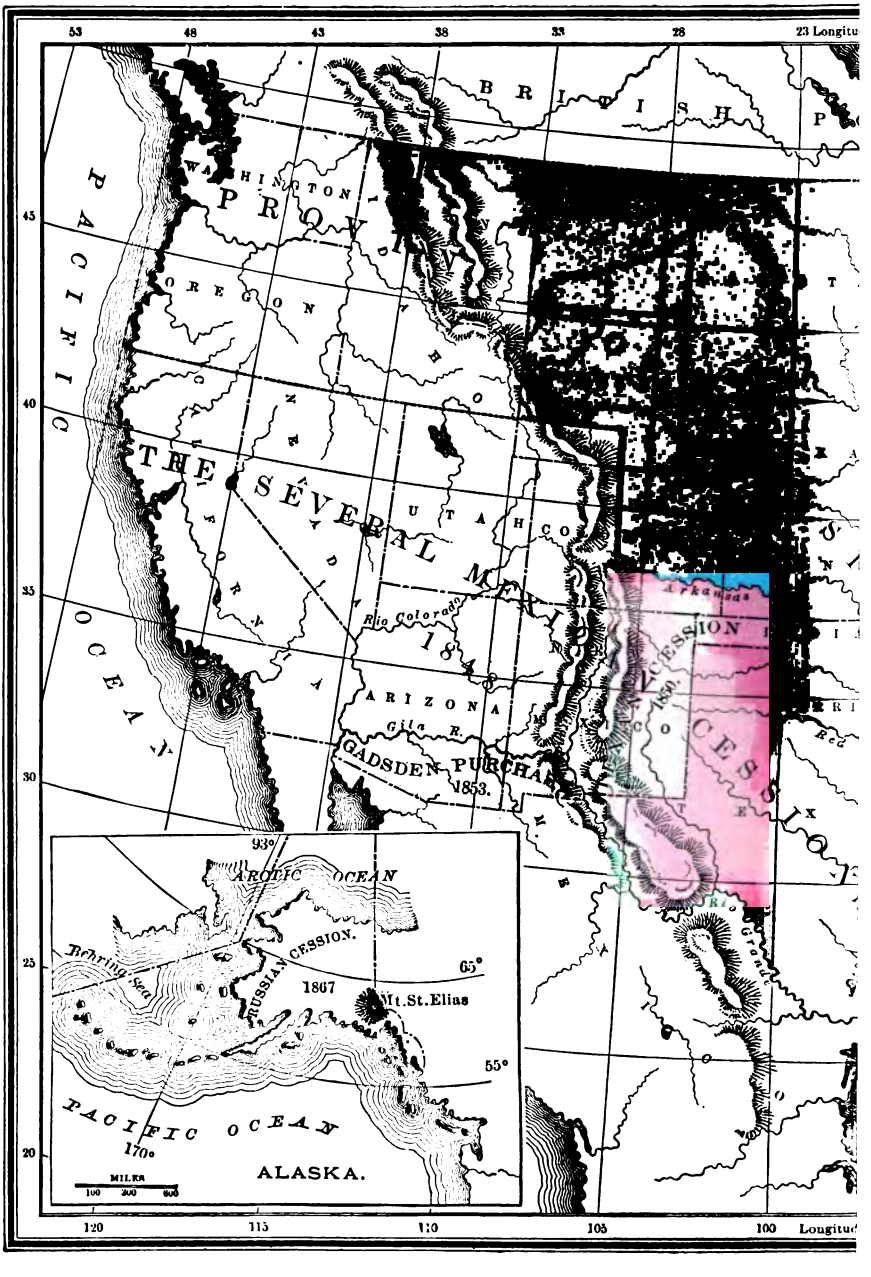
8. The year 1871 is noted in American history for the burning of Chicago. On the evening of the 8th of October a fire broke out in De Koven street, and was driven by a high wind into the lumber-yards and wooden houses of the neighborhood. All day long the flames rolled on, sweeping into a blackened ruin the most valuable portion of the city. The area burned over was two thousand one hundred acres, or three and a third square miles. Nearly

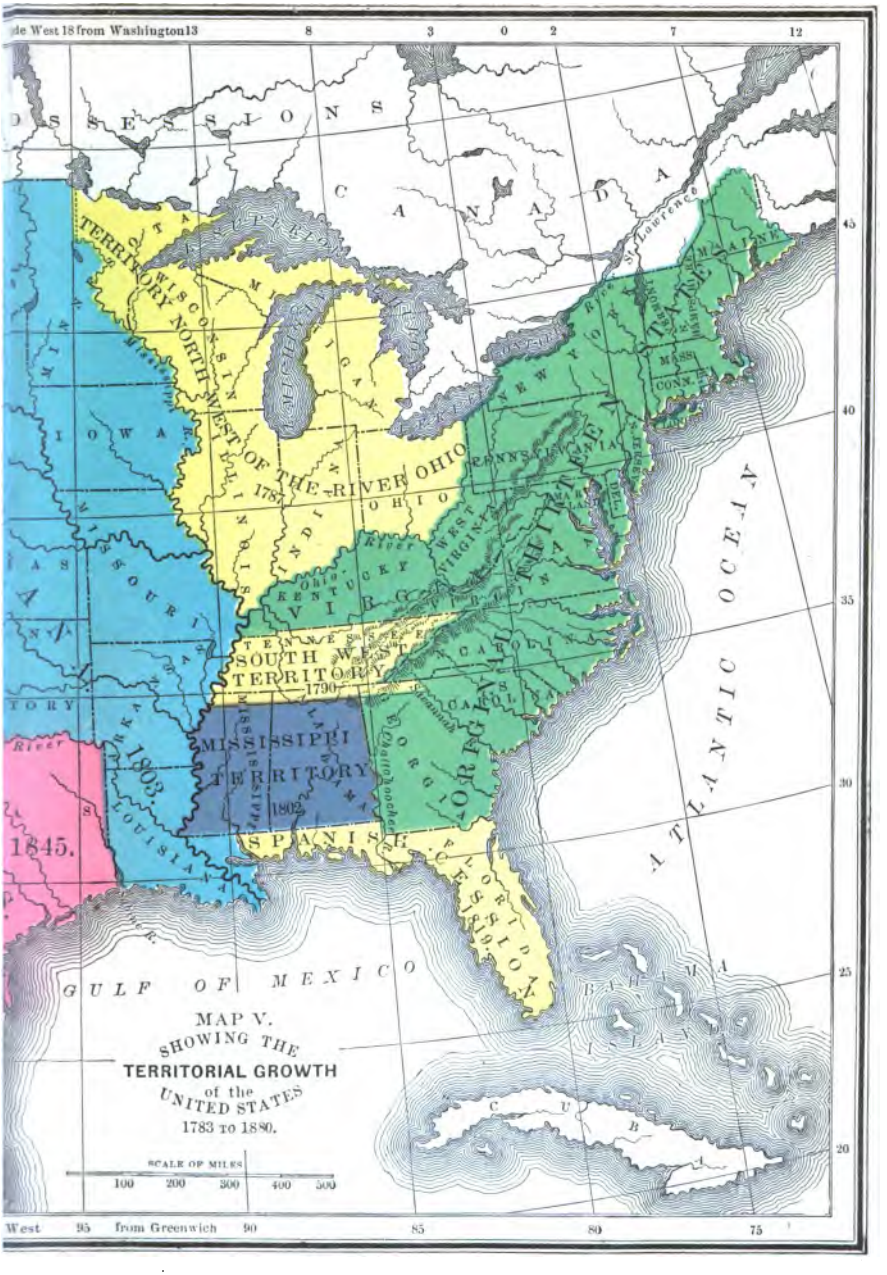
two hundred lives were lost, and the property destroyed amounted to about two hundred millions of dollars.

9. As the first term of President Grant drew to a close, the political parties made ready for the twenty-second presidential election. Many parts of the chief magistrate's policy had been made the subjects of controversy. The congressional plan of reconstruction had been unfavorably received in the South. The elevation of the negro race to the rights of citizenship was regarded with apprehension. The military spirit was still rife in the country, and the issues of the civil war were rediscussed with much bitterness. On these issues the people divided in the election of 1872. The Republicans renominated General Grant for the presidency. For the vice-presidency Mr. Colfax was succeeded by Henry Wilson of Massachusetts. As the standard-bearer of the Liberal Republican and Democratic parties Horace Greeley, editor of the New York *Tribune*, was nominated. This was the last act in that remarkable man's career. For more than thirty years he had been a leader of public opinion in America. After a lifetime of untiring industry he was now called to the forefront of political strife. The canvass was one of wild excitement. Mr. Greeley was overwhelmingly defeated, and died in less than a month after the election.



HORACE GREELEY.


53
48
43
38
33
28
23 Longitu
45
40
35
30
25
20
B R I T I S H
P R O V I N C E S
WASHINGTON TERR.
OREGON TERR.
NEBRASKA TERR.
UTAH TERR.
NEW MEXICO TERR.
THE SEVERAL MEXICAN CESSIONS 1848
Rio Colorado
ARIZONA
Gila R.
GADSDEN PURCHASE 1853.
Arkansas
TEXAS ANNEXATION 1845
MEXICAN CESSION 1850
Rio Grande
PACIFIC OCEAN
ARCTIC OCEAN
Behring Sea
RUSSIAN CESSION.
1867
Mt. St. Elias
65°
55°
93°
170°
MILES
100 200 300
ALASKA.
120
115
110
105
100
Longitud


de West 18 from Washington 13
8
3
0
2
7
12
C A N A D A
TERRITORY NORTH WEST OF THE RIVER OHIO
1787
MICHIGAN
INDIANA
ILLINOIS
OHIO
KENTUCKY
VIRGINIA
PENNSYLVANIA
NEW YORK
MAINE
MASS.
CONN.
IOWA
MISSOURI
TENNESSEE
SOUTH WEST TERRITORY
1790
NORTH CAROLINA
SOUTH CAROLINA
MISSISSIPPI TERRITORY
1798
1802
1803
LOUISIANA
SPANISH FLORIDA
1819.
1845.
ATLANTIC OCEAN
GULF OF MEXICO
BAHAMA ISLANDS
CUBA
45
40
35
30
25
20
MAP V.
SHOWING THE
TERRITORIAL GROWTH
of the
UNITED STATES
1783 TO 1880.
SCALE OF MILES
100 200 300 400 500
West 95 from Greenwich 90 85 80 75

10. On the evening of the 9th of November, a fire broke out on the corner of Kingston and Summer streets, Boston, spread to the north-east, and continued with unabated fury until the morning of the 11th. The best portion of the city, embracing some of the finest blocks in the United States, was laid in ashes. The burnt district covered an area of sixty-five acres. Eight hundred buildings, property to the value of eighty million dollars, and fifteen lives were lost in the conflagration.

11. In the spring of 1872, Superintendent Odeneal had been ordered to remove the Modoc Indians from their lands on Lake Klamath, Oregon, to a new reservation. The Indians refused to go; and in the following November, a body of troops was sent to force them into compliance. The Modocs resisted, kept up the war during the winter, and then retreated into a volcanic region called the lava-beds. Here, in the spring of 1873, the Indians were surrounded. On the 11th of April, a conference was held between them and six members of the peace commission; but in the midst of the council the savages rose upon the kind-hearted men who sat beside them, and murdered General Canby and Dr. Thomas in cold blood. Mr. Meacham, another member of the commission, was shot, but escaped with his life. The Modocs were then besieged in their stronghold; but it was the 1st of June before Captain Jack and his band were obliged to surrender. The chiefs were tried by court-martial and executed in the following October.

12. In 1873 a difficulty arose in Louisiana which threatened the peace of the country. Owing to the existence of double election-boards, two sets of presidential electors had been chosen in the previous autumn. Two governors—William P. Kellogg and John McEnery—were elected; rival legislatures were returned by the hostile boards; and two State governments were organized. The dispute was referred to the President, who decided in favor of Governor Kellogg. On the 14th of September, 1874, a large party, led by D. B. Penn, rose in arms and took possession of the State-house. Governor Kellogg fled to the custom-house and appealed to the President. The latter ordered the adherents of Penn to disperse, and troops were sent to New Orleans to enforce the proclamation. On the assembling of the legislature in the following

December, the difficulty broke out more violently than ever, and the soldiery was again called in to settle the dispute.

13. About the beginning of President Grant's second term, the country was agitated by THE CREDIT MOBILIER INVESTIGATION in Congress. The Credit Mobilier was a joint stock company organized in 1863 for the purpose of constructing public works. In 1867 another company which had undertaken to build the Pacific Railroad purchased the charter of the Credit Mobilier, and the capital was increased to three million seven hundred and fifty thousand dollars. Owing to the profitableness of the work, the stock rose in value and large dividends were paid to the shareholders. In 1872 it became known that much of this stock *was owned by members of Congress.* A suspicion that those members had voted corruptly in matters affecting the Pacific Railroad, seized the public mind and led to a congressional investigation, in the course of which many scandalous transactions were brought to light.



CHARLES SUMNER.

14. In the autumn of 1873, occurred one of the most disastrous financial panics ever known in the United States. The alarm was given by the failure of Jay Cooke & Company of Philadelphia. Other failures followed in rapid succession. Depositors hurried to the banks and withdrew their money. Business was paralyzed, and many months elapsed before confidence was sufficiently restored

to enable merchants and bankers to engage in the usual transactions of trade.

15. In the last years, many public men have fallen by the hand of death. In December of 1869, Edwin M. Stanton died. In 1870 General Robert E. Lee, president of Washington and Lee

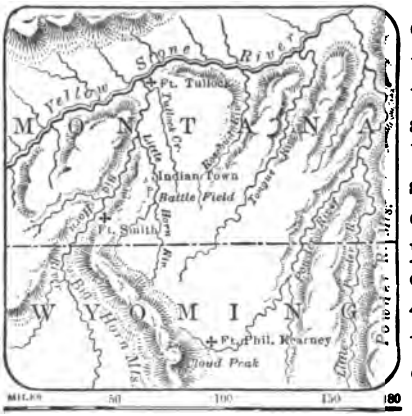


THE MEMORIAL HALL.

University, General George H. Thomas, and Admiral Farragut passed away. In 1872 William H. Seward, Professor Morse, Horace Greeley, and General Meade were all called from the scene of their earthly labors. On the 7th of May, 1873, Chief-Justice Chase fell under a stroke of paralysis; and on the 11th of March, in the following year, Senator Charles Sumner of Massachusetts died in Washington city. On the 31st of July, 1875, ex-President Andrew Johnson, who had been recently chosen United States senator from Tennessee, passed from among the living. On the 22d of the following November, Vice-President Henry Wilson, whose health had been gradually failing since his inauguration, sank into rest.

16. With the coming of 1876, the people made ready to celebrate THE CENTENNIAL OF AMERICAN INDEPENDENCE. The city of Philadelphia was the central point of interest. There, on the 10th of May, the great International Exposition was opened with im-

posing ceremonies. In Fairmount Park, on the Schuylkill, were erected beautiful buildings to receive the products of art and industry from all nations. The Main Exposition Building, Machinery Hall, the Memorial Hall, the Horticultural and Agricultural buildings, the United States Government Building, and the Woman's Pavilion, were the principal structures which adorned the grounds. By the beginning of summer these stately edifices were filled to overflowing with the richest products, gathered from every clime and country. On the 4th of July, the centennial of the great Declaration was commemorated in Philadelphia, with an impressive oration by William M. Evarts, of New York, and a National Ode by the poet, Bayard Taylor. The average daily attendance of visitors at the Exposition was over sixty-one thousand. The grounds were open for one hundred and fifty-eight days; and the receipts for admission amounted to more than three million seven hundred thousand dollars. On the 10th of November, the Exhibition, the most succesful of its kind ever held, was formally closed by the President of the United States.



SCENE OF THE SIOUX WAR, 1876.

17. The last year of President Grant's administration was noted for THE WAR WITH THE SIOUX. These fierce savages had, in 1867, made a treaty with the United States, agreeing to relinquish all of the territory south of the Niobrara, west of the one hundred and fourth meridian, and north of the forty-sixth parallel. By this treaty the Sioux were confined to a large reservation in southwestern Dakota, and upon this reservation they agreed to retire by the first of January, 1876. But many of the tribes continued to roam at large through Wyoming and Montana, burning houses, stealing horses, and murdering whoever opposed them.

18. The Government now undertook to drive the Sioux upon

their reservation. A large force of regulars, under Generals Terry and Crook, was sent into the mountainous country of the Upper Yellowstone, and the savages, to the number of several thousand, were crowded back against the Big Horn Mountains and River. Generals Custer and Reno, who were sent forward with the Seventh Cavalry to discover the whereabouts of the Indians, found them encamped in a village on the left bank of the Little Horn.

19. On the 25th of June, General Custer, without waiting for reïnforcements, charged headlong with his division into the Indian town, and was immediately surrounded. The struggle equaled in desperation and disaster any other Indian battle ever fought in America. *General Custer and every man of his command fell in the fight.* The whole loss of the Seventh Cavalry was two hundred and sixty-one killed, and fifty-two wounded. General Reno held his position on the bluffs of the Little Horn until General Gibbon arrived with reïnforcements and saved the remnant from destruction.

20. Other divisions of the army were soon hurried forward, and during the summer and autumn, the Indians were beaten in several engagements. Negotiations were opened looking to the removal of the Sioux to the Indian Territory; but the project proved impracticable. On the 24th of November, the Sioux were decisively defeated by Colonel McKenzie, at a pass in the Big Horn Mountains. On the 5th of January, the savages were again overtaken and routed by the forces of Colonel Miles.

21. The remaining bands, under Sitting Bull and Crazy Horse, being able to offer no further serious resistance, escaped across the border and became subject to the authorities of Canada. Here they remained until the following autumn, when the Government opened negotiations with them for their return to their reservation. A commission, headed by General Terry, met Sitting Bull and his warriors at Fort Walsh, on the Canadian frontier. Here a conference was held on the 8th of October. Full pardon for past offenses was offered to the Sioux on condition of their peaceable return and future good behavior. But Sitting Bull and his chiefs rejected the proposal with scorn; the conference was broken off, and the savages were left at large in the British territory north of Milk River.

22. On the 1st of July, 1876, the constitution of Colorado was ratified by the people of the territory. A month later the President issued his proclamation, and the new commonwealth took her place as the thirty-eighth member of the Union. The population of the State already numbered forty-five thousand. Until 1859, Colorado constituted a part of Kansas. In that year a convention was held at Denver, and a distinct territorial government was organized. At the close of 1875, the yield of gold in "the Centennial State" had reached the sum of seventy millions of dollars.

23. The twenty-third presidential election was one of the most exciting and critical in the history of the nation. General Rutherford B. Hayes, of Ohio, and William A. Wheeler, of New York, were chosen as candidates by the Republicans; Samuel J. Tilden, of New York, and Thomas A. Hendricks, of Indiana, by the Democrats. The Independent Greenback party presented as candidates Peter Cooper, of New York, and Samuel F. Cary, of Ohio. The canvass began early and with great spirit. The real contest lay between the Republicans and the Democrats. The election was held. The general result was ascertained, *and both parties claimed the victory!* The election was so evenly balanced between the candidates; there had been so much irregularity in the elections in South Carolina, Florida, Louisiana, and Oregon; and the power of Congress over the electoral proceedings was so poorly defined,—that no certain result could be announced. For the first time in the history of the country, there was *a disputed presidency.*

24. When Congress convened in December, the whole question came before that body for adjustment. After much debating, it was agreed that the disputed election returns should be referred for decision to A JOINT HIGH COMMISSION, consisting of five members chosen from the United States Senate, five from the House of Representatives, and five from the Supreme Court. The Commission was accordingly constituted. The returns of the disputed States were referred to the tribunal; and on the 2d of March a result was reached. The Republican candidates were declared elected. One hundred and eighty-five electoral votes were cast for Hayes and Wheeler, and one hundred and eighty-four for Tilden and Hendricks.

RECAPITULATION.

Sketch of President Grant.—The Pacific Railroad is completed.—The Fourteenth and Fifteenth Amendments are adopted.—The Southern States are restored to the Union.—The ninth census and its lesson.—The Santo Domingo business.—The Alabama Claims are adjusted by the Geneva Court.—The burning of Chicago.—The Presidential election.—The candidates.—Grant is reëlected.—Character and death of Greeley.—Great fire in Boston.—The Modoc War.—Murder of the peace commissioners.—The savages are subdued.—The Louisiana imbroglio.—The Credit Mobilier investigation.—The financial crisis of 1873-74.—Death-roll of eminent men.—The Centennial Exhibition.—The Sioux War breaks out.—The Custer massacre.—The Indians are overpowered.—Sitting Bull and his band escape to Canada.—The conference with them.—Admission of Colorado.—The great election of 1876.—A disputed presidency.—The result.

CHAPTER LXVII.

HAYES'S ADMINISTRATION, 1877–1881.

RUTHERFORD B. HAYES, nineteenth President of the United States, was born in Delaware, Ohio, on the 4th of October, 1822. His ancestors were soldiers of the Revolution. His primary education was received in the public schools. Afterward, at the age of twenty, he was graduated from Kenyon College. In 1845 he completed his legal studies, and began the practice of his profession, first at Marietta, then at Fremont, and finally as city solicitor, in Cincinnati. During the Civil War he performed much honorable service in the Union cause, rose to the rank of major-general, and in 1864, while still in the field, was elected to Congress. Three years later, he was chosen governor of his native State and was reëlected in 1869, and again in 1875.

2. In his inaugural address, delivered on the 5th of March,* President Hayes indicated the policy of his administration. The patriotic and conciliatory utterances of the address did much to quiet the bitter spirit of partisanship which for many months had disturbed the country. The distracted South was assured of right

*The 4*th* of March fell on Sunday. The same thing has happened in the following years: 1753, 1781, 1821 (Monroe's inauguration, second term), 1849 (Taylor's inauguration), 1877 (Hayes's inauguration);—and the same will hereafter occur as follows: 1917, 1945, 1973, 2001, 2029, 2057, 2085, 2125, 2153.

purposes and honest plans on the part of the new chief-magistrate; a radical reform in the civil service was avowed as a part of his policy; and a speedy return to specie payments was recommended as the final cure for the deranged finances of the nation.

3. On the 8th of March, the President named the members of his cabinet. William M. Evarts, of New York, was chosen secretary of state; John Sherman, of Ohio, secretary of the treasury; George W. McCrary, of Iowa, secretary of war; Richard W. Thompson, of Indiana, secretary of the navy; Carl Schurz, of Missouri, secretary of the interior; Charles E. Devens, of Massachusetts, attorney-general; and David M. Key, of Tennessee, postmaster-general. These nominations were duly ratified by the Senate, and the new administration and the new century of the Republic were ushered in together.

4. In the summer of 1877 occurred what is known as THE GREAT RAILROAD STRIKE. The managers of the leading railways from the seaboard to the West *had declared a reduction in wages*, and the measure was violently resisted by the employes of the companies. On the 16th of July, the workmen of the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad left their posts and gathered such strength in Baltimore and at Martinsburg, West Virginia, as to prevent the running of trains and set the authorities at defiance. The militia was called out by Governor Matthews and sent to Martinsburg, but was soon dispersed by the strikers. The President then ordered General French to the scene with a body of regulars, and the blockade of the road was raised. On the 20th of the month, a terrible tumult occurred in Baltimore; but the troops succeeded in scattering the rioters, of whom nine were killed and many wounded.

5. Meanwhile, the strike spread everywhere. In less than a week the trains had been stopped on all the important roads between the Hudson and the Mississippi. Travel ceased, freights perished en route, business was paralyzed. In Pittsburgh the strikers, rioters, and dangerous classes, gathering in a mob to the number of twenty thousand, obtained complete control of the city and for two days held a reign of terror unparalleled in the history of the country. The Union Depot and all the machine shops and other railroad buildings of the city were burned. A hundred and

twenty-five locomotives, and two thousand five hundred cars laden with valuable cargoes were destroyed. The insurrection was finally suppressed by the regular troops and the Pennsylvania militia, but not until nearly a hundred lives had been lost and property destroyed to the value of more than three millions of dollars.

6. A similar but less terrible riot occurred at Chicago on the 25th of the month. In this tumult fifteen of the insurgents were killed. On the next day St. Louis was for some hours in peril of the mob. San Francisco was at the same time the scene of a dangerous outbreak, which was here directed against the Chinese immigrants and the managers of the lumber yards. Cincinnati, Columbus, Louisville, Indianapolis, and Fort Wayne were for a while in danger, but escaped without serious loss of life or property. By the close of the month, the alarming insurrection was at an end. Business and travel flowed back into their usual channels; but the sudden outbreak had given a great shock to the public mind, and revealed a hidden peril to American institutions.

7. In the spring of 1877, a war broke out with the Nez Percé Indians of Idaho. This tribe of natives had been known to the Government since 1806, at which time a treaty was made with them by the explorers, Lewis and Clarke. In 1854 the national authorities purchased a part of the Nez Percé territory, large reservations being made in Northwestern Idaho and Northeastern Oregon; but some of the chiefs refused to ratify the compact, and remained at large. This was the beginning of difficulties.

8. The war began with the usual depredations by the Indians. General Howard, commanding the Department of the Columbia, marched against them with a small force of regulars; but the Nez Percés, led by their noted chieftain Joseph, fled first in this direction and then in that, avoiding battle. During the greater part of summer the pursuit continued; still the Indians could not be overtaken. In the fall they were chased through the mountains into Northern Montana, where they were confronted by other troops commanded by Colonel Miles.

9. The Nez Percés were next driven across the Missouri River, near the mouth of the Musselshell, and were finally surrounded in their camp north of the Bear Paw Mountains. Here, on the

4th of October, they were attacked by the forces of Colonel Miles. A hard battle was fought, and the Indians were completely routed. Only a few, led by the chief White Bird, escaped. All the rest were either killed or made prisoners. Three hundred and seventy-five of the captive Nez Percés were brought back to the American post on the Missouri. The troops of General Howard had made forced marches through a mountainous country *for a distance of sixteen hundred miles!* The campaign was crowned with complete success.

10. On the 1st of November, 1877, the distinguished Senator, Oliver P. Morton of Indiana, after battling for many years against the deadly encroachments of paralysis, died at his home in Indianapolis. His death, though not unforeseen, was much lamented. Still more universally felt was the loss of the great poet and journalist, William Cullen Bryant, who, on the 12th of June, 1878, at the advanced age of eighty-four, passed from among the living. For more than sixty years his name had been known and honored wherever the English language is spoken. His life had been an inspiration, and the brightest light of American literature was extinguished in his death.

THE HISTORY OF OUR COUNTRY has thus been traced from the times of the aborigines to the present day. The story is done. The Republic has passed through stormy times, but has at last entered her Second Century in safety and peace. The clouds that were recently so black overhead have broken, and are sinking behind the horizon. The temple of freedom reared by our fathers still stands in undiminished glory. THE PAST HAS TAUGHT ITS LESSON; THE PRESENT HAS ITS DUTY; AND THE FUTURE ITS HOPE.

RECAPITULATION.

Sketch of President Hayes.—His inaugural address.—The policy indicated.—His cabinet is organized.—The great railroad strike disturbs the country.—Troubles on the Baltimore and Ohio line.—Dreadful riot at Pittsburgh.—Mobs in Chicago and St. Louis.—Riots at San Francisco.—Outbreaks in Cincinnati and elsewhere.—The Nez Percé war breaks out.—General Howard subdues the hostile tribe.—Death of Morton and Bryant.—Conclusion.

APPENDIX.

CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES.

WE, the People of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defense, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of North America.

ARTICLE I.

SECTION 1.—All legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

SEC. 2.—The House of Representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year by the people of the several States, and the electors in each State shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the State legislature.

No person shall be a representative who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State in which he shall be chosen.

Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several States which may be included within this Union, according to their respective numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three-fifths of all other persons. The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number of representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty thousand; but each State shall have at least one representative; and until such enumeration shall be made, the State of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose three, Massachusetts, eight, Rhode Island and Providence Plantations, one, Connecticut, five, New York, six, New Jersey, four, Pennsylvania, eight, Delaware, one, Maryland, six, Virginia, ten, North Carolina, five, South Carolina, five, and Georgia, three.

When vacancies happen in the representation from any State, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies.

The House of Representatives shall choose their speaker and other officers; and shall have the sole power of impeachment.

SEC. 3.—The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two senators from each State, chosen by the legislature thereof, for six years; and each senator shall have one vote.

Immediately after they shall be assembled in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided, as equally as may be, into three classes. The seats of the senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of

the second year, of the second class, at the expiration of the fourth year, and of the third class at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one-third may be chosen every second year; and if vacancies happen, by resignation or otherwise, during the recess of the legislature of any State, the executive thereof may make temporary appointments until the next meeting of the legislature which shall then fill such vacancies.

No person shall be a senator who shall not have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State for which he shall be chosen.

The Vice-President of the United States shall be president of the Senate, but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided.

The Senate shall choose their other officers, and also a president *pro tempore*, in the absence of the Vice-President, or when he shall exercise the office as President of the United States.

The Senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments. When sitting for that purpose, they shall be on oath or affirmation. When the President of the United States is tried, the chief-justice shall preside; and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two-thirds of the members present.

Judgment, in cases of impeachment, shall not extend further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust, or profit under the United States; but the party convicted shall, nevertheless, be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment, and punishment, according to law.

SEC. 4.—The times, places, and manner of holding elections for senators and representatives, shall be prescribed in each State by the legislature thereof; but the Congress may, at any time, by law, make or alter such regulations, except as to the places of choosing senators.

The Congress shall assemble at least once in every year; and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by law appoint a different day.

SEC. 5.—Each house shall be the judge of the elections, returns, and qualifications of its own members; and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum to do business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner and under such penalties as each house may provide.

Each house may determine the rules of its proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behavior, and, with the concurrence of two-thirds, expel a member.

Each house shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such parts as may in their judgment require secrecy; and the yeas and nays of the members of either house, on any question, shall, at the desire of one-fifth of those present, be entered on the journal.

Neither house, during the session of Congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two houses shall be sitting.

SEC. 6.—The senators and representatives shall receive a compensation for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the treasury of the United States. They shall, in all cases except treason, felony, and breach of the peace, be privileged from arrest during their attendance on the session of their respective houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and, for any speech or debate in either house, they shall not be questioned in any other place.

No senator or representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office under the authority of the United States which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have been increased, during such time; and no person holding any office under the United States shall be a member of either house during his continuance in office.

SEC. 7.—All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Senate may propose or concur with amendments, as on other bills.

Every bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate, shall, before it become a law, be presented to the President of the United States; if he approve he shall sign it, but if not he shall return it, with his objections, to that house in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If, after such reconsideration, two-thirds of that house shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other house, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and, if approved by two-thirds of that house, it shall become a law. But, in all such cases, the votes of both houses shall be determined by yeas and nays; and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each house respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the President within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress by their adjournment prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

Every order, resolution, or vote, to which the concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of adjournment), shall be presented to the President of the United States; and, before the same shall take effect, shall be approved by him, or, being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two-thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.

SEC. 8.—The Congress shall have power:—

To lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts, and excises, to pay the debts, and provide for the common defense and general welfare, of the United States; but all duties, imposts, and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States:

To borrow money on the credit of the United States:

To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian tribes:

To establish an uniform rule of naturalization, and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies throughout the United States:

To coin money, regulate the value thereof, and of foreign coin, and fix the standard of weights and measures:

To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States:

To establish post-offices and post-roads:

To promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing for limited times, to authors and inventors, the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries:

To constitute tribunals inferior to the Supreme Court:

To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offenses against the law of nations:

To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal, and make rules concerning captures on land and water:

To raise and support armies; but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years:

To provide and maintain a navy:

To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces:

To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections, and repel invasions:

To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining the militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively, the appointment of the officers, and the authority of training the militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress:

To exercise exclusive legislation, in all cases whatsoever, over such district (not exceeding ten miles square) as may, by cession of particular States, and the acceptance of Congress, become the seat of government of the United States, and to exercise like authority over all places purchased by the consent of the legislature of the State in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dockyards, and other needful buildings:—And

To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this Constitution in the government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof.

SEC. 9.—The migration or importation of such persons, as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight; but a tax, or duty, may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.

The privilege of the writ of *habeas corpus* shall not be suspended, unless when in cases of rebellion or invasion the public safety may require it.

No bill of attainder or *ex post facto* law shall be passed.

No capitation or other direct tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census, or enumeration, hereinbefore directed to be taken.

No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any State. No preference shall be given by any regulation of commerce or revenue to the ports of one State over those of another; nor shall vessels bound to or from one State be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties, in another.

No money shall be drawn from the treasury but in consequence of appropriations made by law; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.

No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States; and no person holding any office of profit or trust under them shall, without the consent of the Congress, accept of any present, emolument, office, or title of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign state.

SEC. 10.—No State shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation; grant letters of marque and reprisal; coin money; emit bills of credit; make any thing but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts; pass any bill of attainder, *ex post facto* law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts; or grant any title of nobility.

No State shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any imposts or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws; and the net produce of all duties and imposts laid by any State on imports or exports, shall be for the use of the treasury of the United States; and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of the Congress. No State shall, without the consent of Congress, lay any duty of tonnage, keep troops or ships of war in time of peace, enter into

any agreement or compact with another State or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

ARTICLE II.

SECTION 1. The executive power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years, and together with the Vice-President, chosen for the same term, be elected as follows:—

Each State shall appoint, in such manner as the legislature thereof may direct, a number of electors equal to the whole number of senators and representatives to which the State may be entitled in the Congress; but no senator or representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an elector.

The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for two persons, of whom one, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves. And they shall make a list of all the persons voted for, and of the number of votes for each; which list they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the president of the Senate. The president of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates; and the votes shall then be counted. The person having the greatest number of votes shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if there be more than one who have such majority, and have an equal number of votes, then the House of Representatives shall immediately choose, by ballot, one of them for President; and if no person have a majority, then, from the five highest on the list, the said house shall, in like manner, choose the President. But, in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States; the representation from each State having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the States; and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. In every case, after the choice of the President, the person having the greatest number of votes of the electors shall be Vice-President. But, if there should remain two or more who have equal votes, the Senate shall choose from them, by ballot, the Vice-President.

The Congress may determine the time of choosing the electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes; which day shall be the same throughout the United States.

No person except a natural born citizen, or a citizen of the United States at the time of the adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the office of President; neither shall any person be eligible to that office who shall not have attained to the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years a resident within the United States.

In case of the removal of the President from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers or duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the Vice-President; and the Congress may, by law, provide for the case of removal, death, resignation, or inability, both of the President and Vice-President, declaring what officer shall then act as President; and such officer shall act accordingly, until the disability be removed, or a President shall be elected.

The President shall, at stated times, receive for his services a compensation, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected; and he shall not receive within that period any other emolument from the United States or any of them.

Before he enter on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath or affirmation:—

"I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States, and will, to the best of my ability, preserve, protect, and defend the Constitution of the United States."

SEC. 2.—The President shall be commander-in-chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several States, when called into the actual service of the United States; he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer in each of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices, and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offenses against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to make treaties, provided two-thirds of the senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint, ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls, judges of the Supreme Court, and all other officers of the United States, whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law; but the Congress may, by law, vest the appointment of such inferior officers as they think proper, in the President alone, in the courts of law, or in the heads of departments.

The President shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the Senate, by granting commissions, which shall expire at the end of their next session.

SEC. 3.—He shall, from time to time, give to the Congress information of the state of the Union, and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient; he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both houses, or either of them, and, in case of disagreement between them with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper; he shall receive ambassadors and other public ministers; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed; and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

SEC. 4.—The President, Vice-President, and all civil officers of the United States, shall be removed from office on impeachment for and conviction of treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

ARTICLE III.

SECTION 1.—The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in a Supreme Court, and in such inferior courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The judges, both of the supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior; and shall, at stated times, receive for their services a compensation, which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

SEC. 2.—The judicial power shall extend to all cases, in law and equity, arising under this Constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority; to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls; to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction; to controversies to which the United States shall be a party; to controversies between two or more States, between a State and citizens of another State, between citizens of different States, between citizens of the same State claiming lands under grants of different States, and between a State, or the citizens thereof, and foreign States, citizens, or subjects.

In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, and those in which a State shall be a party, the Supreme Court shall have orig-

inal jurisdiction. In all the other cases before mentioned, the Supreme Court shall have appellate jurisdiction both as to law and fact, with such exceptions, and under such regulations, as the Congress shall make.

The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury; and such trial shall be held in the State where the said crimes shall have been committed; but, when not committed within any State, the trial shall be at such place or places as the Congress may by law have directed.

SEC. 3.—Treason against the United States shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort. No person shall be convicted of treason unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

The Congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason, but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood or forfeiture, except during the life of the person attainted.

ARTICLE IV.

SECTION 1.—Full faith and credit shall be given in each State to the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of every other State. And the Congress may by general laws prescribe the manner in which such acts, records, and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof.

SEC. 2.—The citizens of each State shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of citizens in the several States.

A person charged in any State with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall flee from justice, and be found in another State, shall, on demand of the executive authority of the State from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the State having jurisdiction of the crime.

No person held to service or labor in one State under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in consequence of any law or regulation therein, be discharged from such service or labor, but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due.

SEC. 3.—New States may be admitted by the Congress into this Union; but no new State shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other State; nor any State be formed by the junction of two or more States, or parts of States, without the consent of the legislature of the States concerned, as well as of the Congress.

The Congress shall have power to dispose of and make all needful rules and regulations respecting the territory or other property belonging to the United States; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States, or of any particular State.

SEC. 4.—The United States shall guarantee to every State in this Union a republican form of government, and shall protect each of them against invasion; and on application of the legislature, or of the executive (when the legislature can not be convened), against domestic violence.

ARTICLE V.

The Congress, whenever two-thirds of both houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this Constitution, or, on the application of the legislatures of two-thirds of the several States, shall call a convention for proposing amendments, which, in either case, shall be valid, to all intents and purposes, as part of this Constitution, when ratified by the legislatures of three-fourths of the several States, or by conventions in three-fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by the Congress; Provided, that no amendment, which may be made prior to the

year one thousand eight hundred and eight, shall in any manner affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article; and that no State, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the Senate.

ARTICLE VI.

All debts contracted, and engagements entered into, before the adoption of this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution, as under the Confederation.

This Constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof; and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land; and the judges in every State shall be bound thereby, any thing in the constitution or laws of any State to the contrary notwithstanding.

The senators and representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several State legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the several States, shall be bound by oath or affirmation to support this Constitution; but no religious test shall ever be required as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.

ARTICLE VII.

The ratification of the conventions of nine States shall be sufficient for the establishment of this Constitution between the States so ratifying the same.

Done in Convention by the unanimous consent of the States present, the seventeenth day of September, in the year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and eighty-seven, and of the Independence of the United States of America the twelfth. In witness whereof we have hereunto subscribed our names.

GEORGE WASHINGTON, *President,*
and Deputy from Virginia.

NEW HAMPSHIRE.—John Langdon, Nicholas Gilman.
MASSACHUSETTS.—Nathaniel Gorham, Rufus King.
CONNECTICUT.—William Samuel Johnson, Roger Sherman.
NEW YORK.—Alexander Hamilton.
NEW JERSEY.—William Livingston, David Bearly, William Patterson, Jonathan Dayton.
PENNSYLVANIA.—Benjamin Franklin, Thomas Mifflin, Robert Morris, George Clymer, Thomas Fitzsimons, Jared Ingersoll, James Wilson, Gouverneur Morris.
DELAWARE.—George Read, Gunning Bedford, Jr., John Dickinson, Richard Bassett, Jacob Broom.
MARYLAND.—James McHenry, Daniel of St. Thomas Jenifer, Daniel Carroll.
VIRGINIA.—John Blair, James Madison, Jr.
NORTH CAROLINA.—William Blount, Richard Dobbs Spaight, Hugh Williamson.
SOUTH CAROLINA.—John Rutledge, Charles Cotesworth Pinckney, Charles Pinckney, Pierce Butler.
GEORGIA.—William Few, Abraham Baldwin.

Attest: WILLIAM JACKSON, *Secretary.*

AMENDMENTS TO THE CONSTITUTION.

ARTICLE I.

Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for a redress of grievances.

ARTICLE II.

A well-regulated militia being necessary to the security of a free State, the right of the people to keep and bear arms shall not be infringed.

ARTICLE III.

No soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house without the consent of the owner; nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

ARTICLE IV.

The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated; and no warrants shall issue but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the person or things to be seized.

ARTICLE V.

No person shall be held to answer for a capital or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia when in actual service in time of war or public danger; nor shall any person be subject, for the same offense, to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled, in any criminal case, to be a witness against himself; nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use without just compensation.

ARTICLE VI.

In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law; and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor; and to have the assistance of counsel for his defense.

ARTICLE VII.

In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved; and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise re-examined in any court of the United States than according to the rules of the common law.

ARTICLE VIII.

Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

ARTICLE IX.

The enumeration in the Constitution of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

ARTICLE X.

The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people.

ARTICLE XI.

The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by citizens of another State, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign State.

ARTICLE XII.

The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for President and Vice-President, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as President, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as Vice-President; and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as President, and of all persons voted for as Vice-President, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the president of the Senate; the president of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted; the person having the greatest number of votes for President shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers, not exceeding three on the list of those voted for as President, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the President. But, in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a President, whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice-President shall act as President, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the President.

The person having the greatest number of votes as Vice-President, shall be the Vice-President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list, the Senate shall choose the Vice-President; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice.

But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of President, shall be eligible to that of Vice-President of the United States.

ARTICLE XIII.

SECTION 1.—Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime, whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

SEC. 2.—Congress shall have power to enforce this Article by appropriate legislation.

ARTICLE XIV.

SECTION 1.—All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the State wherein they reside. No State shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States; nor shall any State deprive any person of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law, nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

SEC. 2.—Representatives shall be apportioned among the several States, according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each State, excluding Indians not taxed. But when the right to vote at any election for choice of electors for President and Vice-President of the United States, representatives in Congress, the executive and judicial officers of a State, or the members of the legislature thereof, is denied to any of the male inhabitants of such State being twenty-one years of age, and citizens of the United States, or in any way abridged, except for participation in rebellion or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion which the number of such male citizens shall bear to the whole number of male citizens twenty-one years of age in such State.

SEC. 3.—No person shall be a senator, or representative in Congress, or elector of President and Vice-President, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any State, who, having previously taken an oath as a member of Congress, or as an officer of the United States, or as a member of any State legislature, or as an executive or judicial officer of any State, to support the Constitution of the United States, shall have engaged in insurrection or rebellion against the same, or given aid or comfort to the enemies thereof; but Congress may, by a vote of two-thirds of each house, remove such disability.

SEC. 4.—The validity of the public debt of the United States authorized by law, including debts incurred for payment of pensions, and bounties for services in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned. But neither the United States, nor any State, shall assume or pay any debt or obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave; but all such debts, obligations, and claims shall be held illegal and void.

SEC. 5.—The Congress shall have power to enforce by appropriate legislation the provisions of this Article.

ARTICLE XV.

SECTION 1.—The right of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States, or by any State, on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude.

SEC. 2.—The Congress shall have power to enforce this Article by appropriate legislation.

PRONUNCIATION OF PROPER NAMES.

[E., English; F., French; S., Spanish; P., Portuguese; It., Italian; G., German; N., Norse; Sw., Swedish; Pol., Polish; L., Latin; I., Indian.]

Abenaki [I.], ăb-ĕ-**nah**-kĭ.
Abercrombie [E.], **ăb**-ĕr-krŭm-bĭ.
Adet [F.], ah-**dā**.
Adolphus [L.], ă-**dŏl**-fŭs.
Aix-la-Chapelle [F.], āks-lah-shah-**pĕl**.
Algonquin [I.], ăl-zhŏn-**kēn**.
Almonte [S.], **ăl**-**mŏn**-tĕ.
Altamaha [I.], awl-tă-**mă**-**haw**.
Alvarado [S.], ăl-vă-**rah**-dō.
Ambrister [E.], ăm-**brĭs**-tĕr.
Amerigo Vespucci [It.], ah-mĕr-ē-gō vĕs-**poot**-chē.
Amidas [E.], **ăm**-ĭd-ăs.
Ampudia [S.], ăm-**poo**-dĭ-ă.
André [F.], **ăn**-drā.
Anjou [F.], ŏng-**zhoo**.
Antietam [E.], ăn-tē-tăm.
Antonio de Espego [S.], ahn-**tō**-nĭ-ō dā ĕs-**pā**-hō.
Apalachee [I.], ăp-ă-**lach**-ē.
Arbuthnot [E.], **ahr**-bŭth-nŏt.
Armada [S.], ahr-**mah**-dă.
Ashe [E.], **ăsh**.
Au Glaize [F.], ō-**glāz**.
Autosse [I.], **aw**-**tŏs**-ē.
Ayavalia [S.], ī-ah-**vāhl**-yă.
Ayotla [S.], ī-**ōt**-lă.
Aztecs [I.], **ăz**-tĕks.
Balfour [E.], băl-**foor**.
Barron [E.], **bahr**-rŏn.
Baum [E.], **bawm**.
Bayard [E.], **bī**-ahrd.
Beaufort [E.], **bū**-fŭrt.
Beaujeau [F.], bō-**zhŭ**.
Beauregard [F.], **bō**-rā-gahrd.
Beau-Sejour [F.], bō-sā-**zhoor**.
Behring [E.], **bē**-rĭng.
Bellomont [E.], **bĕl**-ō-mŏnt.
Bergen [E.], **bĕrg**-ĕn.
Berkeley [E.], **bĕrk**-lĭ.
Bermudas [E.], bĕr-**mū**-dăz.
Bernard [E.], bĕr-**nahrd**.
Bienville [F.], be-ong-**vēl**.
Biloxi [E.], bē-**lŏks**-ĭ.
Blennerhassett [E.], blĕn-nĕr-**hăs**-sĕt.
Blyth [E.], **blīth**.
Borgne [E.], **bŏrn**.
Boscawen [E.], bŏs-**kaw**-ĕn.
Bowdoin [E.], **bō**-dĕn.
Bracito [S.], brah-**thē**-tō.
Bulkeley [E.], **bŭlk**-lĭ.
Burgoyne [E.], bŭr-**goin**.
Cabot [E.], **kăb**-ŏt.
Cadwallader [E.], kăd-**wahl**-lă-dĕr.
Cambahee [I.], kahm-bă-hē.
Canonchet [I.], kā-**nŏn**-shĕt.
Canonicus [I.], kā-**nŏn**-ĭ-kŭs
Canseau [F.], kăn-**sō**.
Carleton [E.], **kahrl**-tŭn.
Cartier [F.], kahr-tĭ-ā.
Casa de Mata [S.], **kahs**-ă dā **mah**-tă.
Casamir [Sw.], **kăs**-ĭ-mĭr.
Castin [F.], **kăs**-**tăn**.
Chabot [F.], shă-**bō**.
Chaleurs [F.], shah-**lcor**.
Cham [Tartar], **kăm**.
Champe [E.], **kămp**.
Champlain [F.], shăm-**plān**.
Chantilly [E.], shahn-**tĭl**-lĭ.
Chapultepec [S.] kah-pool-tă-**pĕk**.
Chattahoucho [I.], **chăt**-tă-**hoo**-chĕ.
Chaudiere [F.], shō-dē-**ār**.
Chauncey [E.], **chawn**-sĕ.
Cherbourg [F.], **shĕr**-boorg.
Cherokee [I.], **chĕr**-ō-kē.
Chickamauga [E.], chĭk-ă-**maw**-gă.
Chickasaws [I.], **chĭk**-ă-sawz.

Chicora [S.], chē-**kō**-rä.
Chignecto [I.], shē-**nĕk**-tō.
Chihuahau [S.], shē-**wah**-wah.
Chippewa [I.], **chĭp**-pē-wah.
Choctaws [I.], **chŏk**-tawz.
Christianson [E.], **krĭst**-yăn-sŭn.
Christison [Sw.], **krĭs**-tĭ-sŭn.
Chrysler [E.], **krīs**-lĕr.
Churubusco [S.], koo-roo-**boos**-kō.
Clarendon [E.], **klăr**-ĕn-dŭn.
Cochrane [E.], **kŏk**-răn.
Coligni [F.], kō-lēn-yē.
Columbus [L.], kō-**lŭm**-bŭs.
Comanches [I.], kō-**măn**-chĕz.
Concepcion [S.], **kŏn**-thĕp-thĭ-**ōn**.
Condé [F.], kŏn-**dā**.
Contreras [S.], **kōn**-trā-räs.
Copernicus [L.], kō-**pĕr**-nĭ-kŭs.
Copley [E.], **kŏp**-lē.
Cordilleras [S.], kŏr-dēl-yā-rahs.
Corees [I.], **kō**-rēz.
Cornwallis [E.], kawrn-**wahl**-lĭs.
Cotentnea [E.], kō-**tĕnt**-nē-ä.
Credit Mobilier [F.], **crā**-dĭ mō-bĭl-ĭ-**ār**.
Croghan [E.], **krōg**-hăn.
Cyan [E.], **sī**-**ăn**.
Dacres [E.], **dāk**-ĕrz.
Dahlgren [E.], **dăl**-grĕn.
Dakotas [I.], dah-**kō**-tahz.
D'Anville [F.], dŏng-**vēl**.
Darrah [E.], **dahr**-rah.
D'Aubrey [F.], dō-**brā**.
Daye [E.], **dā**.
De Ayllon [S.], dā īl-**yōn**.
De Balboa [S.], dā bahl-**bō**-ä.
De Barras [F.], dŭ bahr-**rah**.
Decatur [E.], dē-**kā**-tŭr.
De Fleury [F.], dŭ **flŭr**-ĭ.
De Grasse [F.], dŭ **grăs**.
De Kalb [F.], dŭ **kahlb**.
Delaplace [F.], dŭ-lä-**plās**.
De Monts [F.], dŭ **mong**.
De Narvaez [F.], dā nahr-**vah**-ĕth.
D'Estaing [F.], **dā**-**stăng**.
De Terney [F.], dŭ tĕr-**nā**.
De Vaca [S.], **dā vah**-kä.
De Vergor [F.], dŭ vār-**gōr**.
De Villiers [F.], dŭ vēl-**yār**.
De Vries [F.], dē-**vrēs**.
Dieppe [F.], dē-**ĕp**.
Dieskau [F.], dē-ĕs-**kō**.
Dominic de Gourges [F.], dō-măn-ēk dŭ **goorg**.
Dongan [E.], **dŭn**-găn.
Doniphan [E.], **dŏn**-ĭ-făn.
Dupont [E.], doo-**pŏnt**.
Du Quesne [F.], dē **kān**.
Dyar [E.], **dī**-ăr.
Eldorado [S.], ĕl-dō-**rah**-dō.
Emucfau [I.], ĕ-**mŭk**-faw.
Endicott [E.], **ĕn**-dĭ-kŏt.
Erickson [E.], **ĕr**-ĭks-sŭn.
Erskine [E.], ĕr-skĭn.
Esquimaux [I.], **es**-kĭ-mōz.
Falmouth [E.], **făl**-mŭth.
Faneuil [F.], **fŭn**-ĭl.
Farragut [E.], **fahr**-rä-gū.
Ferdinand de Soto [S.], **fĕr**-dĭ-nănd dā **sō**-tō.
Ferdinand Gorges [E.], **fĕr**-dĭ-nănd **gōr**-jĕz.
Ferdinand Magellen [P.], **fĕr**-dĭ-nănd **ma**-**jel**-lan.
Ferguson [E.], **fŭr**-gŭ-sŭn.
Fernandez de Cordovä [S.], fĕr-**nahn**-dĕth dā **kōr**-dō-vä.
Fernando Cortez [S.], fĕr-**nahn**-dō **kōr**-tĕth.
Fouchet [F.], foo-**shā**.
Fraser [E.], **frā**-zĕr.
Freneau [E.], frē-**nō**.
Frobisher [E.], **frŏb**-ĭsh-ĕr.
Frontenac [F.], frŏn-tē-**năk**.
Gabarus [E.], gă-**băr**-ŭs.
Galileo [It.], gah-lĭ-**lā**-ō.
Gambier [F.], gahm-bĭ-**ā**.
Gaspar Cortereal [P.], **gahs**-pahr kōr-tä-rä-**ahl**.
Gaspé [F.], găs-**pā**.
Gaspereau [F.], gahs-pĕr-**ō**.
Genet [F.], zhē-**nā**.
Genoa [It.], **jĕn**-ō-ah.
Gila [S.], **hē**-lah.
Gillis [G.], **gĭl**-lĭs.
Girardeau [E.], jĭ-**rahr**-dō.
Gloucester [E.], **glŏs**-tĕr.
Godyn [E.], gō-**dĭ**
Goffe [E.], **gawf**.
Gonzales [S.], gŏn-**thah**-lĕth.
Gorgeana [E.], gŏr-jē-**ăn**-ä.
Gosnold [E.], **gŏs**-nōld.
Goulburn [E.], **gool**-bŭrn.
Grierson [E.], **grēr**-sŭn.
Grijalva [S.], grē-**hahl**-vä.
Guadalupe Hidalgo [S.], gwah-dä-**loo**-pā hē-**dahl**-gō.
Guerriere [F.], gĕr-rĭ-**ār**.

Guiana [S.], gē-**ahn**-ă.
Gustavus [L.], gŭs-tā-vŭs.
Hakluyt [E.], **hăk**-loot.
Havre de Grace [F.], hahver dŭ **grăs**.
Hayne [E.], **hān**.
Heister [G.], **hīs**-tĕr.
Henlopen [E.], hĕn-**lō**-pĕn.
Herjulfson [N.], **hār**-yoolf-sŭn.
Herkimer [E.], **hŭr**-kĭ-mĕr.
Hertel [F.], hĕr-**tĕl**.
Hochelaga [I.], hōk-ĕ-**lah**-gă.
Hosset [G.], **hŏs**-sĕt.
Housatonic [I.], hoo-să-**tŏn**-ĭk.
Houston [E.], **hows**-tŭn.
Hovenden [E.], **hō**-vĕn-dĕn.
Huguenots [F.], **hū**-gē nŏts.
Iroquois [I.], ĭr-ō-**kwah**.
Isabella [S.], ĭz-ă-**bĕl**-ă.
Isle-aux-Noix [F.], ēl-ō-**nooah**.
Iuka [E.], ī-**yoo**-kă.
Jameson [E.], **jăm**-ĕ-sŭn.
Jesuits [E.], **jēz**-ŭ-ĭts.
Joliet [F.], **zhō**-lĭ-ā.
Joris [G.], **yō**-rĭs.
Juarez [S.], **yaw**-rĕth.
Jumonville [F.], zhē-mŏng-**vēl**.
Kamtchatka [I.], kăm-**tchăt**-kă.
Kaskaskia [I.], kăs-**kăs**-kĭ-ă.
Kearney [E.], **kahr**-nĕ.
Kearsarge [E.], **kahr**-sahr-gĕ, *or* **kĕr**-sahrj.
Kieft [E.], **kēft**.
Klamathas [I.], **klăm**-ăths.
Knowlton [E.], **nōl**-tŭn.
Knyphausen [G.], **nēp**-how-sĕn.
Kosciusko [P.], kŏs-**sĭ**-**ŭs**-kō.
Kossuth [G.], kŏs-**shoot**.
La Colle [F.], **lă**-**kŏl**.
Ladrones [S.], lahd-**rō**-nĕs.
La Fayette [F.], **lă fā**-**ĕt**.
La Fitte [F.], **lă fĭt**.
La Roche [F.], **lă rōsh**.
La Roque [F.], **lă rōk**.
La Salle [F.], **lă**-**săl**.
Lathrop [E.], **lă**-thrŭp.
Laudonnière [F.], lō-dŏn-nĭ-**ār**.
Laurie [E.], **law**-rĭ.
La Vega [S.], lah **vā**-gă.
Le Bœf [F.], lŭ **bŭf**.
Leddra [E.], **lĕd**-ră.
Ledyard [E.], **lĕd**-yahrd.
Leif Erickson [N.], **līf ĕr**-ĭk-sŭn.
Leisler [G.], **līs**-ler.
Leitch [E.], **lēch**.
Leverett [E.], **lĕv**-ĕr-ĕt.
Leyden [G.], **lī**-den.
Lionel [E.], **lī**-ō-nĕl
Lopez [S.], **lō**-pĕth.
Los Angeles [S.], lōs-**ahng**-ĕl-ĕs.
Loudon [E.], loo-**doon**.
Lützen [G.], **lĕtz**-ĕn.
Luzerne [Swiss], loo-**zĕrn**.
Macdonough [E.], măk-**dŏn**-ō.
Macdougall [E.], măak-**doo**-găl.
Macomb [E.], mă-**kōm**.
Magaw [E.], **mă**-**gaw**.
Mandeville [E.], **măn**-dĕ-vĭl.
Manteo [I.], **mahn**-tĕ-ō.
Manuel [P.], **mahn**-oo-ăl.
Markam [E.], **mahrk**-ăm.
Marlborough [E.], **mahrl**-brŭ.
Marquette [F.], mahr-**kĕt**.
Massasoit [I.], mă-**săs**-ō-ĭt.
Matagorda [S.], măt-ă-**gōr**-da.
Mather [E.], **măthe**-ĕr.
Matoaka [I.], măt-ō-ăk-ă.
Mattapony [I.], mă-**tăp**-ō-nĭ.
Matthews [E.], **măth**-ūz.
Maumee [I.], maw-**mē**.
Maurepas [F.], mōr-**pah**.
Maximilian [G.], măx-ĭ-**mĭl**-yăn.
McCullough [E.], măk-**kul**-lō.
McIntosh [E.], **măk**-ĭn-tŏsh.
Meacham [E.], **mē**-chăm.
Meigs [E.], **mēgz**.
Meta Incognita [L.], **mē**-tă ĭn-**cŏg**-nĭ-tă.
Meuse [G.], **mūs**.
Mianatonomoh [I.], mĭ-ăn-tō-**nō**-mō.
Micanopy [I.], mĭ-**kăn**-ō-pĭ.
Minuit [G.], **mĭn**-oo-ĭt.
Mohegan [I.], mō-**hē**-găn.
Molino del Rey [S.], mō-lē-nō dĕl rā.
Monckton [E.], **mŭnk**-tŭn.
Monk [E.], **mŭnk**.
Monocacy [I.], mō-**nŏk**-ă-sĭ.
Montcalm [F.], mŏnt-**kahm**.
Monteano [S.], mōn-tā-**ahn**-ō.
Montezuma [I.], mŏn-tē-**zoo**-mă.
Montmorenci [E.], mŏnt-mō-**rĕn**-sĭ.
Mosley [E.], **mōz**-lē.
Moultrie [E.], **mōl**-trĭ.
Nairne [E.], **nārn**.
Nassau [F.], **năs**-**sō**.
Natchitoches [I.], năch-ĭ-**tŏch**-ĕs.
Naumkeag [I.], nawm-kē-**ăg**.
Nauvoo [E.], naw-**voo**.

Nicols [E.], **nĭk**-ŭlz.
Nipmucks [I.], **nĭp**-mŭks.
Nueces [S.], **nwā**-sĕs.
Ocklawaha [I.], ŏk-lă-**wä**h-hah.
Odeneal [E.], **ō**-dĕn-ēl.
Ogechee [I.], ō-gē-chē.
Oglethorpe [E.], **ō**-gĕl-thŏrp.
O'Hara [E.], ō-**hahr**-ră.
Ojeda [S.], o-**hā**-dă.
Okeechobee [I.], ō-kē-**chō**-bē.
Oldham [E.], **ōld**-ăm.
Olustee [E.], ō-**lŭs**-tē.
Oneidas [I.], ō-**nī**-das.
Opecancanough [I.], ō-pē-**kăn**-kan-ō.
Orapax [I.], **ōr**-ă-păx.
Osceola [I.], ŏs-sē-**ō**-lā.
Oswald [E.], **ŏs**-wawld.
Otis [E.], **ō**-tĭs.
Oxenstiern [Sw.], **ōks**-ĕn-stērn.
Pascua Florida [L.], **pahs**-koo-ă **flōr**-ĭ-dă.
Patapsco [I.], pă-**tăp**-skō.
Patuxent [I.], pă-**tŭks**-ĕnt.
Pauw [G.], **paw**.
Pedro Melendez [S.], **pā**-drō mā-**lĕn**-dĕth.
Pemaquid [I.], **pĕm**-a-kwĭd.
Pepperell [E.], **pĕp**-pĕr-ĕl.
Pequod [I.], **pē**-kwŏd.
Perote [S.], pă-**rō**-tē.
Philippine [E.], **fĭl**-ĭp-ĭn.
Pigot [E.], **pĭg**-ot.
Pinta [S.], **pēn**-tă.
Piscataqua [I.], **pĭs**-kăt-ă-kwă.
Pitcairn [E.], **pĭt**-kārn.
Pizzaro [S.], pē-**thahr**-rō.
Pocahontas [I.], pŏk-ă-**hŏn**-tăs.
Poictiers [F.], pwah-tē-ā.
Point au Trembles [F.], pwăn tō **trahmbl**.
Ponce de Leon [S.], **pōn**-thā dā lā-**ōn**.
Pontchartrain [F.], pōn-shahr-**trān**.
Porto Rico [S.], **pōr**-tō **rē**-kō.
Poutrincourt [F.], poo-trăn-**koor**.
Powhatan [I.], pow-hăt-**an**.
Presque Isle [F.], prĕsk-**ēl**.
Prevost [E.], **prĕv**-ōst.
Prideaux [F.], **prĭd**-ō.
Puebla [S.], **pwĕb**-lah.
Pulaski [P.], poo-**lahs**-kĭ.
Quantrell [E.], **kwahn**-trĕl.
Queretaro [S.], kā-rā-**tah**-rō.
Rahl [G.], **rahl**.

Raleigh [E.], **raw**-lĭ.
Ratcliffe [E.], **răt**-klĭf.
Rawdon [E.], **raw**-dŭn.
Raymbault [F.], **răm**-**bō**.
Revere [E.], re-**vēr**.
Rhett [E.], **rĕt**.
Riall [E.], **rī**-ăl.
Ribault [F.], rē-**bō**.
Roberval [F.], rōb-ēr-**vahl**.
Rochambeau [F.], rō-shăm-**bō**.
Rochelle [F.], rō-**shĕl**.
Roderi Triana [S.], rōd-**rē**-gō trē-**ah**-r
Rosecrans [G.], **rōs**-krahns.
Ryswick [G.], **rēs**-wĭk.
Salkehatchie [I.], săl-kĕ-**hăch**-ē.
Saltillo [S.], sahl **tēl**-yō.
Samoset [I.], **săm**-ō-sĕt.
San Cosme [S.], sahn **kōs**-mā.
Sandys [E.], **săn**-dĭs.
San Jose [S.], **sahn** hō-**sā**.
San Juan d'Ulloa [S.], sahn **hwahn** dool-**ō**-ah.
San Miguel [S.], sahn mĭg-oo-**ĕl**.
Santa Maria [S.], **sahn**-tă mah-**rē**-ă.
Sassacus [I.], **săs**-săk-ŭs.
Sayle [E.], **sāl**.
Schenectady [I.], skĕ-**nĕk**-tă-dĭ.
Schuyler [E.], **skī**-lĕr.
Selish [I.], **sē**-lish.
Seminoles [I.], **sĕm**-ĭ-nōlz.
Semmes [E.], **sĕmz**.
Seville [S.], sē-**vĭl**.
Seward [E.], **soo**-ahrd.
Sheaffe [G.], **shăf**-fē.
Shirley [E.], **shŭr**-lĭ.
Shoshonees [I.], shō-**shō**-nēz.
Sigel [G.], **sē**-gĕl.
Sioux [I.], **soo**.
Sloughter [E.], **slō**-tĕr.
Sothel [E.], **sŏth**-ĕl.
Squanto [I.], **skwahn**-tō.
St. Augustine [E.], sānt **aw**-gŭs-tēn.
Steuben [G.], **stū**-bĕn.
Stirling [E.], **stŭr**-lĭng.
St. Leger [F.], sānt **lĕj**-ĕr.
Stoughton [E.], **stō**-tŭn.
St. Pierre [F.], săn pe-**ār**.
Streight [F.], **strāt**.
Stuyvesant [G.], **stī**-vĕs-ănt.
Subercase [F.], sē-bĕr-**kahs**.
Suwanee [I.], soo-**wahn**-ē.
Talladega [I.], tahl-lă-**dē**-gă.
Tallapoosa [I.], tăl-lă-**poos**-ă.

Tallushatchee [I.], tăl-lŭs-**hăch**-ē.
Tamanlipas [S.], tahm-aw-lē-**păs**.
Tanacharisson [L.], tăn-ă-**kăr**-ĭs-sŭn.
Tarleton [E.], **tahrl**-tŭn.
Teche [F.], **tĕsh**.
Tecumtha [I.], tē-**kŭm**-thă.
Thames [E.], **tĕmz**.
Theresa [G.], tĕr-ē-s-ă.
Thorfinn Karlsefne [N.], **tōr**-fĭn **kahrl**-sĕf nĕ.
Thorstein Erickson [N.], **tōr**-stīn ĕr-ĭk-sŭn.
Tituba [I.], tĭ-**too**-bă.
Tohopeka [I.], tō-hō-**pē**-kă.
Tomo-Chichi [I.], **tō**-mō-**chē**-chĭ.
Tortugas [S.], tŏr-**too**-gahs.
Tuscaroras [I.], tŭs-kă-**rō**-rahz.
Văn Rensselaer [E.], văn **rĕn**-sĕ-lahr.
Van Twiller [G.], văn **twĕl**-lĕr.
Vasco de Gama [P.], **vahs**-kō dā **gah**-mă.
Vaudreuil [F.], vō-drŭ-**ēl**.
Vaughan [E.], **vawn**.
Vera Cruz [S.], **vā**-rah **krooz**.
Vergennes [F.], vĕr-**zhĕn**.
Verhulst [G.], **vār**-hoolst.
Verrazzani [It.], vĕr-rat-**tsah**-nĭ.
Wadsworth [E.], **wŏds**-wŭrth.
Wahoo [I.], waw-**hoo**.
Wainman [E.], **wān**-măn.
Walloons [G.], wahl-**loonz**.
Wampanoags [I.], wahm-păn-ō-**agz**.
Warwick [E.], **wahr**-rĭck.
Washita [F.], **wŏsh**-ĭ-taw.
Waymouth [E.], **wā**-mŭth.
Weehawken [I.], wē-hawk-ĕn.
Weitzel [G.], **wīt**-zĕl.
Welde [E.], **wel**-dē.
Whalley [E.], **hwahl**-lĭ.
Whinyates [E.], **hwĭn**-yāts.
Whitefield [E.], **hwīt**-fēld.
Wingina [I.], wĭn-**gē**-nă.
Winthrop [E.], **wĭn**-thrŭp.
Wilkes [E.], **wĭlks**.
Withlacoochie [I.], wĭth-lă-**koo**-chē.
Worcester [E.], **woos**-tĕr.
Wouter [G.], **woo**-tĕr.
Wyatt [E.], **wī**-ăt.
Xeres [S.], **hā**-rĕth.
Yamacraws [L.], **yahm**-ă-krawz.
Yamassees [I.], yă-**măs**-ēz.
Yeamans [E.], **yē**-mănz.
Yeardley [E.], **yŭrd**-lĭ.
Youghiogheny [I.], yŏh-hō-**gā**-nĭ.
Yusef [Moorish], **yoo**-sĕf.
Zenger [G.], **zĕn**-gĕr.

INDEX.

ABENAKIS, THE, War with, 93, 98.
ABERCROMBIE, GENERAL, Expedition of against Ticonderoga, 173.
ACADIA, Name of, 34; ruin of, 168, 169.
ADAMS, JOHN, Predicts American Independence, 180; nominates Washington for general-in-chief, 190; member of committee to draft Declaration, 194; commissioner to Paris, 227; Vice-President, 232; administration of, 238-240; death of, 288.
ADAMS, JOHN QUINCY, Secretary of State, 264; elected President, 267; sketch of, 268; administration of, 268, 269; death of, 289.
ADAMS, SAMUEL, Speaks out for liberty, 185.
ADET, M., Evil influence of in United States, 238.
ADOLPHUS, GUSTAVUS, Plans an American colony, 105.
AIX-LA-CHAPELLE, Treaty of, 101.
ALABAMA, Admission of, 266.
ALABAMA, THE, Career of, 333.
ALABAMA CLAIMS, THE, Settlement of, 345.
ALASKA, Purchase of, 341.
ALGIERS, Tribute paid to, 237; brought to terms, 263.
ALGONQUINS, THE, Territorial position of, 12.
ALLEN, ETHAN, Expedition of against Ticonderoga, 188.
AMENDMENTS TO CONSTITUTION, Notice of, 232; passage of fourteenth and fifteenth, 344.
AMHERST, GENERAL, Commander-in-chief in America, 174.
AMIDAS, PHILIP, Voyage of, 39.
AMNESTY PROCLAMATION, THE, Account of, 339.
ANDERSON, ROBERT, At Fort Sumter, 302.
ANDRÉ, JOHN, Connection of with Arnold's treason, 220.
ANDROS, SIR EDMUND, Career of in America, 91, 112, 114, 124, 129, 132, 137.
ANTIETAM, Battle of, 319.
ANTI-FEDERALIST PARTY, THE, Rise of, 230.
ARCHDALE, JOHN, Governor of South Carolina, 154
ARCTIC EXPLORATIONS, Account of, 293.
ARGALL, SAMUEL, Expeditions of, 61, 62.
ARKANSAS, Organization of, 266; admission of, 274.
ARNOLD, BENEDICT, At Ticonderoga, 188; expedition of against Quebec, 191; heroism of at Saratoga, 204; treason of, 219; in Virginia, 222.
ATLANTA, Capture of, 329.
BACON, NATHANIEL, Rebellion of, 70.
BALBOA, Discovery of the Pacific by, 20.
BALTIMORE, Siege of, 260; attack on Union soldiers in, 302.
BALTIMORE, THE LORDS, Colonize Maryland, 145.
BANK OF THE UNITED STATES, Organization of, 234; expiration of charter of, 263; rechartering of vetoed by Jackson, 271; new charter of vetoed by Tyler, 278.
BANKS, N. P., In West Virginia, 315; in command of the Red River expedition, 327.
BARCLAY, ROBERT, Governor of New Jersey, 137.
BARLOW, ARTHUR, Voyage of, 39.
BELLOMONT, EARL OF, Governor of New York, 116.
BENNINGTON, Battle of, 203.
BERKELEY, SIR WILLIAM, Governor of Virginia, 67; vengeance of, 71; proprietor of New Jersey, 134.
BLACK HAWK WAR, THE, Account of, 272.
BLOCKADE, The question of in Europe, 245.
BONAPARTE, NAPOLEON, Policy of toward the United States, 239; sells Louisiana, 242; measures of against Great Britain, 245; issues Milan Decree, 245.
BONAPARTE, LOUIS NAPOLEON, Intrigue of respecting Mexico, 340.
BOONE, DANIEL, Colonizes Kentucky, 235.
BOOTH, JOHN WILKES, Assassination of Lincoln by, 337.
BOSTON, Founded, 77; occupied by the British army, 184; massacre at, 184; siege of, 188-193; great fire in, 347.
BRADDOCK, EDWARD, Campaign of against the French, 166-167.
BRADFORD, WILLIAM, Governor of Massachusetts, 74.
BRAGG, BRAXTON, At Murfreesborough, 315; at Chickamauga, 322; at Lookout and Missionary Ridge, 322, 323.
BRANDYWINE, Battle of, 205.
BRECKINRIDGE, JOHN C., Vice-President, 296; in command in the Shenandoah Valley, 334.
BROWN, JOHN, Insurrection led by, 298.
BRYANT, WILLIAM CULLEN, Death of, 356.
BUCHANAN, JAMES, Elected President, 296; sketch of, 297; administration of, 297-300.
BUCKNER, S. B., At Fort Donelson, 312.
BUENA VISTA, Battle of, 285.
BULL RUN, Battles of, 308, 318.
BUNKER HILL, Fortification of by Americans, 188; battle of, 189.
BURGESSES, HOUSE OF, Establishment of, 63; scene in, 181.

BURGOYNE, GENERAL. Invasion of, 202; capitulation of, 204.
BURNSIDE, AMBROSE E., In command of the Army of the Potomac, 319; at Fredericksburg, 319.
BURR, AARON, Elected Vice-President, 240; kills Hamilton, 244; conspiracy of, 244.
BUTLER, B. F., At New Orleans, 314; at Ft. Fisher, 332; at Bermuda Hundred, 334.

CABINET, THE, Organization of, 234.
CABLE, THE ATLANTIC, Laying of, 297, 340.
CABOT, JOHN, Voyage of, 35.
CABOT, SEBASTIAN, Voyage and explorations of, 36.
CALHOUN, JOHN C., Secretary of war, 264; Vice-President, 267; as a nullifier, 271; death of, 294.
CALIFORNIA, Discovery of gold in, 288; organization of, 291; admission of, 292.
CALIFORNIANS, THE, Territorial position of, 12.
CALVERT, SIR GEORGE, Sketch of, 144.
CALVERT, SIR CECIL, Colonizes Maryland, 145.
CAMDEN, Battle of, 218.
CANADIAN INSURRECTION, THE, Account of, 276.
CANONCHET, Notice of, 87; execution of, 90.
CANONICUS, Notice of, 78.
CAPE BRETON, Conquest of, 101.
CARTERET, SIR GEORGE, Proprietor of New Jersey, 134.
CARTIER, JAMES, Voyage of, 30.
CARVER, JOHN, Leader of the Pilgrims, 47; death of, 73.
CENSUS, of 1790 and 1800, 240; of 1810, 248; of 1870, 344.
CENTENNIAL OF AMERICAN INDEPENDENCE, Account of, 350.
CERRO GORDO, Battle of, 286.
CHAMPE, SERGEANT JOHN, Attempt of to capture Arnold, 222.
CHAMPION HILLS, Battle of, 321.
CHAMPLAIN, SAMUEL, Career of in America, 34.
CHANCELLORSVILLE, Battle of, 324.
CHAPULTEPEC, Battle of, 287.
CHARLES I., Relations of with American colonies, *see Massachusetts and Virginia.*
CHARLES II., Relations of with American colonies, *see Massachusetts and Virginia.*
CHARLESTON, Founding of, 153; taken by the British, 217; evacuation of, 225; siege of, 323; capture of by Sherman, 330.
CHARTER OF NEW ENGLAND, Account of, 76.
CHARTER OAK, THE, Story of, 91, 125.
CHASE, SALMON P., Secretary of the treasury, 301; presides at the impeachment trial of Johnson, 342; death of, 349.
CHEROKEES, THE, Territorial position of, 12; war with, 177; difficulties with, 272.
CHESAPEAKE, BAY OF, Exploration of by John Smith, 56.
CHESAPEAKE, THE, Affair of, 245.
CHICAGO, Burning of, 345.
CHICKAMAUGA, Battle of, 322.
CHICORA, Old name of Carolina, 23.
CHIPPEWA, Battle of, 258.
CHURUBUSCO, Battle of, 287.
CIVIL RIGHTS BILL, THE, Passage of, 342.
CIVIL WAR, THE, Causes of, 303-306; history of, 306-336.
CITIZENSHIP, English views of, 245.
CLARKE, JOHN, Colonizes Rhode Island, 128; services of, 129.
CLARKE, WILLIAM, Exploring expedition of, 244.
CLAYBORNE, WILLIAM, Career of in Maryland, 144-147.
CLAY, HENRY, Secures the passage of Omnibus Bill, 291; death of, 294.
CLINTON, GEORGE, Vice-President, 244.
CLINTON, SIR HENRY, Attempt of to save Burgoyne, 204.
CODDINGTON, WILLIAM, Sets up Israel in Rhode Island, 128.
COLFAX, SCHUYLER, Vice-President, 343.
COLIGNI, Mentioned, 32.
COLONIES, THE AMERICAN, Dispute of with Great Britain, 179-186; independence of, 195, 227.
COLONIZATION SOCIETY, THE, Organization of, 263.
COLORADO, Admission of, 352.
COLUMBIA, DISTRICT OF, Organization of, 240.
COLUMBUS, CHRISTOPHER, Sketch of, 18; discovery of America by, 19; misfortunes of, 20.
COMANCHES, THE, Territorial position of, 12.
CONCORD, Battle of, 187.
CONFEDERATION, THE, History of, 229, 230.
CONGRESS, THE FIRST COLONIAL, Meeting of, 182.
CONGRESS OF THE REVOLUTION, Assembling of, 186.
CONNECTICUT, Colonization of, 120; history of, 120-125.
CONSTITUTION OF UNITED STATES, Analysis of, 231; adoption of by the States, 232; text of, *see Appendix.*
CONSTITUTION, THE, Affair of, 250.
COOPER, SIR ASHLEY, Proprietor of Carolina, 149.
CORDOVA, Explorations of, 22.
CORINTH, Battle of, 315.
CORNBURY, LORD, Governor of New York, 116.
CORNWALLIS, LORD, Pursues Washington across New Jersey, 198; at Princeton, 201; at Brandywine, 205; in Carolina, 223; in Virginia, 225; surrender of at Yorktown, 226.
CORTEREAL, GASPAR, Voyages of, 28.
CORTEZ, FERNANDO, Conquest of Mexico by, 22.
COTTON GIN, THE, As a factor of the Civil War, 304.
CRANFIELD, EDWARD, Governor of New Hampshire, 91; career of in the province, 132.
CREDIT MOBILIER, THE, Uproar concerning, 348.
CREEKS, THE, War with, 254; difficulties with, 268.
CROMWELL, OLIVER, Relations of with Virginia, 67; favors New England, 83.
CROWN POINT, Expedition of Johnson against, 170.
CUBA, Difficulties concerning, 292.

DAKOTAS, THE, Territorial position of, 12.
DALE, SIR THOMAS, Governor of Virginia, 60.
DARE, VIRGINIA, Birth mentioned, 41.
DARRAH, LYDIA, Story of, 206.
DAVIS, JEFFERSON, President of the Confederacy, 299; sketch of, 308; flight of from Richmond, 336; capture and trial of, 336.
DAYE, STEPHEN, First printer in America, 81.
DEARBORN, HENRY, Commander-in-chief of American army, 249.

DE AYLLON, Discovery of Carolina by, 23.
DECATUR, COMMODORE, In the Mediterranean, 263.
DE GAMA, Circumnavigation of Africa by, 37.
DE GOURGES, Settles with the Spaniards, 33.
DE KALB, BARON, Fights for liberty, 202; killed, 218.
DELAWARE, Colonization of, 105; secession of from Pennsylvania, 142.
DE LEON, PONCE, Discovery of Florida by, 21.
DEMAGOGUES, Influence of, 306.
DEMOCRATIC PARTY, THE, Comes into power, 241.
DE MONTS, In America, 34.
DE SOTO, FERDINAND, Explorations of, 24-26.
DETROIT, Capture of by the British, 250.
DONIPHAN, COLONEL, Campaign of, 285.
DORR INSURRECTION, THE, Account of, 278.
DOUGLAS, STEPHEN A., Favors popular sovereignty, 295.
DRAFT, THE, Ordered by Congress, 325.
DRAKE, SIR FRANCIS, Career of, 38; carries off Raleigh's colony, 40.
DRED SCOTT DECISION, THE, 298.

EAST INDIA COMPANY, THE DUTCH, Mentioned, 49.
EATON, WILLIAM, Campaign of in Africa, 243.
EMANCIPATION PROCLAMATION, Issued by Lincoln, 320.
EMBARGO ACT, THE, Passage of, 245.
ERICKSON, LEIF, Discovers America, 15.
ERICKSON, THORWALD AND THORSTEIN, 16.
ERICSSON, JOHN, Invents Monitor, 313.
ESQUIMAUX, Territorial position of, 12.
EUTAW SPRINGS, Battle of, 224.

FAIR OAKS, Battle of, 317.
FARRAGUT, ADMIRAL, On the Mississippi, 314; capture of Mobile by, 331.
FEDERALIST PARTY, THE, Rise of, 230.
FIELD, C. W., Lays Atlantic cable, 297.
FILLMORE, MILLARD, President, 291.
FINANCIAL CRISIS, of 1873, 348.
FIVE FORKS, Battle of, 336.
FLORIDA, Colonization of, 27; cession, 265; admission of, 281.
FORREST, N. B., Raid of, 327.
FORT DONELSON, Capture of, 312.
FORT DU QUESNE, *See Fort Pitt.*
FORT FISHER, Capture of, 332.
FORT JACKSON, Capture of, 314.
FORT LE BŒUF, Affairs at, 163.
FORT McHENRY, Defence of, 260.
FORT MEIGS, Siege of, 253.
FORT MIFFLIN, Defence of, 206.
FORT MOULTRIE, Attack on, 194.
FORT NASSAU, Built, 134.
FORT NECESSITY, Built and defended by Washington, 165.
FORT ORANGE, Building of, 50, 103.
FORT PITT, Built, 164; taken by English, 174.
FORT ST. PHILIP, Capture of, 314.
FORT SUMTER, Bombardment of, 302.
FORT WILLIAM HENRY, Siege of, 172.
FRANCE, Possessions of in America, 172; incites the colonies to rebel, 179; alliance of with the United States, 208; difficulties with, 238.
FRANKLIN, BENJAMIN, Plans Union for America, 166, favors liberty, 181; at the court of Louis XVI., 208; sketch of, 209.
FREDERICKSBURG, Battle of, 319.
FREMONT, JOHN C., Explorations of, 284.
FRENCH, THE, Explorations and settlements of in America, 29-35, 161, 162.
FROBISHER, MARTIN, Voyages of, 37.
FULTON, ROBERT, Invents steamboat, 246.

GADSDEN PURCHASE, Account of, 295.
GAGE, GENERAL, Occupies Boston, 186.
GATES, HORATIO, In the North, 204.
GENET, CITIZEN, Career of in the United States, 225.
GEORGE III., Character of, 180.
GEORGIA, History of, 156-160.
GERRY, ELBRIDGE, Vice-President, 252.
GETTYSBURG, Battle of, 325.
GHENT, Treaty of, 262.
GIST, CHRISTOPHER, Expedition to the Ohio, 162.
GOLD, Discovery of in California, 288.
GORGES, FERDINAND, Proprietor of New Hampshire, 131.
GOSNOLD, BARTHOLOMEW, New route of, 41.
GRANT, ULYSSES S., At Donelson, 312; at Pittsburg Landing, 312; at Vicksburg, 321; commander-in-chief, 328; in the Wilderness, 333; besieges Petersburg, 335; in pursuit of Lee, 336; elected President, 343; sketch of, 343; administration of, 343-351.
GREAT BRITAIN, Colonizes America, 35-48; grants of territory by, *see Map* II; extent of possessions (1655), *see Map* III; oppresses the colonies, 179-186; treaty with, 227; doctrine of respecting neutrals, 245.
GREELEY, HORACE, Notice of, 346.
GREENE, NATHANIEL, splendid campaigns of in the Carolinas, 223-225.
GUERRIERE, THE, Affair of, 250.
GUILFORD C. H., Battle of, 223.

HALF MOON, THE, Voyages of, 49, 50.
HAMILTON, ALEXANDER, Builder of Fort Washington, 198; defender of the Constitution, 231; secretary of the treasury, 234; first major-general of the army, 238; killed, 244.
HARMAR, GENERAL, Expedition of, 234.
HARRISON, WILLIAM HENRY, Governor of Indiana, 248; at Tippecanoe, 248; in command of the army of the West, 252; elected President, 276; sketch of, 277; administration of, 277; death of, 277.
HARTFORD CONVENTION, THE, 261.
HARVARD COLLEGE, Founding of, 81.
HAYES, RUTHERFORD B., Sketch of, 353; administration of, 353.
HAYNE, SENATOR, Debate with Webster, 271.
HENRY, PATRICK, Makes some remarks, 182.
HERJULFSON, Discovers America, 15.
HESSIANS, THE, Hired to fight America, 194.
HOBKIRK'S HILL, Battle of, 224.
HOOD, J. B., Driven from Atlanta, 329; defeated at Nashville, 329.
HOOKER, JOSEPH, At Lookout, 322; in command of the Army of the Potomac, 324.
HOUSTON, SAM, Sketch of, 298.
HOWE, GENERAL, Notices of, 192, 195.
HUDSON, SIR HENRY, Explorations of, 49.
HUGUENOTS, THE, Persecution of, 153.
HULL, WILLIAM, Disastrous campaign of, 249.
HURON-IROQUOIS, THE, Territorial position of, 12.
HUTCHINSON, ANNE, Notices of, 79, 106.

ICELANDERS, Discover America, 15.
ILLINOIS, Admission of, 266.
INDEPENDENCE, Declaration of, 195; achievement of, 227; centennial of, 350.
INDIANA, Admission of, 263.
INDIANS, The, Sketch of, 11-14.
INDIAN TERRITORY, Organized, 272.
INTERNAL REVENUE, Account of, 337.
IOWA, Admission of, 281.
IROQUOIS, The, Territorial position of, 12.
ISABELLA, Favor of to Columbus, 19.

JACKSON, Andrew, In command against the Creeks, 254; at New Orleans, 261; elected President, 269; sketch of, 270; administration of, 270-274; death of, 289.
JACKSON, Stonewall, At Cedar Mountain, 318; at Fredericksburg, 319; at Chancellorsville, 324; death of, 324.
JAMESTOWN, Founding of, 44.
JAPAN, Opening of intercourse with, 295.
JAY COOKE & CO., Failure of, 348.
JAY, John, Appointed chief-justice, 234; negotiates a treaty with Great Britain, 236.
JEFFERSON, Thomas, Author of the Declaration, 194; secretary of state, 234; Vice-President, 237; elected President, 240; administration of, 241-247.
JESUITS, The, Dicoveries of, 161, 162.
JOHNSON, Andrew, Elected Vice-President, 336; becomes President, 339; sketch of, 339; administration of, 339-343; death of, 349.
JOHNSTON, Joseph E., At Manassas, 307; wounded, 317; surrender of, 331.

KANSAS, Troubles in, 296; admission of, 340.
KANSAS-NEBRASKA BILL, Account of, 296.
KEARNEY, Philip, Expedition of to California, 284; killed at Chantilly, 318.
KEARSARGE, The, Destroys the Alabama, 333.
KENESAW MOUNTAIN, Battle of, 328.
KENTUCKY, Admission of, 235.
KIDD, William, Career of, 116.
KOSSUTH, Louis, In the United States, 293.

La FAYETTE, Marquis de, Gives himself to the cause of liberty, 202; campaigns of in Virginia, 225; visit of to America, 267.
La SALLE, Explorations of, 161.
LAUDONNIERE, In Florida, 33.
LEE, Charles, At Monmouth, 210.
LEE, Richard Henry, Resolutions of Independence offered by, 194.
LEE, Robbert E., In West Virginia, 307; commander-in-chief of the Confederates, 317; invades Maryland, 318; at Antietam, 319; invades Pennsylvania, 325; in the Wilderness, 333; retreat of from Richmond, 336; surrender of, 336; death of, 349.
LEWIS, Captain, Explorations of, 244.
LEXINGTON, Battle of, 187.
LINCOLN, Abraham, Elected President, 299; sketch of, 301; administration of, 301-338; issues Emancipation Proclamation, 320; re-elected, 336; assassination of, 337.
LITTLE BELT, The, Affair of, 249.
LIVINGSTON, Edward, Purchases Louisiana, 242.
LOCKE, John, Prepares the Grand Model, 149.
LONDON COMPANY, Organization of, 43; grant to, 43 *and Map* II.
LONG ISLAND, Battle of, 196.
LOOKOUT MOUNTAIN, Storming of, 322.
LOUISBURG, Siege of, 100.
LOUISIANA, Purchase of, 242; admission of, 249; discord in, 347.
LUNDY'S LANE, Battle of, 258.
LYON, Nathaniel, In Missouri, 306.

MADISON, James, Elected President, 247; sketch of, 247; administration of, 247-264; death of, 274.
MAGELLAN, Ferdinand, Voyage of, 22.
MAINE, Admission of, 266.
MALVERN HILL, Battle of, 317.
MANASSAS, Battle of, 308.
MANDEVILLE, Sir John, Views of respecting the figure of the earth, 18.
MARION, Francis, Career of, 217, 224.
MARSHALL, John, Chief-Justice, 242.
MARYLAND, History of, 144-148.
MASON, J. M., Ambassador of the Confederacy, 310.
MASSACHUSETTS, Colonization of, 35-48: history of, 73-102.
MATHER, Cotton, Responsible for witchcraft atrocities, 95.
McCLELLAN, George B., Campaign of in West Virginia, 307; in command of the Army of the Potomac, 309; peninsular campaign of, 316-318; at Antietam, 319.
MEADE, George G., In command of the Army of the Potomac, 325; at Gettysburg, 325.
MEIGS, Colonel, At Sag Harbor, 201.
MELENDEZ, Pedro, In Florida, 27.
MERRIMAC, Fights the Monitor, 313.
MICHIGAN, Admission of, 274.
MILL SPRING, Battle of, 312.
MINNESOTA, Admission of, 297.
MINUIT, Peter, Governor of New Netherland, 103.
MISSIONARY RIDGE, Storming of, 323.
MISSISSIPPI, Admission of, 265.
MISSOURI, Admission of, 266.
MISSOURI COMPROMISE, History of, 266.
MOBILIANS, Territorial position of, 12.
MODOC, The, War with, 347.
MONITOR, Fight of with Merrimac, 313.
MONMOUTH, Battle of, 210.
MONROE, James, Elected President, 261; administration of, 264-267; death of, 274.
MONROE DOCTRINE, The, 267.
MONTEREY, Storming of, 283.
MONTGOMERY, Richard, Expedition of against Canada, 191; death of, 191.
MORGAN, Daniel, At the Cowpens, 223.
MORGAN, John, Raid of, 323.
MORMONS, The, Account of, 279.
MORRIS, Robert, Devotes his fortune to liberty, 199; secretary of finance, 222.
MORRIS, T. A., In West Virginia, 307.
MORSE, S. F. B., Invents the telegraph, 280.
MORTON, Oliver P., Sketch of, 356.
MURFREESBOROUGH, Battle of, 315.

NARVAEZ, De, Governor of Florida, 23.
NASHVILLE, Siege of, 329.
NATIONAL DEBT, The, Extent of, 339.
NEBRASKA, Admission of, 340.
NEGRO PLOT, The, In New York, 118.
NEVADA, Admission of, 336.
NEW AMSTERDAM, Founding of, 50.
NEW ENGLAND, Colonization of, 47, 73, 120, 127, 137.
NEW HAMPSHIRE, History of, 131-133.
NEW HAVEN, Founding of, 123.
NEW JERSEY, History of, 134-138.
NEW NETHERLAND, History of, 103-110.
NEW ORLEANS, Battle of, 262.
NEW SWEDEN, Colonization of, 105, history of, 105-108; extent of, *see Map* III.

NEW YORK, Colonization of, 103; history of, 103-119.
NEW YORK CITY, Settlement of, 103; under the Dutch, 103-110; under the English, 111-119; evacuation of, 227.
NEZ PERCE INDIANS, War with, 355.
NORSEMEN, THE, Discovery of America by, 15; traces of in Rhode Island, 129.
NORTH CAROLINA, History of, 149-151.
NORTH-EASTERN BOUNDARY, Settlement of, 278.
NORTHWEST TERRITORY, Division of, 241.
NULLIFICATION, Account of, 271; a cause of the Civil War, 305.

OGLETHORPE, JAMES, Career of in Georgia, 156-160.
OHIO, Organization and admission of, 242.
OMNIBUS BILL, THE, History of, 291.
ORDERS IN COUNCIL, THE, Issued by Great Britain, 245; promised repeal, 247.
OREGON, Admission of, 298.

PACIFIC RAILROAD, THE, Project of, 295; completion of, 343.
PALO ALTO, Battle of, 282.
PAPER MONEY, First used in America, 94.
PARRIS, SAMUEL, Responsible for witchcraft atrocities, 95.
PAUL JONES, Great naval battle of, 215.
PENN, WILLIAM, In New Jersey, 137; proprietor of Pennsylvania, 139; sketch of, 140.
PENNSYLVANIA, History of, 139-143.
PEQUODS, THE, War with, 120.
PERRY, OLIVER H., Victory on Lake Erie, 253.
PETERSBURG, Siege of, 335, 336.
PHILADELPHIA, Founding of, 141.
PHILIP, KING, War with, 86-90.
PIERCE, FRANKLIN, Elected President, 294; sketch of, 295; administration of, 295, 296.
PITT, WILLIAM, Defends America, 183.
PITTSBURG LANDING, Battle of, 313.
PLYMOUTH, Founding of, 47.
PLYMOUTH COMPANY, THE, Organization of, 43; grant to, 43 *and Map* II.
PLYMOUTH COUNCIL, THE, Organization of, 45; grant to, 45 *and Map* II.
POCAHONTAS, Story of, 54.
POLK, JAMES K., Elected President, 280; sketch of, 281; administration of, 281-289.
POPE, JOHN, Campaign of in Virginia, 318.
PORTER, ADMIRAL, Bombards Vicksburg, 321; at Fort Fisher, 332.
PORT ROYAL, Founded, 34; siege of, 98.
PORTUGUESE, THE, Discoveries of, 28.
PRINCETON, Battle of, 201.
PRINTING-PRESS, THE, Set up in Cambridge, 81.
PULASKI, COUNT, Honored for service at Brandywine, 206.
PURITANS, THE, Rise of, 46; at Leyden, 46; voyage of to America, 47; compact of, 47; character of, 101.
PUTNAM, ISRAEL, Exploit of, 213.

QUAKERS, THE, Persecutions of, 84; colonization of Pennsylvania by, 139.
QUEBEC, Founding of, 34; expedition of Walker against, 99; captured by Wolfe, 176; expedition of Arnold against, 191.

RAILROAD STRIKE, THE, History of, 354.
RALEIGH, SIR WALTER, Attempts of to colonize America, 39; founds Raleigh, 41.
RECONSTRUCTION, Difficulties of, 341, 342.
RED RIVER EXPEDITION, THE, Account of, 327.
RESACA DE LA PALMA, Battle of, 283.
REVOLUTION, THE, Causes of, 179-186; history of, 187-228.
RHODE ISLAND, History of, 127-130.
RIBAULT, JOHN, Voyages of, 32.
RICHMOND, Capital of the Confederacy, 303; evacuation and burning of, 336.
ROLFE, JOHN, Account of, 61.
ROSECRANS, W. S., At Murfreesborough, 315; at Chickamauga, 322.
RYSWICK, Treaty of, 95.

SALEM, Founded, 76; witchcraft at, 95.
SANDER'S CREEK, Battle of, 218.
SANTA ANNA, At Buena Vista, 285; at Cerro Gordo, 286; driven from Mexico, 287.
SANTO DOMINGO, Project to annex, 345.
SAVANNAH, Founding of, 157; conquest of, 212; capture of by Sherman, 330.
SCOTT, WINFIELD, At Lundy's Lane, 258; plans the invasion of Mexico, 285; at Vera Cruz, 285; at Cerro Gordo, 286; enters Mexico, 288; commander-in-chief of the Union army, 303.
SECESSION, Account of, 299.
SEMINOLES, THE, War with, 265, 272.
SEVEN DAYS' BATTLES, THE, Account of, 317.
SEWARD, WILLIAM H., Secretary of state, 301; diplomacy of in the Trent affair, 311; attempted assassination, 337; death, 349.
SHERIDAN, PHILIP H., In the Shenandoah Valley, 335.
SHERMAN, W. T., At Chickasaw Bayou, 315; from Chattanooga to Atlanta, 328; march to the Sea, 330; from Savannah to Raleigh, 330.
SIOUX INDIANS, War with, 350, 351.
SLAVERY, Introduction of, 63; exclusion of from Georgia, 158; a cause of the Civil War, 304; abolished, 320, 339.
SLIDELL, JOHN, Ambassador of the Confederacy, 310; capture of, 310.
SMITH, JOHN, Voyages of in New England, 44; captured, 45; troubles of at Jamestown, 52; sketch of, 52; captivity of, 53; exploration of Chesapeake by, 56; president of Virginia, 57.
SONS OF LIBERTY, Organization of, 183.
SOTHEL, SETH, Career of in North Carolina, 150; in South Carolina, 153.
SOUTH CAROLINA, Colonization of, 152; history of, 152-156.
SPAIN, Discovers and colonizes America, 18-29; territorial possessions of in 1665, *see Map* III; treaty with, 265.
SPRINGFIELD, Battle of, 309.
STAMP ACT, Passage of, 181; repeal of, 183.
STANDISH, MILES, General of New England, 73.
STANTON, EDWIN M., Secretary of war, 301; death of, 349.
STATE RIGHTS, Advocated in South Carolina, 271; a cause of the Civil War, 303.
ST. AUGUSTINE, Founding of, 27.
ST. CLAIR, ARTHUR, Expedition of, 235.
STEAMBOAT, THE, Invention of, 246.
STEPHENS, ALEXANDER H., Opposes secession, 299; Vice-President of the Confederacy, 300.
STONY POINT, Capture of by the British, 213; retaken by Wayne, 213.
STUYVESANT, PETER, Administration of in New Netherland, 107-110.

SUMNER, CHARLES, Death of, 349.
SUMTER, THOMAS, Career of in the Carolinas, 217, 224.
SUPREME COURT, Organization of, 234.

TARIFF, THE, Question of, 269, 271.
TAYLOR, ZACHARY, Sent to occupy Texas, 282; at Buena Vista, 285; elected President, 289; sketch of, 290; administration of, 290, 291; death of, 291.
TEA-PARTY, THE BOSTON, Celebrated, 185.
TECUMTHA, War with, 248; death of, 254.
TELEGRAPH, THE, Invention of, 280.
TENNESSEE, Colonization of, 184; admission of, 237.
TERRITORIAL DEVELOPMENT, Of the United States, 345 *and Map* V.
TERRITORIES OF UNITED STATES, Final form of, 340.
TEXAS, Early history of, 279; annexation of proposed, 280; admission of, 281.
TICONDEROGA, Expedition of Johnson against, 170; attack on by Abercrombie, 173; capture of by Ethan Allen, 188.
TIPPECANOE, Battle of, 249.
TOMPKINS, D. D., Vice-President, 264.
TREATY, Of Utrecht, 99; of Aix-la-Chapelle, 101; of Paris (1763), 177; of alliance with France, 208; definitive of 1783, 227; Jay's, 236; of Ghent, 262; of Washington (1819), 265; the Webster-Ashburton, 278; of Guadalupe Hidalgo, 288; of Washington (1872), 345.
TRENTON, Battle of, 199.
TYLER, JOHN, Vice-President, 277; President, 277; sketch of, 277; administration of, 277-281.

UTAH, Colonization, 279; difficulties in, 297.

VALLEY FORGE, American army at, 207.
VAN BUREN, MARTIN, Elected President, 274; sketch of, 275; administration of, 275-277.
VERMONT, Admission of, 234.
VERRAZZANI, JOHN, Voyage of, 29.
VESPUCCI, Voyages of, 20.
VICKSBURG, Siege of, 321.
VINLAND, Limits of, 17.
VIRGINIA, Name of, 40; colonization of, 44; history of, 51-72.

WADSWORTH, Jos., Hides the charter, 92.
WALLACE, LEWIS, At Romney, 307; defends Cincinnati, 314; on the Monocacy, 335.
WAR, King Philip's, 86; King William's, 93; Queen Anne's, 98; King George's, 100; Pequod, 120; French and Indian, 161-178; Revolutionary, 179-228; of 1812, 247-262; Black Hawk, 272; with Mexico, 281-288; the Civil, 301-338; Modoc, 347; Sioux, 350; Nez Perce, 355.
WARREN, JOSEPH, At Bunker Hill, 189.
WASHINGTON CITY, Founding of, 240; capture of by the British, 260.
WASHINGTON, GEORGE, Sent to the French, 163; builds Fort Necessity, 165; with Braddock, 166; made general-in-chief, 190; sketch of, 190; negotiations of with Howe, 195; retreat of across New Jersey, 198; at Trenton, 199; at Princeton, 201; at Brandywine, 205; sorrows of, 207; at Monmouth, 210; at Yorktown, 226; favors Union, 230; chosen President, 232; administration of, 233-237; Farewell Address of, 237; death of, 239.
WAYNE, ANTHONY, At Stony Point, 213; expedition of against the Indians, 236.
WEBSTER, DANIEL, Debate with Hayne, 271; concludes Ashburton treaty, 278.
WESLEY, CHARLES, Methodist and poet, 158.
WESLEY, JOHN, In Georgia, 158.
WEST VIRGINIA, Admission of, 326.
WHIG PARTY, THE, In power, 277, 280.
WHISKY INSURRECTION, THE, Account of, 235.
WHITEFIELD, GEORGE, In Georgia, 158.
WHITNEY, ELI, Invents the Cotton Gin, 304.
WILDERNESS, THE, Battles in, 333.
WILLIAMS, ROGER, Minister of Salem, 77; banishment of, 77; founder of Providence, 78; sketch of, 127.
WILSON, HENRY, Vice-President, 346; death of, 349.
WINTHROP, JOHN, Governor of Massachusetts, 76.
WINTHROP, THE YOUNGER, Leader of the Connecticut colony, 124.
WISCONSIN, Admission of, 289.
WITCHCRAFT, THE SALEM, Story of, 95.
WOLFE, JAMES, Expedition of against Quebec, 175; death of, 177.
WORLD'S FAIR, THE, Account of, 295.
WYOMING, Massacre of, 211.

YALE COLLEGE, Founding of, 125.
YEAMANS, SIR JOHN, Governor of Carolina, 149.
YORKTOWN, Siege of, 226.
YUSEF, THE EMPEROR, Is brought to his senses, 243.

To avoid fine, this book should be returned on
or before the date last stamped below

50M—9-40

Tx
973.1
R547

CURRICULUM LIBRARY

Ridpath, John Clark. 609952
History of the United States.

NAME	DATE	NAME	DATE

LIBRARY, SCHOOL OF EDUCATION, STANFORD

609952


HISTORY
OF THE
UNITED STATES